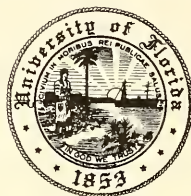


# PUBLIC DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

A. CRAIG BAIRD

UNIVERSITY  
OF FLORIDA  
LIBRARIES



From the Library of

Dallas C. Dickey


COLLEGE  
COLLECTION

Dallas C. Dickey









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
LYRASIS Members and Sloan Foundation

# PUBLIC DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

*Revised Edition by*

A. CRAIG BAIRD · *Professor of Speech*  
*in the State University of Iowa*



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON · ATLANTA

DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1937, BY A. CRAIG BAIRD  
COPYRIGHT, 1928, BY A. CRAIG BAIRD  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

437.1

The Athenæum Press  
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.



## PREFACE

This revision holds to the general purpose and emphasis of the first edition, which "attempts to restate familiar argumentative principles in terms of present-day speech, logic, and psychology." Later research in the field of discussion and debate, however, and the improvement of techniques in the teaching of this subject, have naturally led to important modifications and additions in the text. This second edition should be more useful to the student than the first one.

Those teachers familiar with the older book will note that this new version further strengthens the character of the book as a text on discussion as contrasted with technical debate. Contest debating is not neglected; on the contrary, it is represented in a fresh chapter. New chapters, however, on special types of debate, radio debating and discussion, and committee and public discussion equip the student for proficiency in wider applications of persuasive speaking, and especially in coöperative thinking. Speech educators incline more and more to committee and panel discussion as an agency for the promotion of open-mindedness. The assumption of both editions is that intelligent discussion is the ally of free government.

Elementary principles of logic, outlined in the first edition, are here retained and strengthened in the chapters on deduction, induction, fallacies, refutation, and rebuttal. The New Logic of Sidgwick, Dewey, Schiller, and others is fully recognized in the handling of analysis, briefing, and other topics. The student, nevertheless, still derives much value from a review of formal logic. This text views syllogistic reasoning in rhetoric functionally, as did Aristotle. I have tried to illustrate and interpret practically these classical formulas in the building and testing of argument.

x

As this revision, like the earlier book, adapts the principles of the newer logic without rejecting enthymematic reasoning, so it strengthens the presentation of debate as a problem in audience analysis and control. The chapters on analysis and the audience have been rewritten with a view to stressing persuasion techniques. The revisions, it is hoped, have brought home more clearly to the students the ways and means of controlling social behavior and of adjusting the entire personality.

Additions have been made by illustrations drawn from contemporary thought and controversy; the chapter on research has been rewritten; bibliographical aids and lists of subjects for debate have been revised; a model brief and an outline of parliamentary law have been added; and numerous projects have been inserted, — all to give the undergraduate a serviceable guide.

Helpful criticism and suggestions from my speech colleagues at Iowa State University and at many another college and university, from members of my graduate seminar in problems in discussion, and from undergraduates in my debate courses have inspired me in both editions.

A. CRAIG BAIRD

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INFLUENCING BELIEF AND CONDUCT . . . . .	I
II. SELECTING AND FRAMING THE PROPOSITION . . . . .	17
III. RESEARCH . . . . .	35
IV. EXPOSITION OF THE PROPOSITION THROUGH DEFINITION AND ANALYSIS . . . . .	57
V. SYNTHESIS: THE BRIEF AND THE RHETORICAL OUTLINE . . . . .	87
VI. EVIDENCE . . . . .	109
VII. ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES: DEDUCTION . . . . .	128
VIII. ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES: INDUCTION . . . . .	147
IX. FALLACIES . . . . .	176
X. REFUTATION . . . . .	202
XI. REBUTTAL . . . . .	220
XII. THE AUDIENCE . . . . .	240
XIII. DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPEECH . . . . .	271
XIV. DELIVERY IN DISCUSSION AND DEBATE . . . . .	305
XV. FORMAL DEBATE . . . . .	325
XVI. SPECIAL TYPES OF DEBATE . . . . .	339
XVII. RADIO DEBATING AND DISCUSSION . . . . .	349
XVIII. COMMITTEE AND PUBLIC DISCUSSION . . . . .	357
APPENDIXES	
A. SPECIMEN BRIEF . . . . .	371
B. QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION AND DEBATE . . . . .	382
C. DEBATE RATING BALLOT . . . . .	386
D. OUTLINE OF PARLIAMENTARY LAW . . . . .	387
INDEX . . . . .	391





# PUBLIC DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

## CHAPTER I

### INFLUENCING BELIEF AND CONDUCT

I. INFLUENCING BELIEF AND CONDUCT THROUGH PERSUASION. II. EXPLANATION OF ARGUMENTATION. III. TYPES OF ARGUMENTATION. IV. RELATIONSHIPS OF ARGUMENTATION. V. EDUCATIONAL IMPORTANCE OF ARGUMENTATION. VI. PRINCIPLES FOR THE MASTERY OF ARGUMENTATION, PUBLIC DISCUSSION, AND DEBATE

#### I. INFLUENCING BELIEF AND CONDUCT THROUGH PERSUASION

**A. Influencing Belief and Conduct as a Factor in Social Adjustment.** One of your chief concerns is to influence men and women to accept your point of view about many things. Because your relation to society is one of continual mutual adjustment, because you cannot easily escape from the world, and because you have numerous desires and needs that must be fulfilled if you are to get on or even to survive, you find yourself continually attempting to impress others with your personality and to reconstruct their motives and, in the end, their conduct. Your school career, for example, is a succession of complex experiences — studying, dancing, idling in your room, arguing with your intimate friends, making the team, cramming for mid-years, or working your way. Through it all you are striving, vigorously or lightly, to have your personality and ideas prevail. Mere self-defense in social living justifies your effort.

**B. Persuasion as an Aid to Practical Success.** Again, after graduation, whether you are to practice law, medicine, teaching, preaching, salesmanship, or to attempt any other work, your

practical problem will be to influence human behavior. Do you expect to take up law? Then your efficiency will be measured not simply by your knowledge of logic or evidence but also by your skill in presenting your case to jury or judge. If you are to preach and to achieve as did Beecher, you must build up a following who both recognize your leadership and yield to your suggestions for the right moral code. Is your career to be business? Then you must apply to a sales situation pleasant address, knowledge of your wares, and, chiefly, ability to shake your customer out of his lethargy or polite assent and so to close the sale.

**C. Persuasion as a Factor in Solving Public Questions and Exercising Good Citizenship.** Aside from your immediate needs you may become ambitious for your family, your community, your country. You find yourself grappling with problems of taxes, treatment of criminals, organization of town or national government, party allegiance, and a hundred other political, social, or moral questions. The eddying world about you is seemingly indifferent or careless concerning hopes or claims so important to you. Either you or society has failed to make the proper adjustment. Since any equilibrium established seems immediately to disappear, these problems persist. The process calls for endless adjustment. First you decide that battleship armaments of the nations must be limited; then airplane carriers; then cruisers; then submarines; then other capital ships; and so on. With your companions in the controversy you sweep society on into what you hope is a better state of affairs. In such a career you have that interest in public affairs, that knowledge of problems, and that desire to mold public opinion which make for good citizenship.

**D. Persuasion as a Means of Deciding Intellectual Problems.** In still other cases your stout intellectual curiosity will lead you to probe into scientific or other mysteries more or less remote from immediate satisfactions. Did Chaucer in writing the *Man of Law's* tale borrow from John Gower? Is Mars inhabited?

Authorities may differ about these things. Laymen call them academic. Nevertheless you may exhaust an energetic life upon them and in the end suffer martyrdom for your crusade against an obstinate race. Thus to get your fellows in school and in society to attend to you, to believe in you and your message, is the supreme art. It is the art of practical achievement as a minister, salesman, teacher, lawyer, or statesman. It is the fine skill of accumulating prestige, and of intellectual and moral leadership. It is the art of persuasion, the influencing of human conduct.

## II. EXPLANATION OF ARGUMENTATION

When persuasion more directly attempts to control intellectual behavior, we commonly label the process *argument*. *Argument is the rhetorical process of influencing the belief and conduct of a hearer or reader by supplying him with reasons and motives for action.* Let us analyze briefly this working definition.

**A. A Rhetorical Art.** Argument, like persuasion, is a rhetorical method. Rhetoric is the art of speaking and writing. Its medium is language. To influence the world rhetorically we speak or write.

**B. An Audience Situation.** Argument requires an audience. The situation is a social one. Readers or hearers are necessarily involved. You may reason with yourself as did Hamlet, but even he envisaged a great audience applauding or condemning his conclusions. Communication is essential. Psychologically the process is one of providing stimuli and securing response. The speaker or writer provides the stimuli (in this case words, or substitute stimuli for the original sensations); the audience becomes the reactor and furnishes the response.

**C. The Speaker or Writer of Argument.** On one side is the audience. Either it is totally oblivious of your cause; or it is indifferent, having once reflected on the problem and dismissed it for one reason or another; or it is openly hostile. On the other side are you, conscious of the maladjustment, determined to

effect some understanding, reconciliation, or compromise, maybe; because you know that unless you do restore the harmony, you will, like O'Neill's Hairy Ape, succumb. The moment you speak, the lines are drawn and the conflict proceeds.

**D. The Rhetorical Aim of Changing Belief and Conduct.** The goal is conversion or complete response. The reactor-audience faces a day of judgment. If you succeed, a new man emerges. Belief and conduct change.

Contrast this rhetorical motive with that of the expositor or narrator. If you explain the importance of dust, characterize a college man, state a problem of physics, or review the week's happenings in Europe, your mood is that of an instructor. Your real undertaking, whatever your selection of material, is largely to make clear an idea or related group of ideas.

Again, when you set out to picture the campus on a warm autumn day or the stadium just before a touchdown, or when you recount a lively anecdote, another mood controls you and another purpose governs your selection of material. Your mood in the latter cases is more imaginative and emotional than when you are expounding.

In contrast to these well-defined purposes is the aim of affecting belief or conduct. You are still eager to make clear and to entertain, but in the main you have a determination to move your audience. The classification of students is merely preliminary to the criticism of their low scholarship and to a proposal for correcting this situation by the introduction of higher standards of scholastic attainment. Your warm picture of the football contest is to pave the way for a definite appeal to your hearers for support of the team. Your review of events in Europe is to persuade your group of America's duty to abandon a policy of nonparticipation.

1. *Explanation of Belief.* If the end sought is belief and conduct, we should be sure of the meaning of these terms. In the popular sense belief means approval, usually visible approval, of an argument. Since, however, a man convinced against his will



may continue to believe things which officially he has repudiated, we must attach to belief the suggestion of a genuine mental assent to a proposition. Belief is "certainty or assurance with respect to the alleged truth of an idea." It is contrasted with *uncertainty* or with *unbelief*. For example, thousands of thinkers believe that man descended from a lower order of life. Others profess uncertainty or agnosticism about this matter. They prefer the even way of neutrality. Millions of others are certain that no evidence bridging the gap between man and beast has been unearthed. These are the unbelievers. We who have faith concerning any matter have as our object the removal of that apathy or skepticism and the substitution of a mind that "recognizes the truth of what we had not before accepted."

2. *Relation of Belief to Conduct.* Belief, however, is (according to modern psychology) a form of behavior. "Belief is a form of behavior in which tendencies to respond in any given way are touched off by a combination of words called a proposition."<sup>1</sup> Even if your proposition is, RESOLVED, *That Lord Chatham was the first English orator of his generation*, you will influence behavior as well as what we call mental approval or belief. Behavior may be merely verbal response, an emotional expression, or an overt act. "The proposition, 'Toadstools are poisonous,' is believed when we refuse to eat them, when grave apprehension follows our having eaten them by mistake, when we try to prevent our friends from eating them, and when, in response to questioning, we declare that to eat toadstools will result in illness. . . . The moral conviction that it is wrong to play tennis on Sunday consists first of all in saying so when tennis is suggested. Further than this, our belief consists in a tendency not to play, and in displaying resentment toward those who do such a thing. The belief that debts should be paid involves advocating this statement, having a consequent tendency to pay debts and a show of remorse when this tendency is prevented. When a hypocrite

<sup>1</sup> J. M. O'Neill and A. T. Weaver, *The Elements of Speech* (Revised Edition), p. 268. Longmans, Green & Co., 1932.

merely advocates this form of honesty and does not pay his debts and does not regret his failure to do so, we may recognize the incompleteness of his belief.”<sup>1</sup> Thus psychologically belief becomes conduct or behavior, and the distinction between the terms becomes inconsequential.

**E. Argument and Reason.** Argument secures its end by addressing both the reason and the emotions. Man has been described tritely as a reasoning animal. The process of reasoning, we are told, is one of “mental exploration.”<sup>2</sup> You may follow a trial-and-error method of solving your difficulties. If you are about to leave the house and find your hat missing, you may go roaming about in every nook and corner searching until you come upon it. Such is purely “motor exploration.” On the other hand you pause for a moment and reflect, “Where did I leave that hat?” You will in your mind’s eye rove through the house, review past associations with the lost article, and so, logically, recall that you hung it up in the basement when you were stoking the furnace. Mental exploration is substituted for physical exploration. As Woodworth says: “You recall this fact and that, you turn this way and that, mentally, till some fact is recalled that serves your need. No more in reasoning than in motor exploration can you hope to go straight to the desired goal.”<sup>3</sup> Like the mouse attempting to escape from the cage, you try again; but your trial-and-error performance is mental. Exploration ends in some sort of conclusion, a picture (or “perception”) of what should be done. These perceptions that grow out of delayed reactions following the stimulus or impulse to explore we call *judgments* or *inferences*. The reasoning process, then, is made up of a series of inferences.<sup>4</sup> Your method in arguing is first of all to provide a series of judgments or inferences or reasons that

<sup>1</sup> S. Smith and E. R. Guthrie, *General Psychology, in Terms of Behavior*, pp. 195-196. D. Appleton and Company, New York, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> R. S. Woodworth, *Psychology*, p. 463. By permission of Henry Holt and Company, publishers, 1921.

<sup>3</sup> R. S. Woodworth, *op. cit.* p. 463.

<sup>4</sup> For a full discussion of inference see Chapter IX.

the audience may follow. This process is what traditional texts on debating call *conviction*.

**F. Argument and Motives for Action.** Argument, in addition to satisfying the understanding as to the truth of a proposition, must also reckon with human prejudices, impulses, motives, and emotions. It is agreed that if you are to secure action or a complete response, you must have an emotional reënforcement of belief. If, for example, you should try to establish the proposition that the United States ought to unite more closely with Europe in some association to promote the common interests, your logic would include a chain of reasoning proving that wars are threatening along various frontiers; that the basis for other conflicts is being securely laid in alliances and new balances of power; that economic and social realignments threaten the peace; that the machinery of coöperation can be worked out; and that the proposal is more than a dreamer's dream. Authorities and other types of concrete evidence would supplement the series of deductions.

Your argument, however, to be effective should become a series of emotional concepts — emotion of national pride, love of country, self-interest, racial antagonism, national duty to inferior peoples, fear of war, pity for the less fortunate, and so on. Woodrow Wilson once said: "Life is essentially illogical. The world is governed now by a tumultuous sea of commonalities made up of passions, and we should pray God that the good passions should outvote the bad passions."<sup>1</sup> We must consider what manner of men we are addressing, what feelings move them, how opposition is crushed, and how a mood favorable to our cause is created. With the right motives suggested, argument will thus carry the day. Argument, then, influences through both reason and emotion. The aim is unitary, to influence both emotional and intellectual behavior. Together with contemporary psychology we recognize the unity of personality (or mentality),

<sup>1</sup> Woodrow Wilson, "The Training of the Intellect," quoted from *Modern Short Speeches* (J. M. O'Neill, editor), p. 261. The Century Co., 1923.

but in argumentation we do find practical convenience in dwelling now upon that approach which deals mainly with judgments, reasons, and inferences, and now upon that which concerns itself with motives for approval and action.

### III. TYPES OF ARGUMENTATION

**A. Persuasion.** Persuasion, the general attempt to influence human behavior, may accomplish the result by touching off tendencies to immediate response without the delays of reflective thinking. When you persuade, your suggestions may be direct appeals that are uncritically accepted. As you hurry across the street you are interrupted with "Buy a badge." You may automatically respond. That incident furnishes an example of abbreviated persuasion. Argument, by contrast, stresses proposition and inference. Persuasion, when it also obviously proceeds from proposition to conclusion, becomes of course argumentation. This book is mainly concerned with the method of influencing behavior which emphasizes explicit methods of reasoning.

**B. Debating.** Debating and argument are often used interchangeably. Argument is the broader term, applying to all methods, either oral or written, of influencing conduct and belief by rational and emotional means. Debate is characteristically oral controversy under definite rules, such as the time limits, the use of opposing speakers, the duty of judges, the use of main speeches and rebuttal, and the methods of voting. The writer of a first-rate forensic, or complete argument, may be a third-rate debater because of lack of ability to think quickly on his feet, or to talk readily on the platform, or to use the hundred and one other arts of the schooled debater. Whereas argument was perfected and applied in early Greece, debate, as we practice it today in the American colleges, is a comparatively modern invention. In this book these terms will occasionally be used as synonyms.

**C. Discussion.** Discussion (Latin *dis*, "apart," and *quatio*, "shake ") is literally to shake apart for examination or analysis.



It is a more informal method of analyzing a controversial subject and following out various tentative arguments.

1. *Public Discussion.* Discussion is commonly applied to that type of public speaking in which one speaker presents a point of view and afterwards the audience has opportunity in an open forum to ask questions and make short speeches. Sometimes two speakers lead, taking opposite sides as in a debate. The program, however, is less rigid than that of a debate, and the speeches are presumably more discursive and less dogmatic. The distinction between public debate, like the Butler-Borah meeting on prohibition, and public discussion, like the open-forum programs often carried out at Ford Hall, Boston, or Cooper Union, New York, is not a sharp one. If the rules for conducting the meeting become tightly drawn and the contest element looms large, then discussion merges with debate.

2. *Committee or Group Discussion.* The term *discussion* applies also to a more private, or semiprivate, procedure known as *committee* or *group* discussion. Clubs, school and college groups, corporation boards, juries, the Assembly of the League of Nations, and various other organizations and committee gatherings use this method. All present participate as a committee of the whole. Each contributes his individual point of view about what the problem means and how it should be solved. Open-mindedness, presumably, prevails throughout. Personal attitudes yield as the discussion develops until finally a vote, which is in theory unanimous, may register the consolidated opinion. Thinking is coöperative rather than competitive. The procedure is really not argument but analysis. It represents a stage immediately preceding argument proper. The committee-room report becomes the basis for the heated bilateral debate in the open assembly.<sup>1</sup>

**D. The Sales Talk.** The sales talk is a speech that aims to sell some service or product. It is usually a private interview, a confidential though extended conversation between salesman and prospect, as when a book agent, an automobile salesman, or an

<sup>1</sup> See Chapter XVIII for further treatment of discussion.

insurance agent plies his trade. Occasionally, however, the sales talk is a more formal affair, delivered to a group; for example, when some service is presented to a city council, to a public-service committee, or to a corporation board. Salesmanship aims at action. It uses all the devices of persuasion, usually with a generous portion of carefully disguised argument and evidence. Essentially, this type of speech is an argument applied to a technical business situation.

**E. Emphasis upon Public Discussion and Debate.** This text will discuss the general principles of argumentation with the belief that those principles may be applied effectively whether the student later chooses to use them in the general field of argument, oral or written, as when he writes editorials or controversial articles, or delivers sermons, dinner speeches, lectures, inspirational addresses, or various other types of formal or informal speeches that may aim to impress and actuate; whether he later becomes a debater in the legislative halls; whether he attempts to mold opinion through public or committee-room discussion; or whether he elects the field of business and sells service or commodities. Special attention will be given to public discussion and debate, forms of argument which students in schools and colleges today find especially useful in working out their immediate problems and in training for citizenship.

#### IV. RELATIONSHIPS OF ARGUMENTATION

**A. Argumentation and Logic.** Argument owes much to logic, the study of mental processes. Logic deals with propositions, terms, presumptions, inferences, issues; it classifies arguments, explains syllogistic reasoning, refutation, and fallacies. If you attempt to master fully the technique of discussion, you will find yourself delving into this science of logic and applying it in practical argument.

**B. Argumentation and Law.** From law is derived the emphasis upon the selection of main and subordinate issues, the burden of



proof and presumption, the rules for evidence and the classification of evidence, procedure in refutation, and the development and use of a legal brief. In general, law accounts for the legislative and judicial style of present-day American debate.

**C. Argumentation and Psychology.** Still another science which more recently has influenced and explained the argumentative process is psychology, the science of mental life, or consciousness, or behavior. Psychology clarifies the laws of human action. It helps the speaker to analyze his own emotional and intellectual behavior, and so to organize the most effective argument. Psychology explains the character of the group and teaches the laws of adaptation. By its aid we can much more effectively influence audiences.

**D. Argumentation and Composition.** Again, argument is composition. Like exposition, description, and narration, it is a form of literary art. It combines the elements of thought, imagination, emotion, and form, or structure. The argumentative composition has organic structure: unity, coherence, proportion, and emphasis. Argumentative discourse embodies the qualities of clearness, force, concreteness, compression, and beauty. Effective argument means effective English. The study and mastery of effective sentence structure and proper syntax become a part of the course in argument. The arguer, like the essayist, or even the poet, may be a creative artist of high order. Thus Hamilton, Webster, Phillips, Lincoln, and Wilson have been artists in the field of argument.

**E. Argumentation and Ancient Rhetoric.** In describing these relationships we should not ignore the influence of still another important source, that of ancient rhetoric. Gorgias, Hermagoras, and their fellows defined rhetoric as the power of persuasion. It compassed refutation, evidence, the structure of the speech, methods of delivery, and the other elements of our modern argumentation. The present-day student of debate will find much illumination of his subject by reading Aristotle's *Rhetoric*, Quintilian's *Institutes*, Cicero's *De Oratore*, and will understand how rich is our forensic heritage from Greece and Rome.

**F. Argumentation and Speech.** Finally, argumentation and debate are usually taught and practiced as forms of public speaking. He who argues is for the most part engaged in the exercise of oral communication. He thinks on his feet; uses his voice with desirable quality, force, and pitch; pronounces accurately; and maintains desirable bodily action and mental poise. Since speech rests upon the sciences of psychology, physiology, physics, and phonetics, the student of debate should recognize the debt he owes to these sciences.

Thus the solid structure of argument is based upon numerous arts and sciences, chief among them logic, law, psychology, ancient and modern rhetoric, and speech.

## V. EDUCATIONAL IMPORTANCE OF ARGUMENTATION

Aside from the practical importance and universal application of argument, discussion, debate, or persuasion the study of these arts is fully justified as a course in the curriculum because of the educational values of study and practice in the classroom.

**A. Mental Activity.** If, for instance, the purpose of education is primarily to encourage thinking, then the subject of argumentation deserves a central place in the curriculum. Successful debating provokes original and constructive thought. At every turn the opponent, real or imaginary, challenges and criticizes the argument. It is a battle of wits. The result is increased mental power and alertness. Good debaters must be thinkers. Second-hand opinions and third-hand information soon show the would-be debater for what he is — a superficial reasoner. Then, too, in the hewing of arguments and in the preparation and presentation of briefs, systematic and methodical habits are formed. Accuracy and thoroughness accompany clear thinking.

**B. Broadmindedness.** Another advantage, perhaps even more important, is the development of broadmindedness. Thorough preparation must mean a knowledge of the subject. He who investigates honestly and fearlessly is bound to develop a catholic

judgment, an ability to appreciate the rival attitude, and a reasonable sympathy with that point of view. Under such training his prejudices must surely diminish.

**C. Practice in Speaking.** Since argument often takes the form of oral discussion, training for debating should mean practice in public speaking. The winner in the contest is often he who speaks most persuasively; therefore it pays to study carefully all the arts of the platform. From the start the student of argument will find practical interest in proper bearing, gesture, pronunciation, enunciation, and control of the voice.

**D. Study of Current Problems.** Still another benefit of argumentative training results from the study of current problems. Debate usually concerns itself with important problems of the time — economic, social, and political. The experienced disputant, with his close investigation of such questions, should have definite information and well-grounded opinions concerning issues of national interest. Thus debating is excellent training for intelligent citizenship.

**E. A Search for Truth.** But why argue? Why not live and let live, with every man free to work out his own philosophy undisturbed by the attempts of others to force him into some mental attitude? Isn't the expository mood or the coöperative spirit more scientific and intelligent? It is sometimes charged that argument creates an atmosphere of feudal strife rather than that of modern science with its dispassionate investigation of truth, its constantly corrected judgments, and its coöperative spirit. This objection assumes that debate exists merely to gratify the pugnacious instinct. As a matter of fact, we argue not only because we want to discover truth, but also because we want to make truth prevail. Only thus can society make progress. But, it may be objected, our continual talking is for the most part futile and helps not at all in the furtherance of our cause; moreover, the cause, if a righteous one, will survive and proceed triumphantly whether or not we speak. On the contrary, debate and argument clear the atmosphere and hasten progress.

**F. A Technique for Social Control.** You who discuss know that the world has moved onward and upward more rapidly because of the army of talkers. The great ally, then, of truth is free and full discussion of matters about which opinion differs. The student, therefore, who is learning in the classroom and on the platform the technique for an honest defense of right convictions and intelligent policies is committed to a most practical and worthy task.

## VI. PRINCIPLES FOR THE MASTERY OF ARGUMENTATION, PUBLIC DISCUSSION, AND DEBATE

You who plan to develop in the field of discussion will put aside the popular impression that debate may be mastered by seizing upon a principle here and there and supplementing it with voluble talk. The conquest of the art requires long application and training. These include a frank self-analysis of your shortcomings and needs, ability to criticize your own work, and a will to persist and master the art of persuasion.

More specifically, the objectives of the course are: (1) ability to select, frame properly, and analyze a subject; (2) ability to gather and organize materials; (3) ability to develop and test arguments and evidence; (4) ability to refute effectively; (5) ability to express arguments in effective language; (6) ability to deliver a speech effectively; (7) ability to use persuasive devices. Later chapters will discuss the technique for developing each of these abilities and skills.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

- ✓ 1. Select an editorial which you regard as argumentative. Point out elements that seem contentious and those that are genuinely argumentative. Distinguish the expository and the argumentative passages. Note the illustrations of persuasion.
2. Take notes on a public lecture, sermon, or campaign speech. Report the nature and effectiveness of the appeal.

3. Select a satisfactory definition of logic and give a somewhat complete explanation of the field of logic.

✓ 4. Name and explain four or five ways in which skill in argumentation and debate should increase one's ability in any one of the following situations (let the class judge the validity of your suggestions): (1) selling an insurance policy; (2) organizing and directing a community-chest campaign; (3) acting as counsel for the defendant in a ten-thousand-dollar automobile personal-liability suit; (4) writing an automobile advertisement for a national weekly; (5) writing an editorial for your college newspaper; (6) writing a term paper in zoölogy (or some other subject); (7) delivering a college classroom lecture; (8) teaching a college class; (9) presiding over a community forum on a problem of public ownership of utilities; (10) delivering a sermon.

✓ 5. Review for brief written or oral reports each of the following topics discussed in this chapter:

- a. Persuasive speaking as a factor in social adjustment.
- b. Debating as training for citizenship.
- c. A definition of persuasion.
- d. Argument as a rhetorical art.
- e. Written and spoken argument.
- f. The aim of argument.
- g. What is belief?
- h. Relation of belief to conduct.
- i. Argument and reason.
- j. Argument and emotionalism.
- k. What is debating?
- l. What is discussion?
- m. Argumentation and logic.
- n. Argumentation and English composition.
- o. Debating as training in public speaking.
- p. What argument owes to ancient Greece and Rome.
- q. Debating and open-mindedness.
- r. Debating and the study of current problems.
- s. Debating as a defense technique.
- t. Debating as a means of social progress.
- u. Specific aims of a course in public discussion and debate.



## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- BAIRD, A. C. "Argumentation as a Humanistic Subject," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (June, 1924), Vol. X, pp. 258-264.
- ✓ BRIGANCE, W. N. "Can we Re-define the James-Winans Theory of Persuasion?" *Quarterly Journal of Speech* (February, 1935), Vol. XXI, pp. 19-26. *Attention*
- CONANT, JAMES BRYANT. "Free Inquiry or Dogma?" *Atlantic Monthly* (April, 1935), Vol. 155, pp. 436-442.
- COOPER, LANE. *The Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 1-10. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1932.
- ✓ O'NEILL, J. M., and MCBURNEY, J. H. *The Working Principles of Argument*. The Macmillan Company, 1932.
- OVERSTREET, H. A. *Influencing Human Behavior*, chaps. viii, xiv. W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 1925.
- ROSS, E. A. *Social Psychology*, chap. xvii. The Macmillan Company, 1908.
- ROWELL, E. Z. "The Conviction-Persuasion Duality," *Quarterly Journal of Speech* (November, 1934), Vol. XX, pp. 469-482.
- SELLARS, R. W. *The Essentials of Logic* (Revised Edition), pp. 306-326. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1925.



## CHAPTER II

### SELECTING AND FRAMING THE PROPOSITION

I. THE SUBJECT IN GENERAL. II. THE SUBJECT AS A QUESTION, OR PROPOSITION. III. THE CONTROLLING PURPOSE AND THE SUBJECT. IV. TESTS FOR THE SELECTION OF THE SUBJECT. V. TESTS FOR THE WORDING OF THE SUBJECT. VI. THE PROPOSITION AND THE CONTEXT.

#### I. THE SUBJECT IN GENERAL

What kind of subject is best suited for discussion or debate? The answer depends upon the exact purpose of the occasion, the circumstances that lead to the framing of the proposition, and the response desired. Is the debate to take place in a court room, at a legislative assembly, on a college platform, in a dormitory, on a soap box in a city park, in a Pullman smoker, or at a New England town meeting? In general the subjects may be as broad as human thought and curiosity. Whatever challenges differences of opinion becomes a theme for controversy, whether it be the best brand of cigar or the dimensions of the universe.

Advocates of discussion are loath to circumscribe the field of discussion or to place undue limits on freedom of debate. They believe in general with John Stuart Mill in his essay on "Freedom of Thought and Discussion"<sup>1</sup> that free controversy is necessary because, first, the idea we hold may be essentially false and the only way for us to discover our position is to invite debate; secondly, even if our position is a true one, free discussion is essential to a clearer understanding and a deeper consciousness of its truth; thirdly, debate is always justified when the elements of truth are to be found on both sides, and the debate becomes a means of revealing the truth as a whole. Therefore it is fitting and proper in discussion or debate to weigh our

<sup>1</sup> J. S. Mill, *On Liberty*, chap. ii. Longmans, Green & Co., 1865.

opinions concerning such a question as whether Eugene O'Neill is the leading American dramatist ; whether, on the whole, people are better off today than they were in the colonial era ; whether the world owes more to its scientists than it does to its philosophers ; whether our grandchildren are to be envied ; or whether business ethics are consistent with sound morality.

What types of subjects, then, shall you discuss or debate? Each representative field of thinking yields a large number of controversial topics, some, to be sure, highly speculative, others perhaps trivial, still others significant and practical.

The following examples are suggestive of the wide scope of material that invites the undergraduate who embarks upon a course of discussion and debate :<sup>1</sup>

*Education.* Shall we have examinations of the essay type or of the objective type? Is education keeping step with the changing times? Are college women radical? Are the universities overgrown? Should a liberal education precede the professional course? Should a college attempt to train scholars, or citizens?

*Philosophy, Aesthetics, Psychology.* How shall we encourage the inquiring mind? Shall we flee from our woes? Does modern education in America inevitably produce general ugliness?

*Religion.* Is the religion of humanism enough? Do universities encourage immorality more than small colleges? Does the Church side with capitalism?

*Literature.* Have we a great poet in America today? A university theater should be erected on our campus. Should Sinclair Lewis be included in the list of America's major novelists?

*Biography.* Shall the undergraduates read at least one biography each month?

*Science.* Have we more to fear from science than to hope from it? The growth of scientific study means the decline of religion.

*Nationalism.* Is America a land of timidity? Is our national character decadent? Shall the nations go to war to avoid poverty? Shall we establish a dictator? The next president of the United States should be a woman.

<sup>1</sup> The topics here cited are adapted from the author's *Essays and Addresses toward a Liberal Education* (Ginn and Company, 1934).

*Internationalism.* Overpopulation leads to war. All wealth should be conscripted in wartime. The Japanese policy in the Orient since 1931 should be condemned.

*Economics.* Shall we plan or perish? Shall we approve a managed currency? Tendencies toward the socialized control of American economic life should be condemned.

*Sociology.* Is progress a delusion? The Federal government should equalize educational opportunity in the United States by means of annual grants to the several states for public secondary education.

## II. THE SUBJECT AS A QUESTION, OR PROPOSITION

### A. State the Subject in the Form of a Complete Sentence.

It is to be noticed that in each example the statement is in the form of a complete sentence, interrogative or declarative, with subject and predicate. You may present an exposition, a description, or a narration concerning a term. Argument should rest upon a complete statement. A term is the subject or predicate of a single assertion. It is impossible to argue a term. A belief or opinion which deals with the relation of things cannot be expressed in a word or phrase. To have a complete statement or interrogation, two terms connected by a linking verb are necessary. All matters which men discuss can be reduced to this form. Although much debate is carried on without formal words in mind, where accuracy is demanded or where a decision is attempted such complete statement is needed.

**B. For Formal Debate use a Resolution or Assertion.** In the motions, indictments, and pleas of courts of law, in the bills and resolutions of legislative assemblies, a complete statement is required. The ease with which the matter can be reduced to a proposition is in proportion to the definiteness of the discussion. The proposition is present whether it is definitely stated or not. The chairman announces that "John Smith will discuss the four-cent gas tax." What Mr. Smith actually discusses is an unannounced proposition: *The State of Iowa should place a tax of four cents on every gallon of gasoline.*

**C. For Discussion** usually state the Subject as an **Impartial Question**. Sometimes the subject is stated as a question rather than as a declaration, particularly in public discussions where only one speaker presents a set speech prior to the open forum. Thus at Ford Hall, Boston, the programs have announced these subjects :

*Are our national standards ethical?*

*When is marriage a success?*

*What is the matter with the Church?*

*Are the public schools democratic?*

*Can religion be made scientific?*

*Is civilization a disease?*<sup>1</sup>

At Cooper Union, New York, these questions were considered :

*Can the economic problem be solved without resort to dictatorship?*

*Can the people believe in the modern world?*

*Can people be happy in a planned economy?*

Note that you can never argue an interrogation any more than you can argue a term. The question is merely an attractive form for the popular title of your speech. Or it is a rhetorical question to allay the divisive spirit, create open-mindedness, and so further discussion. Note, however, that as the discussion proceeds you frame answers to the query, each answer a tentative assertion. A short provocative title for discussion would be *Shall we censor the American press?* The proposition which you would presently expound might be *Congress should establish a censorship of the American press.*

### III. THE CONTROLLING PURPOSE AND THE SUBJECT

Your argument, as stated above, aims to convert your listener. Your immediate purpose, however, may be merely to establish in his mind the truth or falsity of an alleged fact or to motivate him

<sup>1</sup> G. W. Coleman, *Democracy in the Making*, appendix. Little, Brown & Company, 1915.

to adopt some program. In the first case your interrogative or assertive proposition is one primarily of fact; in the second it is one chiefly of policy.

**A. Questions of Fact.** A problem of fact is typically one that deals with (1) the existence of an entity; (2) the occurrence of an action; (3) the establishment of similarity, or resemblance, between objects or relationships; (4) the connection of events.<sup>1</sup> This type of proposition settles the question *Is this assertion true?*

Propositions or subjects of this type are often debated. Questions involving the existence of things include such propositions as *Democracy is a failure*; those discussing an alleged action are illustrated by *John Doe murdered Richard Roe* and *Woman has achieved nothing in science and in art*; those discussing a possible relationship include such assertions as *Slums are a greater menace to capitalism than the Soviet Union* and *Fascism is preferable to communism*; those suggesting a connection of events are exemplified by *The results of the World War have promoted the peace of the world* and *The teaching of phonetics in every American college would produce better speech by undergraduates*.

**B. Propositions of Policy.** A proposition of policy raises the question *Should this course of action be followed?* This type of proposition aims at action, and he who assumes the burden of proof must establish the workable character of his plan. In each case the term *should be* is equivalent to *is both desirable and practicable*. Examples of propositions of policy are as follows:

RESOLVED, *That freshmen at Greentown College should be required to live in dormitories.*

RESOLVED, *That the United States should annex Mexico.*

RESOLVED, *That the required courses in physical training in the State University of Iowa should extend over a four-year period.*

RESOLVED, *That in all American colleges academic credit should be given to each student participating in intercollegiate debating.*

<sup>1</sup> See W. C. Shaw, *The Art of Debate* (Allyn and Bacon, 1922), pp. 20-21. See also Donald Hayworth and Robert B. Capel, *Oral Argument* (Harper & Brothers, 1934), p. 17.



School and college debaters have usually preferred questions of practical policy. Students have preferred to argue whether this or that "should be carried out" rather than whether it is "desirable." The latter word has led to much wrangling by those who insist that if a thing is desirable it ought to be put into effect, as opposed to those who wish to confine the discussion to the realm of theory.

In order to break up the rigid conventionalities of debate, schools and colleges have of late years resorted to questions of fact. In general, audiences, evidently of practical minds, indorse more enthusiastically propositions discussing measures to be acted upon by local, state, or national lawmakers.

#### IV. TESTS FOR THE SELECTION OF THE SUBJECT

Although you were encouraged at the beginning of this chapter to discuss almost every subject, the application of certain principles, or criteria, in the choosing of your topic will help you to make a discriminating selection. Some subjects are more fully adapted to your own interests and experiences than others; some will appeal much more than others to your audience; some will be more timely than others; some will be preferable because discussion of them will be more profitable; and some will be more worth while because they are sufficiently limited in scope. Let us examine each of these tests of your topic.

**A. Select a Subject Adapted to the Speaker.** Prefer that subject which relates itself to your experience and your vital thinking. What holds true of subject matter in general, whether it be that of a story you intend to write or a speech you intend to deliver, is to be applied to the field of discussion. Select the material about which you have reflected, about which you have notions, and about which you think you have a real message. Perhaps the single tax means little to you and always will; then you had better discuss some educational or political subject which touches your imagination. The greatest thrill in debate



comes when you work in a field with which you are familiar and in which you are interested. Since interest and attention result from focusing on a problem, in many cases you can develop enthusiasm for a topic apparently dull in itself. In general, however, follow the principle of choosing themes and ideas that are close to your experience.

**B. Select a Subject Adapted to the Audience.** What is true of writing and speaking in general is true of the argumentative subject. It should appeal to the needs and interests of the listeners. It should fix and hold attention, and should create desire. Curiosity, self-interest, the love of the familiar or the novel should all be appealed to. Sometimes the subject is as old as human experience. *Shall we live again?* was contemporary for Job's audience and is so for ours. Again, heavy though it is, *Shall taxes be reduced?* has been debated again and again in and out of Congress, and the reports of such debates continue to furnish front-page headlines. People are interested in their pocketbooks. A Boston labor organization apparently found great interest in discussions on the labor unions, the family of the future, the social center, the democratic ideal, and the socialization of a competitive world. Iowa farm bureaus have discussed with great enthusiasm such questions as the following:

*The basis of state revenue should be incomes rather than property.*

*Individual farm reorganization and management hold more possibilities for improving the agricultural situation than legislation holds.*

Secondary-school pupils would be interested in such propositions as the following:

*The high school should publish a monthly magazine rather than a school annual.*

*The state of — should furnish textbooks to all elementary-school pupils.*

*A winter-sports project should be adopted in —.*

*The faculty of — High School should have the power to suspend any student for attending a midweek public dance.*

*National high-school debating contests should be condemned.*

*Every school should be equipped with at least one radio receiving set.*

**C. Select a Timely Subject.** This principle is really a special form of the preceding one, but because of the importance of observing timeliness the suggestion is given prominence. It is hard in these days, at least in undergraduate circles, to create great interest in such subjects as *RESOLVED, That Senators should be elected by popular vote*. Yet not many years ago college debaters, attired in evening dress, argued this point on the basis of months of preparation. A great many questions, like this one, are rejected because they are obsolete, such as questions having to do with slavery, bigamy, the press gang, and dueling. Yet colonial undergraduates fought fiercely over some of these issues. Even recent problems quickly lose significance. Every year has its characteristic subjects. For example, in 1928-1929 the collegians were arguing about the Kellogg Peace Pact; in 1929-1930, about the Canadian system of liquor control; in 1930-1931, the Young reparation plan and repeal of the Eighteenth Amendment; in 1931-1932, control over the basic American industries; in 1932-1933, readjustment of property taxation, the breakdown of capitalism; in 1933-1934, the national banking system and the guarantee of deposits; in 1934-1935, Federal aid to state and local education, and company versus non-company unions. It is highly desirable to deal with those issues that are emphasized at the hour, — those, for example, that occupy the front pages of the paper. The debater's thinking will be vitalized by the thinking of the immediate audience and by that of the larger audience which somehow also participates in the controversy.

Again, certain issues are recurrent. In 1912 the issue of the recall of judicial decisions was made popular by Theodore Roosevelt. The same issue became a burning question in the presi-

dential campaign of 1924, largely because of Senator La Follette's denunciations of the Supreme Court. When the highest court in the land declared the National Industrial Recovery Act and other legislation unconstitutional in 1935 and 1936, new criticism of the Court developed, and new college debates on the old issues were scheduled. Cancellation of World War debts to the United States produced scores of college debates in 1920-1923, when the problem of funding was still under discussion. The proposition fell into the discard, but quickly came to life after 1930 when the European nations refused to pay further installments. The new generation of university debaters dusted off the old arguments and gave them with new meaning. Similarly government ownership of railroads, the tariff, capital punishment, although debated by our fathers in literary societies before intercollegiate debating was born, are still pressing problems on the platform. In the second quarter of the twentieth century the following subjects are still of importance to Americans: abandonment of the protective tariff, increasing inheritance taxes, increasing the navy, open versus closed shops, a central bank, old-age insurance, a unicameral legislature for state governments, prohibition, the child-labor amendment, the League of Nations, uniform marriage and divorce laws, Federal control of education, and centralization of power in the Federal government.

**D. Select a Subject about which Discussion is Profitable.** The subject, while appealing to the speaker and the audience, should also be one the discussion of which is profitable. Sometimes, when the occasion is one for entertainment, the speakers are justified in considering the problem presented in Frank R. Stockton's story *The Lady or the Tiger*, the question whether the beautiful maiden or the beast came out of the door into the arena. Student literary societies at Edinburgh University have discussed in their lighter moods the question RESOLVED, *That the lounge lizard is preferable to the cave man*.<sup>1</sup> But if the talk in the world is in-

<sup>1</sup> See E. L. Hunt, "English Debating Reconsidered," *Quarterly Journal of Speech*, Vol. XXII (February, 1935), pp. 98-102.

creased, there must be some justification. Furthermore, if we are to change the opinions of men, we must use a subject with which there is some chance of making headway.

1. A subject that can be settled on rational grounds rather than on those of prejudice should be chosen. No moral or legal restraint should be imposed upon those who debate. But it is a fair question whether much of the religious discussion that goes on is worth while, simply because those who try to convert others to any faith are so deeply moved by sentiment and emotion that the controversy shifts to grounds other than purely rational ones. Some debates on the merits of the Hitler program in Germany in its discrimination against the Jews ended in free-for-all fights. Religious topics and others that involve deep feelings should not always be barred, but the limitations of such discussions should be clearly understood in advance.

2. The subject may be unprofitable if it is not capable of specific proof. In childhood we used to discuss what was on the other side of the sun or moon. While such mental exercises doubtless served as excellent intellectual gymnastics, their debating value was doubtful. Medieval schoolmen probably found similar mental stimulation and similar barrenness of concrete results when they disputed the ability of angels to stand on the point of a needle. Government ownership of public utilities may be a more hackneyed subject, but at least it provides a wealth of concrete material from which logical inferences may be drawn.

3. The question will be more profitable if it is two-sided; that is, if he who opposes the motion has opportunity to present a considerable part of the truth. Such propositions as *The United States has become a world power* and *It would be contrary to the interests of the United States to annex Canada* are undesirable because manifestly one-sided.

**E. Limit the Subject.** The proposition should not be too broad and yet not too narrow. The following propositions may be satisfactory for general discussion, but they are hardly to be selected if one hopes for a definite outcome:

*Prophetic visions are of more value than traditions.*

*Those who have done most for the world are those who have cared least for the world.*

*Disobedience, in the light of history, is man's original virtue.*

Each of these is so stated as to include a dozen other topics of formidable size. Many of the topics listed in the first part of this chapter are stimulating and challenging, but they are open to the charge of vagueness.

On the other hand, RESOLVED, *That dormitory room rents at Black College should be reduced ten dollars a year* is somewhat too trivial for the average audience, as would be the subject RESOLVED, *That the White University football team needs a first-string center in order to win the game with Grove University.* Debating, like original oratory, is most effective when inspired by important issues.

Your debate, or discussion, will also be more successful if the subject is limited to a statement that can be handled profitably in the prescribed time. For a ten-minute debate the proposition *The record of the Democratic party since the Civil War justifies our approval of it* should be limited to *The Democratic policy during the past year of increasing surtaxes on big incomes should be approved.*

## V. TESTS FOR THE WORDING OF THE SUBJECT

The exact framing of a question or proposition requires considerable skill. Often what appears to be a single or satisfactory statement turns out to have vague or ambiguous implications that invite quibbling rather than clear-cut exposition of rival ideas.

Propositions for interscholastic or intercollegiate debate are more and more coined by official committees. Each year since 1930 the wording committee of the National University Extension Association has spent weeks in getting the precise statement of the national high-school question for the ensuing year.



The Pi Kappa Delta, Western Conference Debate League, and similar organizations and fraternities are at great pains to start their program of preparation only after the proposition has been properly stated.

The prospective debater himself, however, in the classroom and elsewhere, is continually called upon to phrase a subject or to criticize intelligently the phrasing submitted to him. Such intelligent criticism is of course the basis of his discerning analysis of the proposition.

➤ **A. Frame the Proposition in a Simple Sentence.** The chief problem of the debater after he has limited his subject is to reduce it to a simple, specific sentence.

The compound structure, for example, is objectionable because it may include two distinct propositions only vaguely related. One of several reasons for refusing to argue the following proposition is its double-headedness: *RESOLVED, That the powers of the President should be substantially increased as a settled policy and that he should be ineligible for reëlection.*

The dependent clause, moreover, has little place in the propositional sentence. *If the several states should indorse the policy of the retail sale of liquor by a system of state monopoly and sale in state stores, political corruption and graft would increase* may be more conveniently phrased, *For the several states to indorse the policy of the retail sale of liquor by a system of state monopoly and sale in state stores would mean an increase in political corruption and graft.* Further improvement in the wording would be, *The policy of the retail sale of liquor by a system of state monopoly and sale in state stores would increase political corruption and graft.* The student of debating and of English will find interest and profit in working over at length the statement of this proposition or some similar one, in order to make it meet the tests of concise as well as accurate statement.

➤ **B. Omit from the Wording any Ambiguous, Question-begging, or Vague Terms.** An apparently innocent and straightforward statement may precipitate endless wrangling. If the occasion is



to be a decision debate or one that invites limited and specific treatment, be sure that your proposition is free from such terms as *socialistic system, will of the people, conservatism, best interests, control, progress*. Debates on RESOLVED, *That the general welfare of the people of the United States would be best promoted by democratic collectivism* led to all sorts of descriptions of *democratic collectivism* and to violent disputes over what that term involved.

Another illustration of the difficulties of wording occurred several years ago in the case of the Pi Kappa Delta question RESOLVED, *That the powers of the president of the United States should be substantially increased as a settled policy*. Those of us who directed debate teams on this subject or who judged debates on this proposition were impressed with the bewildering diversity of opinion concerning the terms *substantial increase* and *settled policy*. Were the powers to be added to those given to President Roosevelt as of July 1, 1933? Or were the powers to be in excess of those embodied in the NIRA legislation? If the latter interpretation was the proper one, then what form of "increase" was contemplated? As Alan Nichols explained in commenting on the proposition,

A substantial increase in the powers of the President was held to mean presidential legislation in the field of economics subject to a two-thirds veto of Congress; installation of the national executive as a Federal chief of police to prevent crime; control of the public school system to improve education; power to fix the agenda of Congress; regulation of banking and speculation; determination of hours, wages, and rates; price-fixing, ownership and operation of railroads, telegraph and telephones, radios, and what have you; control of all basic industries . . . etc., *ad nauseum*.<sup>1</sup>

Sometimes the use of negative terms causes confusion. *The Monroe Doctrine should no longer form part of the foreign policy of the United States* led one judge to cast his vote for the affirmative when he intended to vote for the negative. So, too, the audience

<sup>1</sup> Alan Nichols, "Debate Proposition and Contexts," *Quarterly Journal of Speech* (June, 1935), Vol. XXI, pp. 355-369.

found some perplexity in distinguishing negative from affirmative in the proposition RESOLVED, *That this house looks with disfavor upon anti-evolution legislation.*

To illustrate how a statement needs refinement, note the following evolution in the wording of the national high-school question for 1934-1935 at the hands of the Wording Committee of the National University Extension Association. The various changes were made largely in the effort to define in a specific way the phrase "substantial annual grants." The successive changes are indicated by italics.

1. The Federal government should make substantial grants for elementary and secondary education.

2. The Federal government should adopt a *policy* of substantial grants for elementary and secondary education.

3. The Federal government should adopt a policy of making substantial *annual* grants for elementary and secondary education.

4. The Federal government should adopt *the* policy of making substantial annual grants *to the several states* for elementary and secondary education.

5. The Federal government should adopt the policy of making substantial annual grants to the several states for *public* elementary and secondary education.

6. The Federal government should adopt the policy of making substantial annual grants *sufficient to maintain a fixed standard of education* to the several states for public elementary and secondary education.

7. The Federal government should adopt the policy of making substantial annual grants to the several states for public elementary and secondary education *in proportion to the determined needs of each state.*

8. The Federal government should adopt the policy of making substantial annual grants to the several states for public elementary and secondary education *sufficient to maintain a minimum standard of education.*

9. The Federal government should adopt the policy of *equalizing educational opportunity throughout the nation* by means of annual grants to the several states for public elementary and secondary education.

➤ **C. Word the Proposition so as to make Possible a Standard of Comparison.** A satisfactory debate results if we can compare the proposal advanced by the affirmative with an alternate one by the negative. A close comparison enables the speakers and audience to grasp details and clarify the whole discussion. A constant contrast of one specific point with another can help audience and debaters to reason more logically and to advance the argument to an inevitable conclusion. Note how the following statements invite the affirmative and negative each to take a definite position :

*The president of the United States should be elected by a direct popular vote instead of by the electoral college.*

*For a democratic nation the Congressional form of government is preferable to the Parliamentary form.*

*The sales tax should replace the property tax as a means of raising state and local revenue.*

Directors of debate who are interested in debate strategy and in securing some technical advantage sometimes draw up a wording that allows the negative to advance various alternatives. The chief aim of discussion, however, is not to invite sharp dialectics ; effective debating is obtained if the general position of each side is indicated by the language of the resolution.

➤ **D. Give to the Affirmative the Burden of Proof.** The proposition should be so phrased that those who introduce the resolution, or question, should assume the burden of proof. Burden of proof is the obligation on one side or the other of influencing the audience to accept a proposition. Logically the affirmative must assume this obligation, for whoever asserts should also attempt to establish his contention. *The several states should continue the system of private rather than socialized medicine* is a case in point. It should be noted, of course, that negative statements, referred to under principle *B*, and the presence of the word *not* do not in themselves indicate the presence or the absence of burden of proof. To give to the affirmative the burden, the statement

should be framed so that (1) the affirmative advocates a policy or contention strongly opposed to public opinion, or so that (2) a change from existing affairs is advocated, as in the usual question of policy. RESOLVED, *That the issuance of tax-exempt securities should be permitted by law* clearly lays the burden on the negative, as do the following propositions:

*The War Department and the Navy Department should continue as separate units.*

*Each state should refuse to adopt the policy of compulsory voting.*

First of all, decide what mature public opinion over a wide area is in regard to the question; then phrase the proposition so that the affirmative must go against this tide of public sentiment. If you are in doubt about the trend of such social sentiment, or if sentiment is not crystallized or is evenly divided, then follow the conventional suggestion of wording the proposition so that a change from existing affairs is proposed. Usually the advocacy of a change will mean also the advocacy of a course of action contrary to popular approval.

## VI. THE PROPOSITION AND THE CONTEXT

The selection of a subject adapted to the speaker and the audience, a subject that is timely, debatable, and so stated that it will be a simple, concise, clear sentence with the burden on the affirmative, is no small task. The statement of the proposition, like the issues, should be tentative. The official wording, at any rate, should not go forth until the author of the resolution has reflected carefully on his sentence. Propositions should be framed and submitted for discussion only by those who have given the time, energy, and reflective thinking needed for the task.

It is advisable also that wherever possible a full explanation should be given of the intent of the proposition as conceived by those who have worded it. This statement should reflect the discussions and correspondence of the parties to the propositional

statement. If the undergraduate, in his approach to the resolution, has clearly in mind the trend of the discussion as expected by those who have mapped out the field, he can honestly and easily interpret the question. Moreover, those who listen or judge can call to account directly the speaker who resorts to peculiar and unwarranted explanations of the terms. As Alan Nichols states the case for the use of a résumé of context, "The result of accompanying every debate proposition with a résumé of its context would, it is confidently believed, be decidedly advantageous to debating everywhere."<sup>1</sup>

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

✓ 1. List five school problems that should be discussed; five highly important national problems.

✓ 2. Frame three satisfactory propositions from three of the following topics: Japan, banks, education, religion, the company union, highway police, kidnaping, motion pictures.

3- 3. Formulate a satisfactory proposition; then modify it in eight or nine ways, to illustrate the various ways by which a proposition may be objectionable in subject matter and wording.

4. Apply the tests of subject matter and phrasing to each of the following propositions:

a. A system of complete medical service should be made available to all citizens at little cost.

b. The Federal government should enact legislation to aid agriculture.

c. The United States should have a standing army of at least one hundred thousand men.

d. Mars is inhabited.

e. The university polishes the pebble and dims the diamond.

f. Modern poetry is either unintelligible or unimportant.

g. The pernicious custom of voting the Republican ticket should be abandoned.

h. The United States should reject the proposal for entrance into the League of Nations.

<sup>1</sup> Alan Nichols, *op. cit.* p. 369.



5. Review each of the following topics discussed in this chapter: (1) Representative subjects for discussion in the different fields of thinking. (2) The subject as a complete sentence. (3) The subject as a resolution or assertion. (4) The subject as an impartial question. (5) Questions of fact. (6) Propositions of policy. (7) Selection of a subject adapted to the speaker. (8) Selection of a subject adapted to the audience. (9) Selection of a timely subject. (10) Selection of a subject about which discussion is profitable. (11) Limiting the subject. (12) Framing the proposition in a simple sentence. (13) Framing the proposition without ambiguous or question-begging terms. (14) Word-ing the proposition so as to make possible a standard of comparison. (15) Giving the affirmative the burden of proof. (16) The place of the context.

6. Indicate which proposition, in your opinion, is most satisfactorily worded for college debate: (1) Presidents should be elected by popular vote. (2) Presidents should not be elected by the electoral college. (3) The pernicious methods of electing the presidents of the United States should be abolished. (4) Presidents of the United States should be elected by the electoral college. (5) Presidents of the United States should be elected by popular vote. (6) Presidents should be elected by popular vote for a single term of six years. (7) Presidents of the United States should be elected for a single term of six years, and each state should be limited to one Senator.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- BAIRD, A. C. *Essays and Addresses toward a Liberal Education*, Ginn and Company, 1934.
- COOPER, LANE. *The Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 20-24. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1932.
- O'NEILL, J. M., and MCBURNEY, J. H. *The Working Principles of Argument*, pp. 11-28. The Macmillan Company, 1932.
- ROBINSON, D. S. *The Principles of Reasoning* (Second Edition), pp. 15-29. D. Appleton-Century Company, 1930.

## CHAPTER III

### RESEARCH

I. IMPORTANCE OF SYSTEM IN PREPARATION. II. PERSONAL INFORMATION AND REFLECTION. III. EXCHANGE OF OPINION. IV. SYSTEMATIC READING. V. CATALOGUES AND INDEXES OF BOOKS. VI. PAMPHLETS. VII. GOVERNMENT DOCUMENTS. VIII. PERIODICALS, NEWSPAPERS, AND RADIO BROADCASTS. IX. SCHOOL AND COLLEGE DEBATES AND DEBATE MATERIAL. X. METHODS OF CONSTRUCTING A BIBLIOGRAPHY, OR LIST OF REFERENCES. XI. METHODS OF NOTE-TAKING. XII. REFLECTIVE THINKING

#### I. IMPORTANCE OF SYSTEM IN PREPARATION

Once you have selected your subject, your next step is to accumulate material upon which to base your argumentative speech. Where shall you find information? What type of material shall you seek? What methods shall you use in collecting it?

Beginners in discussion, when assigned to their subject, go straightway to the library, perhaps look vaguely around, ask the librarian, "Where can I find something on military training?" gather in a haphazard manner a few books and magazines that apparently contain articles vital to the subject, read voluminously, take copious, ill-digested, ill-assorted notes, and regard their preparation as more or less complete. The result is often vague thinking, nonassimilation of ideas, and — on the day of judgment — ineffective presentation.

The genuine debater or persuader, on the contrary, is like the genuine creator in any other mental enterprise. He proceeds with a definite method that gives him the maximum economy of time, minimum loss of mental energy in the grind of preparation, and in the end relatively effective public debate.

## II. PERSONAL INFORMATION AND REFLECTION

The first step, before you rush to the library, is to sit down calmly and reflectively and examine your individual ideas in regard to the proposition. The subject given to you may be so esoteric or complicated that your information and ideas concerning it seem blank. More often, however, you will find that your previous reading, observations, and experience have contributed a respectable body of facts and judgments concerning the issue. College athletes have been known to complain because they could "find no information in regard to the abandonment of intercollegiate athletics." Other students, when confronted with such subjects as **RESOLVED**, *That coeducation is a failure*, neglect to consider their fund of personal information.

## III. EXCHANGE OF OPINION

**A. Informal Discussion.** In conjunction with your private thinking you will find social thinking of value. If you will casually introduce the debate subject to your roommate, for instance, you will find the dialogue most stimulating in crystallizing your point of view. Moreover, you will often experience a considerable growth in knowledge and ideas.

**B. Personal Interviews.** Like discussions, personal interviews with members of the faculty who are specialists concerning the particular economic or political problem under investigation, with business men, or with public officers who may have special knowledge of the subject will be well worth while. Your mood in the inquiry, however, should be that of a reporter rather than that of a cross-examiner. Sometimes it is better to postpone this particular plan of gathering points of view until you have enough information to construct in advance of the interview a series of rather definite and pertinent questions.

**C. Personal Letters.** Similar to the personal interview is the letter to your Congressman or other expert, in which you inquire

for his opinion or for information. These letters, again, should be phrased with care and should not be mailed unless you are sure that these same facts cannot be gleaned from sources at hand. An authority should be spared the task of replying to you unless your letter to him is justified.

#### IV. SYSTEMATIC READING

**A. Knowledge of the Library.** For the typical discussion on such topics as capital and labor, city government, socialism, and immigration the material must be drawn from newspapers and magazines, special documents, and books. For this purpose you must know how to use to the utmost the facilities of the school library or college library. What is the arrangement of the library and its system of classification? What is the plan by which the library catalogues and organizes the data on the cards? What is the general plan, or make-up, of books? What are the most important reference books? These and similar questions you must answer. Note whether the classification is according to the Dewey Decimal System. Examine the library catalogue and distinguish between outline cards, subject cards, and title cards. Attention to cross references is also essential if one seeks adequate information in a short time.

**B. General References.** To begin preparation on a subject of current economic or political interest, the best plan is to get a bird's-eye view of the problem. General encyclopedias, such as *The Encyclopedia Americana*, Nelson's *Loose-Leaf Encyclopædia*, *The New International Yearbook*, *The Americana Annual*, *The Annual Register*, Appleton's *New Practical Cyclopaedia*, *The New International Encyclopædia*, *The Encyclopædia Britannica*, *The Columbia Encyclopedia*, and *Everyman's Encyclopedia*, may sometimes serve as a starting point. Here a definition or explanation and some historical background of the subject may be found. The cross references and bibliographies will also open suggestive avenues for more detailed reading.

**C. Special Encyclopedias, Almanacs, Yearbooks.** Special references should next be consulted, such as Seligman's *Encyclopædia of the Social Sciences*, McLaughlin and Hart's *Cyclopedia of American Government*, *The American Yearbook* (1910-1919, 1926), *The World Almanac* (1868- ), *The Statesman's Yearbook* (1864- ), Monroe's *Cyclopedia of Education*, Channing, Hart, and Turner's *Guide to the Study and Reading of American History*. These general and special sources are, moreover, valuable in many cases because of the accompanying bibliographies.

**D. Representative Books in Special Fields.** A few general books are here suggested as typical of the preliminary reading that will be helpful.

1. *Education*. Consult Flexner's *Universities: American, English, German*, Gauss's *Life in College*, Schilpp's *Higher Education Faces the Future*, Martin's *The Meaning of a Liberal Education*.

2. *Philosophy and Logic*. Durant's *The Story of Philosophy*, Einstein's *Living Philosophies*, Dewey's *Human Nature and Conduct*, Dimmet's *What we Live by*, Neilson's *Roads to Knowledge*, Robinson's *The Mind in the Making*, and similar books will be stimulating and informative. Those mentioned above are merely suggestive of a wide number that should be included in any authoritative list.

3. *Biography*. For biographical information the *Dictionary of National Biography*, Lippincott's *Biographical Dictionary*, *The National Cyclopædia of American Biography*, *Dictionary of American Biography*, *Leaders in American Education*, *Who's Who in American Education*, *Who's Who* (an English publication), *Who's Who in America*, and similar "Who's Who" books should be consulted.

4. *Morality and Religion*. Lippmann's *Preface to Morals*, Tagore's *The Religion of Man*, Russell's *The Conquest of Happiness*, and James's *Varieties of Religious Experience* are recommended.

5. *American Government and Civilization*. Consult Beard and Beard's *The Rise of American Civilization*, Laski's *Politics*,



Roosevelt's *Looking Forward*, Lowell's *Essays on Government*, Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, Wilson's *The State and Congressional Government*.

6. *Internationalism*. Norman Angell's *The Great Illusion*, Dickinson's *Causes of International War*, Moore's *International Law and Some Current Illusions*, Butler's *Looking Forward*, Sforza's *European Dictatorships*, Ogg's *Governments of Europe*, and Ray's *Major European Governments*, are suggestive. Starr's *Topical Analysis of Comparative European Governments* contains a great deal of information in brief form.

7. *Economics*. A broad foundation for any economic subject can be secured by reading Taussig's *Principles of Economics*, Garver and Hansen's *Principles of Economics*, Fetter's *Modern Economic Problems*, or Ely's *Outlines of Economics*. For example, Taussig, on the tariff, is an excellent authority.

8. *Sociology*. If the field is sociology, read Ford's *Social Problems and Social Policy*, Ross's *The Social Trend*, Wolfe's *Readings in Social Problems*, Young's *Source Book for Social Psychology*.

For other references see the "Selected References for Further Readings" in Baird's *Essays and Addresses toward a Liberal Education*.

Such sources will give you a general background by which you may appraise with much greater ease the definite arguments involved.

## V. CATALOGUES AND INDEXES OF BOOKS

Although the reading of brief views of your problem should give you an immediate start, your reference to indexes and other aids to your subject should also proceed without delay. Where shall you find books on your immediate subject? First, go to the card file in your library; jot down accurately and completely the references which you intend to draw. Secondly, for more complete information about books on your subject, go to the *United*

*States Catalog*, which contains an approximately complete record of every book published in the United States. The large catalogue is supplemented by the *Cumulative Book Index*, a monthly except for August, the last number of each volume covering all the publications of the year and forming an annual supplement. For older lists consult Roorbach's *Bibliotheca Americana*, 1820-1861; Kelly's *American Catalogue of Books published in the United States from 1861 to 1871*; *American Catalogue of Books*, 1876-1910. Helpful also are the *Publisher's Weekly* (a trade journal with lists of new publications of the week) and the United States Copyright Office's *Catalogue of Copyright Entries since 1891* (Government Printing Office, Washington). For British publications refer to the *English Catalogue of Books*, with the annual supplements. Consult also the *Essay and General Literature Index* (1900-1933), with annual cumulations, an index of about forty thousand essays and articles, published by the H. W. Wilson Company. See also the *Speech Index* (H. W. Wilson Company, 1935), an index to speeches contained in sixty-four collections.

## VI. PAMPHLETS

Much valuable information may be secured from professional organizations, such as civic societies, manufacturers' associations, trade groups, and propagandist groups. For example, if you are discussing labor problems, consult the American Association for Labor Legislation, 131 East 23d Street, New York City, or the American Federation of Labor, A. F. of L. Building, Washington, D.C. Suppose you are interested in the problem of disarmament: consult the American Peace Society, 313 Colorado Building, Washington, D.C.; Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 734 Jackson Place, Washington, D.C.; Navy League of the United States, Mills Building, Washington, D.C.; World Peace Foundation, 40 Mount Vernon Street, Boston, Massachusetts.

Organizations to be consulted for additional material include:<sup>1</sup>

American Birth Control League, Inc., 515 Madison Avenue, New York City.

American Federation of Labor, A. F. of L. Building, Washington, D.C.

American Medical Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Illinois.

Anti-Saloon League of America, 131 B Street, S.E., Washington, D.C.

Association of American Colleges, 19 West 44th Street, New York City.

Bankers Association of America, 22 East 40th Street, New York City.

Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 734 Jackson Place, Washington, D.C.

Chamber of Commerce of the United States of America, 1615 H Street, N.W., Washington, D.C.

Child Welfare League of America, 130 East 22d Street, New York City.

Foreign Policy Association, 8 West 40th Street, New York City.

International City Managers' Association, 850 East 58th Street, Chicago, Illinois.

League for Industrial Democracy, 112 East 19th Street, New York City.

League of Nations Association, 8 West 40th Street, New York City.

National Association of Manufacturers, 11 West 42d Street, New York City.

National Bureau of Economic Research, 1319 Broadway, New York City.

National Conference of Social Work, 82 North High Street, Columbus, Ohio.

National Consumers' League, 156 Fifth Avenue, New York City.

National Education Association of the United States, 1201 Sixteenth Street, N.W., Washington, D.C.

National Industrial Conference Board, 247 Park Avenue, New York City.

National Research Council, 2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C.

<sup>1</sup> See the *World Almanac* for additional addresses of societies with a purpose.

*The Vertical File Service*, developed by the H. W. Wilson Company, includes a monthly catalogue which records pamphlets available, with descriptive notes about the various articles. *The Public Affairs Information Service* referred to under "Periodicals" is also an excellent source for pamphlet references.

A special type of report is the business-service report. Consult the *Babson Reports*, *Brookmire Forecaster*, *Moody's Investment Letters*, *Standard Trade and Securities Service*, *United States Chamber of Commerce Business Services*.

## VII. GOVERNMENT DOCUMENTS

Much of your important source material may come from the reports, bulletins, and other publications of the national government and sometimes of various state or municipal governments. These government, or public, documents or publications cover topics in almost every field. In political science, economics, finance, labor, statistics, education, and similar departments the information is especially complete.

United States government reports are numerous and invaluable. The authors are usually specialists, and they are in a position to obtain accurate data. These authorities have been selected because of their ability to pass civil-service examinations or because their reputation has been established. Such documents are thus entitled to authoritative rating.

For the public documents of Congress and of the various departments of the Federal government see the *Index to the Reports and Documents* and *Catalogue of the Public Documents*, with the supplementary *Monthly Catalogue of the United States Public Documents*, issued by the Government Printing Office. The local librarian will help you to explore these references and, by the aid of serial numbers to the various documents, enable you to obtain the actual report. For lists of government documents, write to the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D.C.

Sometimes the Congressional committee hearings, a source of voluminous evidence, are printed (that is, those not confidential in nature). To get at them, see the *Index of Congressional Committee Hearings*.

Various department indexes give an opening to the rich stores of the respective departments, as, for example, lists of publications of the Agricultural Department, with analytical index; *Catalogue of Publications of the United States Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce*; and the indexes of the publications of information concerning the census, education, engineering, foreign relations, labor, and so on. The Division of Documents of the Library of Congress issues a monthly check list of state publications.

The following are a few of the bulletins and documents to which debaters have resorted with excellent results: *United States Census Report*, which contains vital statistics on population, labor, and many other subjects; *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, with its statistics on population, defectives, immigration, finances, money and banking, wealth, railways, farms and crops, and a wide range of other subjects; *Commerce Yearbook*, with detailed information about business conditions in the United States; *Commerce Reports*, a monthly survey; *United States Office of Education Reports*; the Congressional documents, including (1) *Senate Documents*, (2) *Senate Reports*, (3) *House Documents*, (4) *House Reports*.

**A. The Congressional Record.** Without question, the chief government document and the most convenient one for reference is the *Congressional Record*, which gives complete debates on most of the questions of the day. It is so indexed that by looking under the names of Congressmen, subjects, or names of bills you can readily locate definite topics. Debaters undoubtedly miss a mine of information when they fail to explore this source. Do you wish exhaustive discussions of foreign policies, regulation of railroads, education policies, radio regulation, and many other practical subjects? The *Record* contains remarks on them all.



College and school debates on the League of Nations, recognition of Russia, aviation, disarmament, tax reduction, and many other subjects have been worked out largely by reference to this source.

**B. Private Publications reporting Government Proceedings.**

An account of the official proceedings in Washington, including full reports of Congressional debates, special committee reports, and special departmental and other reports, is contained in the *United States News*, a newspaper privately owned and published, and issued since March, 1926. This paper contains an index. The *Congressional Digest*, a monthly, also privately owned, aims to accomplish a somewhat similar purpose.

VIII. PERIODICALS, NEWSPAPERS, AND RADIO BROADCASTS

**A. Periodicals.** For a full understanding of the subject, current events not recorded in any books must be taken into account. Periodical literature, especially that of recent months, will in some cases certainly form the backbone of the material. The *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature* (since 1900) is indispensable. It is a cumulative index made up of (1) permanent cumulated volumes, (2) annual volumes, (3) monthly issues, cumulating quarterly. For periodicals before 1906 *Poole's Index to Periodical Literature* (1802-1906) is standard. The *Readers' Guide Supplement*, known now as the *International Index to Periodicals*, covers more scholarly journals and foreign periodicals not listed in the *Readers' Guide*. Debaters frequently assume that the *Readers' Guide* about exhausts the desirable periodical references. Too much emphasis cannot be placed upon the fact that the other periodical indexes are highly important. You will, therefore, according to your special subject, consult also the *Industrial Arts Index*, *Agricultural Index*, *Education Index*, *Index to Legal Periodicals*, *Engineering Index*, *Index Medicus*, *Dramatic Index*, and the *Public Affairs Information Service*. The last mentioned is especially useful, indexing articles in hundreds

of periodicals and referring to analytical material in several hundred other publications. It is issued in bimonthly and annual cumulations. The *Book Review Digest* is a digest and index of selected book reviews in more than fifty English and American periodicals; it is issued monthly, with an annual cumulation. Here you can often obtain a definite opinion about a book which you may not have had opportunity to examine. The *Union List of Serials* lists seventy thousand periodicals in some two hundred United States and Canadian libraries. Such a list will give you the location of magazines not found in your library.

Source material for school and college debates may be found in such magazines as the following:

1. **Government, Law, and Current History.** *The American Journal of International Law*, *American Municipalities*, *The American Political Science Review*, *The American Review of Reviews*, *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, *The Constitutional Review*, *Current History Magazine of the New York Times*, *Foreign Affairs*, *The Harvard Law Review*, *The Iowa Law Review* (also other law reviews), *Journal of the American Judicature Society*, *The Journal of Political Economy*, *The Literary Digest*, *The National Municipal Review*, *Political Science Quarterly*, *Public Administration*, *Time*, *To-day*.

2. **Sociology.** *The American Journal of Sociology*, *The Child Welfare Magazine*, *The Journal of Applied Psychology*, *The Journal of Genetics*, *The Social Forces*, *The Sociological Review*, *The Survey*.

3. **Economics.** *The American Economic Review*, *The American Federationist*, *American Institute of Banking Bulletin*, *The Annalist*, *Barron's Weekly*, *The Coal Age*, *The Commerce Monthly*, *The Commercial and Financial Chronicle*, *Dun and Bradstreet's Monthly*, *The Financial World*, *The Income Tax Review*, *The Journal of Farm Economics*, *The Monthly Labor Review*, *The Nation's Business*, *The Quarterly Journal of Economics*.

4. **Education.** *The American Oxonian*, *The American Scholar*, *Education*, *The Educational Review*, *The English Journal*, *School and Society*.

5. *Speech*. *The Debater's Digest*, *The Forensic* (Pi Kappa Delta), *The Gavel* (Delta Sigma Rho), *The Quarterly Journal of Speech*, *The Speaker* (Tau Kappa Alpha), *Vital Speeches*.

6. *Journals of Opinion and Miscellaneous*. *The Atlantic Monthly*, *Blackwood's Magazine*, *The Contemporary Review*, *The Dial*, *The English Review*, *The Fortnightly Review*, *Fortune*, *The Forum*, *Harper's Magazine*, *The Nation*, *The New Outlook*, *The New Republic*, *The New Statesman and Nation*, *The Nineteenth Century and After*, *The North American Review*, *The Open Court*, *Printer's Ink*, *The Reader's Digest*, *Scribner's Magazine*, *The Yale Review*.

These lists are by no means exhaustive; they merely illustrate the wide range of periodicals available.

**B. Newspapers.** Newspaper information, unreliable and incomplete although it may be at times, is part of every up-to-the-minute discussion. For material in the newspaper files, refer to the *New York Times Index*, which can be used as a date index. With the date as a guide, this index may be applied to any newspaper. "The brief synopses of articles answer some questions without references to the paper itself."<sup>1</sup> Another well-known index is that of the *London Times*.

**C. Radio Broadcasts.** Many of the debates and lectures over the radio are available in mimeographed or printed form. Write for such material to the radio station or to the sponsoring organization.

## IX. SCHOOL AND COLLEGE DEBATES AND DEBATE MATERIAL

College debates are frequently printed. The *University Debaters' Annual*, E. M. Phelps, editor, is issued annually by the H. W. Wilson Company, New York City. The debates are usually the stenographers' reports, and are accompanied by a serviceable bibliography. *Intercollegiate Debates*, E. R. Nichols,

<sup>1</sup> Mudge, *Guide to Reference Books* (Sixth Edition), p. 25. American Library Association, 1936.

editor, a similar volume, is published annually by Noble and Noble, New York City. This latter series has the additional merit of an introduction summing up admirably the debate trends of the year. All printed debates, it is unnecessary to state, should be read only after you have clearly set your own point of view concerning the problem.

The *Debate Handbook Series*, published by the H. W. Wilson Company, covers almost forty representative topics of the times. Each volume, on a single topic, contains a brief bibliography, and reprints of the articles. The *Reference Shelf* series, issued frequently by the H. W. Wilson Company, duplicates the purpose and method of the *Debate Handbook Series*. The *Reference Shelf* books, by contrast, provide abridged treatment of the subject.

The Committee on Debate Materials of the National University Extension Association issues for the schools of the United States a book of selected material on the debate question for the current year. The volumes, printed and sold at small cost, include those on taxation and socialized medicine. These Extension handbooks are indispensable to school debaters.

The Superintendent of Documents at Washington has issued a *Bibliography for Debaters*, a price list of titles of government publications especially interesting to debaters.<sup>1</sup> Many subjects are listed; the prices for the various publications (usually in paper covers) under each topic are nominal.

## X. METHODS OF CONSTRUCTING A BIBLIOGRAPHY, OR LIST OF REFERENCES

**A. Character of a Bibliography.** The discussion above of source material assumes that you have a working bibliography on your topic. A bibliography is a list of sources on a given subject. You should distinguish three kinds of bibliographies: (1) a basic bibliography, a comprehensive listing of all the literature of a subject up to a given date; (2) a current bibliography,

<sup>1</sup> Ask for Price List 74 or the later equivalent list.

a record of the sources of a given period (for example, one year); (3) a selective bibliography, including a limited list of books and articles best adapted to your purpose. This latter type you should label "List of references." It, rather than a complete bibliography, is really what you want for practical purposes.

**B. Printed Bibliographies.** One of your first tasks as an investigator is to secure any printed, authoritative bibliographies on your proposition.

The Library of Congress issues special bibliographical lists catalogued under "United States Library of Congress." It also furnishes special typewritten bibliographies.

Almost all the books discussed previously in this chapter, including the encyclopedia articles, contain bibliographies. Mudge's *Guide to Reference Books* lists under each of the special subjects, such as religion and social science, a number of bibliographies.

**C. Preparing Your Own List of References.** Because your subject is almost invariably a live one, you will find it necessary to draw up a selective bibliography.

1. For books, go first to the *United States Catalog*, with the recent *Monthly Cumulative Supplements*. If you are doubtful about whether a recent book should be included, perhaps the *Book Review Digest* will give you a clue.

2. Next consult your college-library card system, although the data given may need to be supplemented by those from the *United States Catalog*. Star those books which are in your local library.

3. Refer next to the recent numbers of the *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*, discussed above.

4. Go next to any other special indexes, for example, the *Public Affairs Information Service*.

5. Then consult government documents by means of the recent indexes to the *Congressional Record*, and perhaps of the *Catalogue of Public Documents* with the supplementary *Monthly Catalogue*.

6. Then list a number of selected references to the *New York*



*Times* or equivalent newspapers, by means of the *New York Times Index*.

**D. Methods of Recording Your Items.** 1. Use cards or slips of paper so that you can sort your items systematically and add constantly (a debater's bibliography is complete only after he steps on the platform for his final debate on the subject).

2. Place only one item on a card.

3. Classify your assembled list into divisions of (a) bibliographies; (b) books; (c) pamphlets and reports; (d) periodicals (including newspapers or making a special division for the latter).

4. For books (including pamphlets) include the author's name and initials, the exact title of the book, the name of the publisher, the place and date of publication, and the number of the edition (if revision has been made); thus:

HOLCOMBE, ARTHUR NORMAN. *Government in a Planned Democracy*. Norton, New York, 1935.

Note that the entries for books will thus be arranged alphabetically by authors.

5. For periodicals (including newspapers) list the title of the magazine, volume and page, and, if possible, the date, title of article, author's name and initials; for example,

*Foreign Affairs*, 13: 595-599, July, 1935. "Civilization on Trial," H. G. Wells.

6. Use a filing box and alphabetical guide cards. Above all, not only in debate but in every college subject, copy your items accurately and clearly, so that typists may read them. If you can thus prepare a worth-while selective bibliography, you have laid the basis for research. Your term papers and other college and professional investigations will thus more easily bear the stamp of genuine scholarship.

## XI. METHODS OF NOTE-TAKING

Once the selective bibliography, or list of references, is tentatively arranged or under way, you are confronted with the problem of systematically taking notes on your reading. Here

again a proper method is necessary. At no point in debate preparation do students show greater neglect. At no point should you exercise more patience than in putting on paper the results of your study of sources. If you follow a plan, you will save hours. Don't rely on your memory. Don't hastily jot down the ideas or facts on odd scraps of paper and wonder the next day just where or how you found some idea. Don't subject yourself to the embarrassment of having some other debater or some critic judge quietly ask you, "Just where did you learn that alleged fact?" Proceed somewhat as follows:

1. Use cards or sheets of paper of uniform size. Three-by-five-inch cards are standard. They can be quickly classified.

2. Place only one fact or point on a card. Otherwise the material cannot be readily classified. These cards are not to be confused with the bibliography cards. The latter you have carefully pigeonholed in the "bibliography box." Loose-leaf notebooks are sometimes used; but they are usually not so satisfactory as the smaller recording media.

3. Place at the top of the card or small sheet of paper the main issue or topic to which the specific fact or evidence refers. See below for suggestions concerning the topics.

4. Indicate, preferably at the bottom of the card, the exact source of your information. Here exercise your will power to make the record accurate. It is unnecessary to copy everything you read; read selectively and take things down discriminately. But once you place an item on paper, give the specific reference.

5. Quote accurately from each source and indicate omissions by means of dots. Avoid long quotations. Be sure that your citation represents the spirit as well as the letter of your source. Your citation should represent also the context of the article.

6. Let your notes be mainly facts rather than opinions. Statistics, illustrations, specific cases, rather than mere authorities should form the bulk of your data.

7. Assemble your items under general headings. When you begin reading, form a rough program of things to look for;

presently a more detailed classification will suggest itself to you. In some cases you can relabel some of your evidence cards. Such possible topics would be *history of the case or problem, explanation of terms, main issues, need for the proposal* (subtopics might be *economic evils, social evils, political evils, causes of the alleged evils or weaknesses in the present system or situation, alternate proposals for dealing with the problem* (here a number of classifications will develop as your investigation unfolds), *advantages and disadvantages of the proposal* (here break your cards into *economic, social, political, moral, physiological, legal, financial, and other* sections); *practicability of the proposal* (here break your cards into groupings, such as (a) *cost*, (b) *precedent for the proposal*, that is, its successful or unsuccessful working in various cities, states, or countries, (c) *authorities in favor of or opposed to the proposal*, (d) *machinery for its administration*, (e) *justification or justice or injustice of the plan*, and (f) *the social and economic results*, or (g) *the results to different groups*, such as to the individual, to the local community, to the state, and to the nation). These titles are tentative; of course they somewhat overlap. If, however, you follow them, you will read more methodically from the beginning.

Note the following example, prepared on the proposition RESOLVED, *That the Federal government should censor the motion pictures in the United States, constitutionality waived.*

#### **Need**    *Pictures and Delinquency*

"The alarming antisocial trend of the moronic and delinquent types has been created and stimulated by attendance at these performances."

F. D. Culpin, House of Representatives, on "The Crime-Breeding Movies," *Congressional Record* 79: 11,070, July 2, 1935.

## XII. REFLECTIVE THINKING

**A. The Tendency to Eclecticism.** One of the besetting dangers of wide and specific reading in connection with the preparation of a debate lies in the wholesale appropriation and reproduction of the material. In these days when endless pamphlets, articles, reports, and interviews are swamping the reading public, it is not only possible but exceedingly easy to secure excellent ready-made arguments on most debatable subjects. The novice in debating, unable to withstand the temptation offered him by a rich array of arguments, in many cases succumbs. His argument as delivered becomes a series of echoes of some authoritative writer, or writers, on the subject. Usually the speaker gives credit to his sources, so that the debate becomes a piecing together of ideas, each prefaced by "Mr. So and So says," or "According to Mr. So and So," or "To quote Mr. So and So in the last number of *Century* magazine, p. 14," and so on. The process is eclectic, a dovetailing of authorities without the hazarding of a single personal opinion. In a few cases the student, regarding as his own whatever he finds, delivers, as his own, paragraph after paragraph from the *Congressional Record* or other sources without so much as giving credit. It should be added here that the disposition of some "coaches" to phrase the ideas for the debaters has contributed to the student's confusion concerning originality and plagiarism.

**B. Proper Indication of Quotations.** Although exact rules which guarantee the prevention of plagiarism are impossible, teachers of debate and composition in general agree that any quotation of three or more words should be included within quotation marks, and that he who speaks the words of another must make clear to the audience that the statements are not his own.

**C. Need for Assimilation of Material.** How, then, shall you preserve your own soul in a library rich in evidence and arguments for your case? The answer lies in the practice of *assimilation* of what you read. Your reading is not principally to the end that the fifty or more quotations on your cards may be strung

out one after the other in the form of a so-called speech, but rather that you may read reflectively and creatively. As Emerson says: "One must be an inventor to read well. As the proverb says, 'He that would bring home the wealth of the Indies must carry out the wealth of the Indies.' There is then creative reading as well as creative writing. When the mind is braced by labor and invention, the page of whatever book we read becomes luminous with manifold allusion. Every sentence is doubly significant, and the sense of our author is as broad as the world."<sup>1</sup>

**D. Methods of Assimilation of Material.** Emerson is thus suggesting to the debater that the latter should have in his own mind some independent conception of what the arguments are about and that each step in the reading is to be checked and related to these mental concepts. The results of such comparison are the rejection of some of the printed passages and the incorporation of others into the mind of the investigator. This process of mental rumination results in the clarifying, ordering, and interpreting that give the speech the undeniable stamp of originality. It becomes the expression of the debater's personality and as such is different from every similar argument under the sun.

Few debaters, especially young ones, are expected to be Shakespearean in their creative ability. Any school or college student who practices reflection and exercises mental judgment can produce thoroughly and originally developed arguments even on such voluminously discussed subjects as whether the government shall own the coal mines.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. How much dependence is to be placed on personal knowledge? interviews? letters?

2. Test your general knowledge in regard to a policy of permanent prohibition of immigration into the United States. Which side do you uphold? Why? Can you prove your case? Is your material exact knowledge, or is it largely conjecture?

<sup>1</sup> R. W. Emerson, "The American Scholar," in *Nature*.

*Resolved that to be exact*

*a fair for*



✓ 3. Present to the instructor your tentative selective bibliography, or list of references, on a question for debate assigned to you. If a full bibliography already exists, supplement it by obtaining more recent references. Your bibliography should be neatly prepared (but should consist of the original cards ready for any reshuffling), with the proper classifications of books, periodicals, and other divisions suggested in this chapter. Each item should be accurately, completely, and legibly copied. If practicable, let your references indicate that you have consulted the *United States Catalog*, the *Readers' Guide*, and the other special indexes, the *Congressional Record* and other government publications, the *New York Times Index* or other newspapers. (At the option of the instructor this list of references may be secured as a group project, with each member assigned to some special index or division of material for his contribution.) The number of items offered for this assignment will vary with the subject. It may be said, roughly, that each member of the group, if he alone is to give an entire list of references, should probably offer at least thirty or forty cards.

4. Present to the instructor at least twenty evidence cards, that is, cards representing your note-taking on the subject investigated for the exercise above. Be sure that each card conforms in every detail to the instructions in this chapter. Be sure that you differentiate your evidence cards from those used for making your selective bibliography. (The latter will comprise an entirely different bundle of material.)

5. Test your knowledge of this chapter by reviewing the following topics (be prepared for oral or written reporting on any one or all):

1. The importance of system in preparation.
2. The importance of personal information in working out the debate topic assigned to you.
3. What you have learned from discussion with your roommate (or an acquaintance) on the topic assigned to you.
4. What letters you should write on this topic.
5. The classification of books in your library (Dewey or other system).
6. The proper attitude toward librarians.
7. Recommend a general encyclopedia and explain why you prefer it to another good one.
8. Name a special encyclopedia that has material on the subject of your debate.

9. Name three or four authoritative books in the field of your subject for debate.

10. Explain the value to debaters of the *United States Catalog* and its attendant *Cumulative Book Index*.

11. Explain where to go for a list, with addresses, of propagandistic or learned societies.

12. Name five societies that might have material for your specific purpose.

13. Explain how to locate a recent Congressional debate on your subject (or another subject, if necessary).

14. Explain how to locate a government report by some Senate committee.

15. Explain what you might find in the *United States Census*; the *Statistical Abstract*; the *Congressional Digest*.

16. Name at least six special periodical indexes in addition to the *Readers' Guide*.

17. What is the *Book Review Digest*? the *Public Affairs Information Service*?

18. What weekly magazine of current events do you read? Explain why it is worth while.

19. Give reasons why your colleagues should subscribe to a certain monthly magazine of opinion.

20. Expound the uses of the *New York Times Index*.

21. Distinguish between *Intercollegiate Debates* and the *University Debaters' Annual*.

22. Name three kinds of bibliographies.

23. Explain whether a printed bibliography on the question for your debate is available.

24. Summarize the five or six principal types of sources to which you went for your selective bibliography.

25. Explain at least six principles or steps which you followed in recording your bibliography.

26. Give at least seven rules for the recording of notes on your reading.

27. Draw up a sample of card evidence (fictitious if necessary) to illustrate proper methods of note-taking.

28. Explain the difference between the methods of debaters who merely echo and the methods of those who do creative thinking.

## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- BROWN, ZAIDEE M. *Library Key*. The H. W. Wilson Company, 1928.
- FAY, LUCY E., and EATON, ANNE T. *Instruction in the Use of Books and Libraries* (Third Edition). The F. W. Faxon Co., 1928.
- HEADLEY, L. A. *Making the Most of Books*. American Library Association, 1932.
- HUTCHINS, MARGARET; JOHNSON, ALICE S.; and WILLIAMS, MARGARET S. *Guide to the Use of Libraries* (Fourth Edition). The H. W. Wilson Company, 1929.
- MUDGE, ISADORE G. *Guide to Reference Books* (Sixth Edition). American Library Association, 1936.

## CHAPTER IV

### EXPOSITION OF THE PROPOSITION THROUGH DEFINITION AND ANALYSIS

I. THE AIM OF EXPOSITION. II. NECESSITY FOR EXPOSITION. III. EXPOSITION THROUGH EXPLANATION OF TERMS. IV. EXPOSITION THROUGH ANALYSIS OF THE QUESTION. V. ANALYSIS AND THE MAIN ISSUES. VI. STOCK ISSUES. VII. APPLICATION OF DEFINITION AND ANALYSIS TO TYPES OF DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

#### I. THE AIM OF EXPOSITION

Argument has at least two aims: first, it attempts to state clearly the problem under discussion; secondly, it attempts to furnish proof, intellectual and emotional, in support of a possible solution of the problem. The first of these aims Quintilian, in his *Institutes of Oratory*, discussed in his explanation of the "Cause" and his "Statement of Facts"; the second was developed by Aristotle in his suggestions about the logical, ethical, and pathetic modes of proof.<sup>1</sup> The first objective, that of surveying the ground of the controversy, or stating the problem, is achieved by exposition through definition and analysis.

#### II. NECESSITY FOR EXPOSITION

Suppose you were asked to present a debate or public speech on the subject **RESOLVED**, *That the Japanese policy in the Far East should be condemned*. Your first impulse, after you had done desultory reading, would be to marshal your ideas and begin

<sup>1</sup> For the statement of the problem, see Quintilian's *Institutes of Oratory* (translated by J. S. Watson), Book III, chap. 6; Book IV, chap. 5. For logical, ethical, and pathetic modes of proof, see Lane Cooper's *Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 7-10.

with the most obvious points, Japan's activities in Manchukuo and China. Perhaps you would champion the affirmative. You would dwell on such incidents as the bombardment of Shanghai in 1932, the twenty-one demands on China, and Japan's insistence on naval equality with the United States. These and similar ideas, especially if you were a reader of recent history of the Far East, would push themselves into the foreground of your thinking.

But your material for speech-making might still be ill-assorted. "Very well," you might say, "I'll give the audience the facts, and the speech itself will carry the day." By and by, however, if you were methodical, you would sit down quietly and ask yourself, "What, after all, should be talked about or proved? Since my time is limited to twelve minutes, I should make the most of it. What is this 'Japanese policy' that I have decided to criticize? What *are* some of the results that I condemn? Can I classify those results so that my material will be organized and yet follow the essential argument?" Systematically, then, with the aid of the recent yearbooks and other histories, you would build up a clear description of Japanese policy. You would then focus on the economic, political, and social effects of that policy upon Japan itself. Here you would consider the matter of Japan's huge population, her island location, her cultural and other ambitions, her commercial aims, and her alleged hope to lead the Orient politically.

After this survey of the problem from the narrow ground of Japan, you would, as Burke suggested in his argument on American taxation, take the "broader" view. What would be the effect of this policy upon the destinies of Germany, Russia, Great Britain, China, the United States, — the international results of the Japanese program? This process of making clear your terms and of dividing your problem into a series of subdivisions or subpropositions, of setting forth contrasting arguments, and of stating the arguments to be advocated from your angle is the process of exposition.



A headlong plunge into the argument without this preliminary survey may, with luck, turn out well ; more often, especially if a rival debater knows his case and his audience, you will retire conscious that something was wrong with your performance.

The first step, therefore, in preparation is not to argue but to expound. Webster, Lincoln, Wilson, and every other wise and able platform, court-room, or legislative debater, have excelled in the art of exposition. Thomas Erskine, one of England's greatest advocates before judge or jury, won not a few unpopular and difficult cases because he expounded so clearly the definitions and issues that seemingly little argument was needed. So Stephen Douglas, who commanded an immense popular following in the campaigns before 1860, continually made clear the great issues of the time, as did his rival, Lincoln. For example, in the campaign of 1860 Douglas stated the issue to be whether "there should be uniformity in the local institutions and domestic regulations of the different states of this Union."

If you have one month in which to prepare some complicated economic or social question, you will probably spend one third of your time mapping out clearly what is to be proved. As a result you may get to the bottom of the subject. Your entire discussion perhaps penetrates further into the problem than that of the opposing speakers. You have fully expounded your problem. Argument, treated in the older rhetorics with exposition, narration, and description, is one of the four kinds of discourse. It is a mistake, however, to assume that you can argue without exposition. Adequate argument combines at every turn with exposition, — explanation through definition and analysis.

### III. EXPOSITION THROUGH EXPLANATION OF TERMS

**A. The Aim of Definition.** First, you will inquire, "What do the terms of the proposition mean?" Of course various other terms arise throughout the discussion, and as you face each you will, as far as may be necessary, interpret it to your audience.

Chiefly, however, you are concerned with the interpretation of the subject as you or someone else has framed it.

In the discussion, above, of selecting and framing the subject, you were warned of the disaster that may overtake teams when the subject is improperly explained. At the best these interpretations are sometimes treacherous; words have hidden connotations and implications that constantly betray us. All the more reason, therefore, for you to inspect the terms carefully and patiently and then explain to others as clearly as you can what you have discovered.

It goes without saying that in this procedure you are primarily an expounder and not a controversialist. Your aim is honestly and directly to tell the whole truth about these terms. You are to interpret them not simply literally but also broadly, in the light of the context and of common sense. The best debater is also the best expounder.

**B. Principles of Definition.** Definitions, here as in other fields, are governed by logical principles. It is well for you to be familiar with the technical process as it has been described in many a book on logic or rhetoric. The process consists in first establishing the broadest boundaries of the meaning of the term and then excluding such parts of the meaning as do not fit this particular case. It is the process of describing the general idea, or the genus, and the differentia, or specific difference between this example and others of the same class. For example, "Taxes are portions of private property which a government takes for its public purposes." In this definition "portions of private property" describes the general class, or genus, and "which a government takes for its public purposes" sets forth the differentia.

1. The first principle, then, is that of stating the class, or group, to which the object of definition belongs. Economics is "a science that investigates" certain "conditions and laws." Humanism is "a philosophy of general development." Education is "an act or process of developing and cultivating mentally and morally." Once you have pigeonholed your general concept in its field, the

rest is comparatively easy. This classification is sometimes hard. Is a democrat one who delegates representation in government? Is a secondary school one that terminates with the twelfth grade? First, then, place your subject, or term, in its proper class.

2. The second principle is that of showing how your subject for definition differs from the other members of its group. What distinguishes education from other branches or processes of mental growth? The fact that it requires systematic instruction. What is economics? A science that deals with the conditions and laws affecting the production, distribution, and consumption of wealth. What is argument? An art that convinces and persuades a reader or listener.

This process of determining *genus* and *differentia* is carried out by expressing the definition in terms that are simpler and more familiar than the term defined, and by introducing no derivative of the term defined.

**C. Specific Means of Definition.** Clear and effective definitions that will withstand careful examination are usually the result of more than casual reference to the dictionary. Rather they represent wide reading on the subject and technical weighing of the terms. Dictionary definitions are inadequate because they are often too general, because the terms are to be defined only by reference to current situations, because the terms to be defined are frequently composed of two or more words, and because the correct interpretation may depend on the context. Dictionaries are of little help in defining such terms as "Japanese policy," "equalizing educational opportunity," and "socialization of medicine." Specific aids that may well supplement the dictionary are definition by (1) authority, (2) etymology, (3) history, (4) illustration, (5) contrast or comparison, (6) negation or elimination, (7) enumeration of details. Any combination of these methods may also be made.

1. *Definition by Authority.* One of the most common methods of definition is by authority. Although a dictionary statement

is of little value, the explanation of the term as given by some recognized specialist in the field is helpful both in making clear the real meaning and in making that meaning impressive to the reader or hearer.

The following section of the introduction to a discussion of the proposition RESOLVED, *That the United States should provide for the stabilization of the dollar* illustrates the method of defining by authority:

... According to the *Encyclopedia of Banking and Finance* (1931), the theory of the stabilized dollar is one in which there is a conversion of the present gold standard into a true commodity standard. Instead of the dollar's having a constant weight and varying purchasing power, there would be a dollar of constant purchasing power and varying weight.<sup>1</sup>

✓ 2. *Definition by Etymology.* The method of definition by etymology consists of explaining the meaning of a term by showing its original meaning and its history. To illustrate, *sabotage* might be explained as coming from an old French word meaning a "wooden shoe," the term later being applied to the deliberate and systematic obstruction of the process of production to injure an employer. Similarly, a *fellow* is a "fee-layer," a partner, a man who lays his fee, or property, beside yours.

Eugene Busher of Ohio Wesleyan, in an intercollegiate symposium held at Wooster College, argued in favor of a *laissez-faire* policy of economic reconstruction. He proceeded:

Now *laissez faire*, briefly defined, is the minimum amount of governmental interference in political and economic affairs. The phrase itself, *laissez faire*, most probably originated with the reply of the Frenchman Legendre to Colbert who asked him what could be done. "*Laissez-nous faire*" — let us alone — is what he replied.<sup>2</sup>

3. *Definition by History.* This method of making clear the terms is also a very common one. Students discussing the

<sup>1</sup> *Intercollegiate Debates*, Vol. XV, p. 44. Noble and Noble, 1934.

<sup>2</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1933-1934), p. 312. The H. W. Wilson Company.

Monroe Doctrine have summarized the history of that policy as the easiest way to define it; those who argue such a topic as the policy of Japan find that a brief recital of the history of the Japanese policy is the most feasible way to explain it. Every controversial subject has its history; that history will in any event be reviewable for evidence throughout the debate or discussion. Highly appropriate and effective is it to use significant features of that history to throw light on the meaning of the institutions under discussion. This history, it should be added, extends to the recent hour. What is the Japanese policy? Partly, perhaps, what that nation seems to be doing according to the latest radio information from the East. What is the Monroe Doctrine? That policy which the present administration, according to the latest information, applies in handling Latin-American foreign relations.

4. *Definition by Illustration.* One of the most effective ways to define is to illustrate. Such method is effective because it is vivid and clear. The illustration may be an example or an analogous case. In a discussion on the proposition RESOLVED, *That the rules of the Senate be revised as suggested by former Vice President Dawes*, the following explanation effectively uses definition by illustration:

To bring it right home to you, let me explain to you, in a personal way, how the plan of cloture for the Senate which Mr. Dawes advocates differs from that which prevails there at present. You are all members of some organization — your literary society, your lodge, your farm club, your church, your young people's society. Now, as you know, such an organization holds a business meeting once in a while — called a deliberative meeting in the parlance of parliamentary procedure. Now if, in such a meeting, you were governed by the present Senate rules, it would be possible for any member of the organization to stand up and talk just as long as he wanted to on any motion that was brought before the house. In fact, he would not have to talk straight to the point all the time, either. He could start off by making it appear that he was going to talk about a certain point involved in the motion, and then he could say or read anything that he pleased. He could



recite poetry, or read a novel, or give a lot of dry statistics from some departmental report a hundred years old. He could do anything he pleased to kill time, and the rest of the members would have to let him keep right on for at least two days and perhaps much longer unless they could get two thirds of the members together to put through a device for stopping him. Of course, you would not all have to listen to him, for you could go out and eat and sleep and do anything you pleased. But, in the meeting, that member would have the floor, and nobody could take it away from him.<sup>1</sup>

5. *Definition by Contrast or Comparison.* Still another vivid and clarifying technique in definition is to throw your conception of a term into sharp contrast with another term. For example, Russell Nye of Oberlin, in the symposium at Wooster College referred to above, defended socialism. In order to make clear his proposition he contrasted socialism with capitalism.

Before I proceed I should like to show you the difference between capitalism and socialism. . . . Capitalism is characterized by at least three things. The first of these is the pursuit of profit. . . . Secondly . . . is the competition between units. . . . Then, too, it differs also in the matter of control. The feature of capitalism in the way of control here lies in the hands of the capitalists. . . . Now I should like to show you how socialism has a complete break with each of these three points. In the first place, instead of the profit motive we have substituted service. In place of competition between units we have coöperation substituted. In place of control by capitalists we have collective ownership or ownership by the state, which is delegated authority from the people. So much for the definitions.<sup>2</sup>

6. *Definition by Negation.* Explanation by telling what a term or institution is not is similar to definition by comparison and is equally effective. In the symposium on economic reconstruction, Ralph Henderson of Wooster, arguing for Fascism, said :

<sup>1</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1925-1926), p. 13. The H. W. Wilson Company.

<sup>2</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1933-1934), p. 297. The H. W. Wilson Company.

I should like to correct a mistaken notion as to the nature of Fascism and what the essential features of Fascism are. I suppose to the average person Fascism is synonymous with clubs, free tickets to some Devil's Island where you will be detained in concentration camps. Or perhaps some of you who have investigated it a little more associate Fascism with radical ideas of those who fail to realize Mussolini was the savior of Italy. Fascism fundamentally is an economic theory.<sup>1</sup>

✓ 7. *Definition by Enumeration.* The method of enumeration, or recital of details (classification), is often substituted for a more academic explication. The enumerative method has the advantage of concreteness. It is likely, however, to bore listeners or readers. An illustration of this method may be drawn from a discussion of the proposition RESOLVED, *That installment buying of personal property in the United States is both socially and economically desirable.* Personal property was largely defined by the statement that "personal property includes those articles commonly listed by the Public Service Commission of the various states for the purpose of making assessment for the taxation of tangible property. The list includes such things as live stock, radios . . ."; and a considerable list follows. The debater concludes by the method of negation: "This list does not include stocks, bonds, and real estate." In a debate on the subject RESOLVED, *That the policies of Hitler are for the best interest of the German people*, the opening speaker explained the term "best interest of the German people" as including "economic well-being, high morale, and national equality." Then he enumerated details, such as food, clothing, pride of ancestry.

A debater, defining equalization of educational opportunity in the resolution RESOLVED, *That the Federal government should adopt a policy of equalizing educational opportunity throughout the nation by means of annual grants to the several states for public elementary and secondary education*, described a model program providing a minimum program available to all school children. The enumera-

<sup>1</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1933-1934), p. 305. The H. W. Wilson Company.

tion included a specific statement concerning teachers, buildings and equipment, curriculum, length of school term, and accessibility of the school.

This method is applied when the debater explains his plan in outline (the details are given and defended in a later speech). Thus a speaker in introducing the resolution **RESOLVED**, *That the various states should adopt a policy of providing medical care and services to all citizens without cost*, defined "policy" as representing a specific administrative and executive program which he briefly expounded. Such early presentation of a specific proposal not only helps the audience to understand at once your proposition but makes easier the later exposition by your colleague.

#### IV. EXPOSITION THROUGH ANALYSIS OF THE QUESTION

**A. The Aim of Analysis.** Definition in argumentative discourse, although necessary for clearness and ultimate persuasiveness, is merely preliminary to the complementary process of exposition: analysis. Analysis means a division of the subject. It means breaking the general problem into parts so that each can be carefully inspected. Partition means the selection of some of the divisions for presentation (the selection depending upon the limitations imposed by time, the speaker's interest and qualifications, and the demands of the audience). Division, or partition, results in the discovery and formulation of the points or contentions to be established or defended.

**B. Informal and Formal Analysis.** Analysis is of two classes, informal and formal. Informal analysis, sometimes called literary analysis, selects any one phase of the subject that appeals to the author and presents only that phase. In such a case the writer or speaker does not pretend to say all that he might say on his side, or even all that may be regarded as important. He emphasizes at least one idea which to him is significant; he conveys his special message. Such literary analysis is scattered through the works of Arnold, Huxley, Stevenson, Newman, Galsworthy,

and Shaw. It appears often in informal persuasive classroom speeches, and in noncontroversial radio addresses.

Formal analysis, or logical analysis, aims at a partition or classification which is more complete than the literary type. Its division and subdivision of material comprise a unified grouping of the material involved. Such formal analysis leads in turn to a synthesis, a putting together of the parts into the whole, without the loss of any part. Analysis and synthesis are complementary. You will note that even partial or informal analysis relies for its success upon a comprehension of the problem. Skill in selectivity means a thorough review of all the aspects of the problem. You are urged, then, to make a formal or adequate analysis, even though you present to the public only a single phase or issue. It is chiefly the formal analysis, the basis of a forensic, a college or university debate, or a speech of advocacy, with which those who read this book are concerned.

**C. Principles of Partition.** This division or partial division (partition) is based upon several principles, the application of which will help you to achieve clearness, relevancy, and economy in your analysis.

1. *Subdivision by One Principle Only.* The proposition must be separated into its subpropositions according to one principle only. For example, in a proposition of fact the principal subdivisions may be suggested by a classification of evidence. The proposition RESOLVED, *That the results of the World War have tended toward the peace of the world*, a proposition of fact, will lead to the following: first, the results of the World War have promoted world-wide militarism; secondly, the results of the World War have increased the economic imperialism of the great nations; thirdly, the results of the World War have fostered international hatred; fourthly, the results of the World War have weakened democracy, the great ally of peace; fifthly, the results of the World War have increased the spirit of nationalism.

A question of policy is typically worked out on the principle of causation, the tracing of causes and effects. RESOLVED, *That the*



*essential features of the University of Chicago plan of education should be adopted by the universities of the Western Conference Debate League* led to the following partition: Our present university educational system has grave evils; for the entire system fails to give the student adequate knowledge, the courses overlap and are paced for the mediocre student (an analysis of causes leading to the solution). The University of Chicago plan of education will remedy these evils of our university educational system; for the University of Chicago has reorganized its whole system to give the student a unified pattern of his education, the comprehensive-examination system proves to the student that he is gaining a mastery of the subject, and the system inspires the student to develop individual initiative (an analysis of the effects of the proposal).

2. *Exclusiveness.* The subdivisions of the proposition should not overlap. In one debate on the question RESOLVED, *That armed intervention by the United States in the internal affairs of foreign nations to promote or protect American interests is unjustified*, the negative brief showed this partition: first, armed intervention is morally justified; second, it is economically justified; third, it is justified politically; fourth, it will establish better relations between the countries; fifth, it will insure safety to our citizens and their property. Points three and four evidently coincide, since both deal with politics. Points two and five evidently overlap, since both stress economic security.

3. *Inclusiveness.* The subdivisions should together cover satisfactorily the field of the subject. The actual debate as delivered may, because of the limited time, permit only a partial presentation of the subject. The analysis, nevertheless, must be thorough enough to bring out the main contention. The speaker may explain that, because of time limitations, he will focus upon a certain phase. A critic-judge may rightly condemn a team that in a debate deliberately ignores a section of the field that is a part of the subject. On one occasion an intercollegiate team, in discussing the proposition RESOLVED, *That the United States*



*should lead in a movement to stabilize international currency*, limited its contention to theoretical considerations. Although it admitted that the administration at Washington might prevent such a political move, it argued that in theory this nation should do so. The judge ruled that the proposition called for a discussion of the practicability as well as the theory of the proposal. Students on the affirmative have frequently attempted to rule out or ignore a major part of the field of their subject.

4. *Scope of One Subproposition.* No one subproposition should equal the whole subject. The force of this rule is apparent. Beginners in debate, in their effort to size up quickly what is to be proved, disregard the principle. One debate on the statement RESOLVED, *That the Federal constitution should be amended, granting to Congress the exclusive power to enact uniform marriage and divorce laws in the United States*, set out to establish the following:

- a. Uniform marriage and divorce laws are necessary.
- b. Uniform marriage and divorce laws are feasible.
- c. The Constitution should be amended to grant Congress the exclusive power to enact uniform marriage and divorce laws.

The third point might better have been stated as follows: "A desirable plan can be formulated which will put into operation the necessary uniform marriage and divorce laws."

## V. ANALYSIS AND THE MAIN ISSUES

**A. Explanation of Main Issues.** How shall you select those definite contentions, logically related to the subject and to each other, mutually exclusive, comprehensive, and yet so framed that one subdivision does not equal the whole? An indispensable step to the selection of these contentions is that of discovering the main issues. The main, or primary, issues are the fundamental questions, the answers to which determine the truth or falsity of the proposition. Every controversial subject expresses a division of opinion. Those who support the assertion represent one point of view; those who dissent, another. Of course those

who thus question the position of the affirmative may not agree concerning the ground of their objections. In a question of fact various opposing stands may be taken by those who challenge one or another of the affirmative lines of evidence. In a question of policy, alternatives of various kinds may be offered by advocates of the negative. Thus the opponents of the motion may represent a dozen shades of opinion. Nevertheless a real gulf separates the supporters of the motion from their critics.

The question therefore arises, What are these differences that account for the gulf? An analysis of these conflicting shades of opinion discloses in every case a few major questions, called the *primary*, or *chief*, or *main* issues. In the proposition cited above on the marriage and divorce laws a review of the various points of view raises a number of specific questions:

1. Are uniform marriage and divorce laws necessary?
2. Can a desirable plan be formulated to put into operation uniform marriage and divorce laws?
3. Will uniform marriage and divorce laws remove the evils caused by state regulation of marriage and divorce?
4. Will uniform marriage and divorce laws make reform in marriage and divorce regulation effective?

Every debate or argumentative speech has inherent in it analogous important questions, which may be called the *potential* issues, to which the affirmative side answers "yes" and to one at least of which the negative side answers "no." To speak of affirmative or negative issues is to confuse issues with the partition of the subject. Issues are always in the form of disinterested questions.

**B. Relation of the Issues to the Partition.** The contentions or the main divisions are the answers to the issues. If you have analyzed carefully, you are bound to bring to light the great questions. You do not indicate your attitude in the discussion until you answer these questions by an enumeration of the chief ideas which you intend to present or defend.

Like the partition, the issues must be relevant to the subject,

mutually exclusive, and comprehensive. It will thus be comparatively easy for you on the basis of these issues to state the contentions. Main issues will suggest main contentions; subordinate issues will suggest subordinate contentions. In actual discussion or debate you may select only those which best suit your need. Any complete discussion of the affirmative, as we have seen, will include each of these contentions, and in doing so will bring to light all the significant arguments. To illustrate, if you examine the proposition RESOLVED, *That members of the president's cabinet should take part in the deliberations of Congress, both Senate and House*, you may presently formulate the issue "Is the direct participation of the members of the president's cabinet in the deliberations of Congress necessary?" Secondary issues will disclose themselves, such as "Would the proposal secure wiser and more wholesome legislation?"

As an advocate of the proposition you would answer the questions above by stating the following as your point: "The direct participation of members of the president's cabinet in the deliberations of Congress is necessary." In the same way you would secure your subpropositions by answering the questions stated in the secondary issues above.

Other statements of issues and contentions may be noted. RESOLVED, *That an amendment to the Constitution abolishing child labor should be adopted* raises the following questions:

1. Is child labor a national menace?
2. Does this national menace demand a national remedy?
3. Would the proposed amendment give Congress ample power to deal with the situation?

The contentions established might be as follows:

1. Child labor is not confined to any one state or locality.
2. Investigation has shown an alarming increase in the amount of child labor.
3. Child labor is a menace to the future citizenry of both state and nation.
4. The states have failed to remedy this evil in the past.

5. A national remedy would be most effective.

6. The proposal gives Congress ample power to deal with the situation.

It will be noticed in this example that three issues have produced six contentions. These specific statements to be proved by the affirmative are really the answers to the subissues, which did not happen to be stated above. A simpler statement of the case as presented by the affirmative would be merely an enumeration of three declarative sentences corresponding to the three interrogations above.

**C. Importance of Discovering and Stating the Main Issues.** Only by bringing to light these all-important questions, or issues, can you have a satisfactory discussion. To talk or write at length without reference to these issues is to confuse the hearer or the reader, to present an argument lacking in unity, coherence, or force, and to fail in securing the proper response from the audience. The very clearness resulting from keeping the great questions in the foreground is a long step toward the successful end.

**D. Number and Arrangement of the Issues.** These impartial, basic questions will be at least two — otherwise the subject would not be divided — and may number four or five. A large number would usually mean failure to classify the points under inclusive headings. These questions should be arranged in climactic order. The arrangement here, as in other types of composition, will be governed by principles of coherence and emphasis. First and foremost, order of ideas, or logical sequence, should control; if possible, however, the most striking argument and issue should be presented last. The issues should, of course, be enumerated in the order in which they are to be developed.

*More*

## VI. STOCK ISSUES

**A. Stock Issues and Methods of Partition.** Subjects are usually divided or analyzed from the angle of (1) chronology, as in scientific exposition and in narration; (2) classification, as in

scientific exposition ; (3) logical partition, as in the typical argument and sometimes in fiction in which a solution is given with the preceding facts then unfolded ; (4) topography, as in scientific and artistic description, in which the general scene is set forth with the details then added, or in which the scene is unfolded from the near to the remote ; (5) definition, in which the general qualities or characteristics of the object are stated with the differentia in turn expounded, as in the typical speech or essay of definition.

The logical method of division is that of stating the cause and the results of a proposal. Subdivisions in such procedure are usually developed by the method of classification.

A specific method of obtaining a desirable argumentative analysis is suggested by the application of the stock issues, or questions. These questions are based upon the logical (cause-and-effect) and classification angles of division.

**B. Stock Issues for Questions of Policy.** If your question is one of policy, you will inquire, "What is the cause of the proposal?" and "What is the effect of the proposal?" You raise these queries because you think more or less as do the rest of the population. The reaction of the audience to a proposition is somewhat of this sort ; vaguely or definitely they ask, "Why?" Your systematic formula of stock issues as applied to a proposition of policy is somewhat as follows :

I. What are the causes of the proposal?

A. What principles or goals constitute desirable objectives?

Note that most proposals involve certain assumptions or goals or principles which you will do well later to uncover as part of your analysis ; later you may or may not wish to express these principles in your argument, but they should be recognized. For example, in beginning your analysis of the proposal for municipal ownership of utilities, you may decide that an important principle is that utilities should be operated in the interest of all the people. If your subject for analysis is that of Federal aid to state



and local education, you may raise the preliminary question Is public education in the United States a national rather than a sectional problem?

*B.* What defects, if any, in the present plan or institution are discoverable? Has the present policy or institution outlived its usefulness?

Note that all arguments involve a comparison. Two or more institutions or situations that now exist are under comparison; or you may compare and contrast an existing institution with some ideal one. When you contend that the American system of government is "bad," you mean that it is "worse" than the British, or French, or some utopian system. The point is that "bad" must have some concrete significance with reference to a specific standard.

1. Are there objectionable social characteristics or features? What of population, poverty, crime, race conflict, immigration, home, church, children, women, civilization, and other typical social situations or problems?
2. Are there objectionable economic characteristics or features? What of production, marketing, distribution in detail, supply, price, competition, monopoly, money, rent, interest, wages, profit, taxation, labor, insurance, or similar problems?
3. Are there objectionable financial features? What of investments, cycles, foreign exchange, deposits, loans, credit?
4. What objectionable political or governmental characteristics or features are noted? What of Congressional, governmental, and parliamentary defects? Are there executive, legislative, municipal, state, and national weaknesses?
5. What objectionable weaknesses from an international angle are noted?
6. What of the significant educational features? Are they objectionable? Are the methods of school finance defective? Are the elementary, secondary, and higher schools open to criticism in specific matters? Is the college open to criticism? Are its curriculum, intellectual ideals, athletics and recreation, organization, government, and community life faulty?

7. Are any aspects detrimental to health?
8. Are there literary features to be criticized? What are the weaknesses of drama, fiction, poetry? What of plot, dialogue, themes, character? What of emotion, intellectual pattern, form, imagination?
9. Are the legal features open to criticism? What of the judge, jury, criminal?
10. Are there religious and moral criticisms? What of God, man, sin, religious books, immortality, the Church?
11. What of the psychological weaknesses of the institution under criticism?
12. What scientific features are to be criticized, such as those relating, for example, to geology?
13. What administrative features are to be included? What of cost, operation, personnel?

Note that the list above by no means exhausts the general fields of knowledge, and that within each field the classifications are merely suggestive, that items overlap, and that numerous classifications and methods of analysis are to be used. The items above are merely suggestive of the detailed standards that may be applied to bring out possible issues. Note further that the advocates of the proposal must single out at least one important characteristic that falls short of a reasonable standard; those opposed to the affirmative may or may not agree with the analysis as it has thus far developed.

C. Are these defects inherent in the system?

D. Are proposals other than the solution by the proposition inadequate for dealing with the situation, or insufficient to correct the alleged evils?

1. Is the status quo unsatisfactory? (The affirmative has already answered "yes." The negative may take any position on this issue.)
2. Is the alternative proposal, or program *A*, unsatisfactory? (The affirmative will answer "yes," with adequate reasons.)
3. Is proposal *B* unsatisfactory?
4. Is proposal *C* unsatisfactory?

5. Are proposals *A*, *B*, *C*, or any combination of these unsatisfactory? (Note that by the method of exhausting possibilities the affirmative lead to their own proposal; note further that the questions under I are all designed to bring out the need or lack of need for *this* proposal.)
- II. Are the effects, or results, of the proposal adequate to meet the alleged needs? Will the financial, social, religious, governmental, or other results on the whole be satisfactory? (Note that one or two divisions listed above will demonstrate the chief features of your solution. Note that the affirmative analysis at this point will follow closely the elements of analysis stressed under I.)
- III. Will the proposal be practicable?
  - A*. Will the administrative machinery function efficiently?
  - B*. Will the details of the program for operating the proposal be workable?
  - C*. Will the cost be prohibitive?
  - D*. Will the program have popular approval or coöperation?
  - E*. Does precedent indicate the success of the proposed program?

You will note that the queries of II and III merely attempt to treat the matter of results from both the theoretical and the practical angle. Unless the issue of "practicability" is emphasized under a separate category, arguers sometimes limit their inquiry to the speculative features of their proposition.

Sometimes other main issues are added:

- IV. Is the proposal morally or legally justified?
- V. Is the proposal the best solution? (The issue of legality or moral justification is treated under II, and the problem of "best solution" is analyzed under I.)

Let us apply these stock issues to the proposition **RESOLVED**, *That the several states should enact legislation providing a system of complete medical service available to all citizens at public expense.*

- I. Are there causes sufficient to justify the proposal as stated above? (Is there need for this proposal?)
  - A*. Do goals suggest themselves in view of the problem of free medical service?

1. Is health one of the first concerns of the nation?
  2. Are *all* the people entitled to a high quality of medical service?
  3. Are the people entitled to this service at minimum cost?
  4. Should they be provided with an adequate program of preventive medicine?
  5. Are they entitled to a system in which practitioners are competent and are satisfactorily rewarded?
- B. Do alleged defects exist in the system of private medical care? Are there significant features of the present system which are on the whole detrimental?
1. Are health conditions in the United States below a reasonable minimum standard?
  2. Can the people in general afford to buy adequate medical and dental care? Is too much spent for practitioners, patent medicines, and hospitals?
  3. Do the people need a much larger volume of scientific medical service than they now have?
  4. Do the modern public-health services need to be extended to a far greater percentage of the people, including those in rural regions and small towns?
  5. Is there need for a geographical distribution of doctors and agencies which will more adequately meet the medical requirements of the people than the present distribution?
  6. In the rural and semirural areas, are current expenditures for medical care sufficient to insure adequate medical service and to provide satisfactory remuneration to the practitioners?
  7. Do the practitioners as a whole deserve larger incomes than they now have?
  8. Should the quality of medical service be improved?
  9. Should effective control be exercised over the number and type of trained practitioners?
  10. Can the waste of money for unnecessary medication be reduced?
- C. Are the alleged weaknesses inherent in the system of private medicine?
- D. Are proposals, other than state medicine, for dealing with the situation sufficient to correct the alleged evils?

1. Would improvement in environment and in health education correct the alleged evils?
  - a. Are private medical programs responsible for the alleged bad health conditions?
  - b. Are health defects equally common among those with high incomes and those with low incomes?
  - c. Is free medical attention available to those unable to pay for it?
2. Should medical service be provided through organized groups?
  - a. Would the group plan be better than the status quo or state medicine in providing improved medical care, diagnosis, and treatment, individual responsibility, high standards?
  - b. Would the methods of financing the plan be more detrimental than those of the status quo or of state medicine?
    - (1) Would the financing through insurance (by insurance companies or industrial medical services) be detrimental?
    - (2) Would the alternative method of financing through general taxation be more detrimental than that of financing through the status quo or through state medicine?
      - (a) Should taxes, if offered for the financing, be Federal, state, or local, or some combination of these?
      - (b) Would the plan of such financing resolve itself into a complete system of state medicine?
3. Should the service be provided under professional sponsorship, so that the indigent are taken care of by the county medical society, with a provision through joint use of professional personnel and private group clinics, for insurance for high-cost illness?
4. Should the medical service be provided under consumer sponsorship: (a) workmen's compensation, (b) an employer medical service, (c) a plan of employee groups, or (d) a plan of joint employer and employee action?
5. Should the service be provided under community sponsorship with professional participation? Would a program be on the whole successful which provided nominal rates for



hospital services, pay clinics, private practice in hospitals, public-health nursing, expansion of government health services, government provision for hospitalization, tax-supported physicians in rural areas, state aid for local medical services, insurance for hospitalized illnesses, university medical services, and health, hospital, and nursing councils?

6. Should the service be provided for by joint sponsorship of professional and consumer groups with periodic-payment plans for group clinics?
7. Should the service be provided for under commercial sponsorship, with installment payments through loan companies, health insurance by insurance companies, and medical-benefit corporations operating for profit?
8. Should the service be provided for through a program which would include organization of medical services, strengthening of public-health services, group payment for medical services, coördination of medical services (including control of drugs and medicines) and state agencies, and through basic educational improvements, such as postgraduate education and dental, nursing, and pharmaceutical education?

II. Would a program providing free medical services to all the citizens without cost be beneficial or harmful?

- A. Would the quality of medical service be better than under the status quo (or under any alternative program other than state medicine)?
- B. Would all the people participate in the medical benefits more fully than under the status quo or under any alternative program?
- C. Would general health conditions be improved?
- D. Would a more equitable distribution of doctors and agencies result?
- E. Would the practitioners in general receive a higher wage than they now have?
- F. Would the free medical service improve the program of preventive medicine?
- G. Would the free medical service strengthen or weaken the Federal form of American government?

### III. Would the proposal be practicable?

- A. Would the cost of the program be prohibitive?
- B. Would the administration be less efficient than that of private medicine?
- C. Would the program have popular coöperation?
- D. Does precedent indicate the success of the proposal?
- E. Can the program be carried out better by the states than by the Federal government?
- F. Would the program require or assume assistance by the Federal government?

**C. Stock Issues for Questions of Fact.** Although a formula for questions of policy seems workable, — for the problems are those of logical division and cause-and-effect relationship, — a mechanical series of queries for propositions of fact is much harder to construct.

Questions of fact usually suggest a division by classification. For example, the proposition *RESOLVED, That the policies of Mussolini are detrimental to the interests of Italy* would lead to such subpropositions (if you take the affirmative) as these: (1) Mussolini's policies are detrimental to the economic welfare of Italy, in that they lead to badly balanced budgets, reduce the standard of living, impair Italy's international credit, depreciate the currency; (2) the policies are detrimental politically, because the philosophy of Mussolini is that of a dictatorship, one of political expediency, the rule of one man, the destruction of democracy; (3) the policies of Mussolini are inimical to free speech, free religion, a free press, parliamentary discussion, and national growth.

The stock issues for current questions are usually the classifications of material according to economic, social, political, and similar considerations. Subissues have to do with a classification of argument and evidence.

Where the question is primarily not one of social or political judgment but rather one where the facts can be rather accurately discovered (as in the investigations of pure science), the method

of analysis and statement of issues is usually one of classifying the types of argument and evidence. The formula of applying types of argument and evidence to such problems may be illustrated by a consideration of the resolution *RESOLVED, That the planet Mars is inhabited*. Tentative issues would be, Do argument and evidence from analogy support the theory? Do argument and evidence from causal reasoning support the theory? Does argument from specific instances (factual details) support the theory?

## VII. APPLICATION OF DEFINITION AND ANALYSIS TO TYPES OF DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

The work of definition and analysis, you will keep in mind, is largely expository. It appears more directly in the introduction of an argument than elsewhere, although definitions and explanatory detail appear throughout the discourse. The principles reviewed in this chapter are largely for the benefit of the speaker or writer himself; many of the features of analysis which he works out for a given question will not appear in the completed argument as finally presented. Below are illustrated some applications to representative types of discussion and debate.

**A. Definition, Analysis, and Oral Debate.** In formal debate the first speaker for the affirmative should explain the subject and otherwise present an analysis which the negative speakers may indorse or qualify. This first speech usually contains the following items in the introduction:

1. *A Brief Statement of the Cause for Discussion.* Most formal discussions originate because public policy leads to agitation of the proposition or because some recent event brings the problem sharply before the people. From 1919 to 1924, schools and colleges debated on innumerable occasions the problem of whether the United States should join the League of Nations; the debates in Congress on the League and later on the World Court spurred on the debaters and audiences. The problem of limiting

the power of the Supreme Court took on a sudden vigor after 1912 when the Progressive party (or, rather, Theodore Roosevelt) had pronounced on the subject; it again became a rather widely discussed topic in connection with the La Follette campaign of 1924; and it loomed up once more in debates after the decisions of the Supreme Court in 1935 on aspects of Franklin Roosevelt's "New Deal." Old-age-pension plans were debated in the wake of a popular proposal by Townsend of California for a large monthly stipend to aged people; share-the-wealth debates in schools and colleges accompanied speeches on this subject by Senator Huey Long of Louisiana. These and similar questions that swept the land were often associated with passing events. The "cause-for-discussion" step of the introduction should be handled briefly.

2. *A Definition of Terms.*

3. *A Brief History of the Case.* Sometimes this step is omitted; sometimes it precedes the definitions; sometimes it is interwoven with the definitions or with the cause for discussion. It goes without saying that the entire discussion will be permeated with whatever historical facts are pertinent. This step, as a phase of the introduction, should mention only important items, but should refer to early facts of the institution under discussion, and, above all, should mention the latest turns of the problem. The history, therefore, should be relevant, selective, comprehensive, and up to date. To stop short of the most recent event is fatal. Every debater of a live problem should glean the daily papers, especially the editions issued just before the debate. For an example of history properly treated, examine the first affirmative speech in the Appendix.

4. *A Statement of Admitted or Waived Matter.* Often a debater may need to explain that the teams have agreed to waive certain items that come within the province of the debate; or, for strategic reasons, he may wish to admit certain points or agree with certain arguments to be advanced, or already developed, by the opposing speakers.

5. *A Statement of Issues, or a Statement of what a Speaker will attempt to Prove.* A statement of issues gives the audience a clear impression of the field of controversy, and is an indispensable feature of every well-organized and effective introduction. This statement of issues (always in the form of impartial questions) should usually be followed by a statement of what the speaker himself will develop. Of course, the inductive method of unfolding the material may warrant this statement only after the concrete details have been presented. It is also true that on occasion the formal method outlined above may be reversed, with the definitions coming at pertinent points in the argument and the issues stated as they logically arise. In general, however, the beginner should follow the pattern here put down. For an example of a proper introduction see the Appendix.

**B. Definition, Analysis, and a Student Forensic, or Written Argument.** In a student forensic, a written or spoken debate in which the writer or speaker develops the entire argument for one side, including the introduction or analysis, every possible step of analysis is included. The typical forensic, a formal composition, develops in succession the following features: (1) the occasion for discussion; (2) the history of the case; (3) definition of the terms; (4) contrasted arguments; (5) narrowing of the question through a statement of the excluded, admitted, and waived material; (6) the main issues; (7) a partition of the subject, or enumeration of the points to be proved.

In oral debate the conventional introduction usually includes (1) a brief statement of the cause for discussion and a history of the question; (2) an explanation of terms; (3) a statement of admitted and waived material; (4) a statement of issues or of what the speaker intends to prove. The effort of debaters to get away from the highly mechanical methods of analysis has led to an abandonment of almost every feature of the stereotyped introduction. Instead, emphasis is put upon the approach to the audience and upon the persuasive elements of the introduction, rather than upon the logical features. Any formal step, such as



history or definition, is to be used only if it has value in holding attention, and that value must be made apparent.

**C. The Speech or Article of Definition and Analysis of a Proposition for Debate.** Frequently questions for debate are analyzed at length to suggest to those who propose to debate or discuss them the possible and legitimate lines of inquiry. This speech of interpretation is of course in no sense an argument; but it does serve well for the opening remarks by the leader of a discussion group or for the explanation to guide school or college debaters in their preparation for contests.

**D. Definition and Analysis and the Editorial or Persuasive Article.** The introduction is informal, and the definitional and analytical elements are used at appropriate points. The main issues and partition are seldom mentioned directly, but are implied and, if the article is worth while, are clearly adhered to.

**E. Definition and Analysis and the Persuasive Speech.** The general argumentative or persuasive speech, usually colored by elements of vividness, may range all the way from a conventionally organized debate to a loose oration. In any case you will resort to the definitions and imply, if you do not state literally, the issues and partition.

**F. Definition, Analysis, and the Cross-Examination Speech and Informal Discussion.** Often when the debate situation is that of one speaker cross-examining another, the issues, arguments, and definitions may remain obscure. To prevent this unenlightening procedure, each participant is urged to prepare on paper (and, if necessary, transfer to his head) a complete diagnosis of the problem. Thus from time to time, as chairman or panel speaker, you can explain to the audience and to other speakers the drift of the questioning.

Particularly is it important for the leader of a discussion group to prepare such an analysis, this draft forming the basis of his complete agenda. Each participant should also draft for his convenience a complete outline of the interpretation, including the conflicting arguments, the main issues and subissues.

## EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Indicate in each proposition the terms that should be defined:

- (1) The several states can best solve the problem of the retail sale of liquor by a system of state monopoly and sale in state stores.
- (2) Steadily increasing and freer trade among the nations of the world is the chief hope for national prosperity and international peace.

(2) Be prepared to define orally or in writing the terms you select for Exercise 1 above.

3. Define orally or in writing each of the terms in italics; in each case use at least three specific methods of definition. (1) The *powers of the president* should be *permanently increased*. (2) Colleges should put *less emphasis* on *extracurricular activities*. (3) The United States should coöperate with the League of Nations in applying *sanctions*.

4. Be prepared to define in a one-minute speech one term in one of the propositions listed in the Appendix.

5. Arrange a speaking exercise in definitions as follows: the first speaker states a proposition and defines terms (two minutes); the second speaker criticizes the definitions of the first speaker; (two minutes); the first speaker gives a rejoinder (one minute) in which he defends his interpretation.

6. Be prepared (1) to state a proposition, (2) to define a term or terms in the proposition as you heard it, (3) to discuss and improve the definition or definitions offered by another. Each speech will be limited to two minutes.

7. Comment (orally or on paper) on the partition of each of the following examples:

a. RESOLVED, *That the United States should adopt a policy of maintaining a standing army of at least five hundred thousand.*

- I. War threatens the United States.
- II. Our preparations for war are inadequate.
- III. An army as proposed would relieve unemployment and further establish our national prestige.
- IV. The cost would be justified.

b. RESOLVED, *That the United States should adopt a plan of free trade.*

- I. Our economic condition is bad.

- II. Free trade would create great national prosperity.
- III. Free trade would give the laborer better wages.
- IV. Free trade would promote international friendship.

8. Criticize the following main issues :

RESOLVED, *That a Department of the Consumer should be established at Washington.*

- I. Do present circumstances necessitate the creation of a Department of the Consumer?
- II. Would the creation of this department be satisfactory?
- III. Would this department protect the interest of the consumer as such?

9. Give the stock issues for the following questions of policy :  
(1) The United States should adopt the essential features of the British system of radio control and operation. (2) The gas tax in my state should be increased one cent per gallon of gasoline sold.

10. Give the issues for the following proposition of fact : RESOLVED, *That the principle of democracy has failed in the United States.*

11. Write a complete introduction (five hundred words long) for a debate to be delivered before a school or college audience.

12. Criticize your introduction by considering such questions as (1) whether the approach to the audience is interesting and clear, (2) whether the terms are clearly explained, (3) whether the issues are properly and clearly set forth, (4) whether the introduction in general is analytical rather than argumentative.

## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- CLARKE, E. L. *The Art of Straight Thinking*, pp. 124-138. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1929.
- COOPER, LANE. *The Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 220-241. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1932.
- MACE, C. A. *The Principles of Logic*, pp. 192-199. Longmans, Green & Co., 1933.
- ROWELL, E. Z. "Argumentative Analysis," in *Cultural and Scientific Speech Education Today* (W. Arthur Cable, editor), pp. 88-95. Expression Company, 1930.
- SELLARS, R. W. *The Essentials of Logic* (Revised Edition), pp. 46-76. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1925.

## CHAPTER V

### SYNTHESIS: THE BRIEF AND THE RHETORICAL OUTLINE

I. THE PLACE OF THE OUTLINE. II. TWO KINDS OF ARGUMENTATIVE OUTLINES. III. RULES FOR CONSTRUCTING THE BRIEF. IV. THE SKELETON BRIEF. V. TWO KINDS OF BRIEFS. VI. RELATION OF THE ARGUMENTATIVE BRIEF TO THE LEGAL BRIEF. VII. RELATION OF THE ARGUMENTATIVE OUTLINE, OR SPEAKER'S NOTES, TO THE ARGUMENTATIVE BRIEF. VIII. A JUSTIFICATION OF BRIEFING

#### I. THE PLACE OF THE OUTLINE

If you have clearly grasped and applied the principles for the proper definition and analysis of your subject, you have mapped out certain definite lines for the orderly development of your argument. You have set up a working plan. Your next and necessary step is to construct an outline that will be your blue print for speaking or writing.

Students of public discussion and debate sometimes frown upon an outline. "Why," they sometimes ask, "should I struggle with a complicated mechanism? I have my ideas, and on paper have assembled the notes from which I am to talk." It must be admitted that good speeches have sometimes come seemingly from a few frumpy notes. It is questionable, however, whether any speaker worth while has proceeded methodically through an argumentative speech without some deliberate apprenticeship in the ordering of material. Those who boast of not having made an outline usually give evidence of that lamentable fact. One would search long to find a first-class school or college debater who had not disciplined himself at length in the process of outlining.

What does detailed planning do? It will enable you to survey

your case conveniently, to test the logic of your assertions, to question the order of your issues, to review the character and amount of evidence, and to construct a unified, forcible, and coherent forensic. Without this preliminary framework the product will be indirect and wordy. Clear outlining gives the speaker confidence and enables the listener to grasp the material. Loose speaking, which proceeds easily from idea to idea without close logical organization and yet with spontaneous persuasiveness, may impress for the moment. But the speeches with lasting influence have been those based on clear and complete organization.

An analysis of the great debates in history and of the methods of preparation used by outstanding speakers will almost invariably show completeness of structure and habits of careful planning. The Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1858, although highly extemporaneous, were based upon numerous notes, as were almost all of Lincoln's prominent speeches. The Madison speeches in the Madison-Henry debates on the adoption of the Constitution, the Webster-Hayne debates on states' rights, the Calhoun arguments in the Senate on the same subject (notably those of January 22 and February 28, 1833), are among the finest examples of argumentative outlining in forensic literature. Albert J. Beveridge, in the Beveridge-Hoar debate in the Senate on the issue of freedom for the Philippines and in his other Senate debates and occasional orations, outlined his material with classical care. Even John Bright, powerful extempore speaker, has left notes and internal evidence in his speeches to prove that he, too, methodically arranged his materials. Brigrance, in his *In the Workshop of Great Speakers*, cites the case of various others who follow outlines. Brigrance quotes Harry Emerson Fosdick as saying, "I would never think of speaking without, in some way, ordering my thoughts." We should add that Fosdick not only "ordered his thoughts" but in his teaching insisted that his students preparing for the ministry should do so on the basis of outlines. Many another worthy public discussion illustrates well-developed planning or briefing.



## II. TWO KINDS OF ARGUMENTATIVE OUTLINES

If you are to prepare fully for your discussion, you will draft two outlines, the first a complete digest of your entire case, the second a more highly personal and informal arrangement of ideas with the requirements of the special audience in mind. The first type is a brief; the second, a speaker's outline.

The brief is a storehouse of information, including a complete analysis of a given proposition and all the representative argument and evidence on a given side of the resolution. Professor Baker of Harvard, who developed and taught the brief in his instruction in argument, apparently borrowed the brief from legal practice. The legal brief is a document

Prepared by counsel for the use of the court as a basis for oral argument of a cause; it contains a statement of the matter in which the questions in controversy arose, of the facts of the case so far as they relate to these questions; it is an outline of the argument, consisting of the propositions of law or fact to be maintained, the reasons upon which they are based, and citations of authorities in their support.<sup>1</sup>

This technical description may be applied to the student's brief, often called a forensic brief. The latter provides the reader with a bird's-eye view of the complete argument, and gives to the debater-author a complete chart to guide him in the development of his spoken argument. Contrary to its name, it is usually long and complicated.

Suppose you were to prepare a brief on the question of limiting annual incomes in the United States to fifty thousand dollars. You would work out a complete argument and evidence on the chief issues suggested in the previous chapter. You would doubtless include all the main headings and subheadings, the sources of your material, and even the rebuttal material, so as further to strengthen your points. If, however, you set out to argue the

<sup>1</sup> H. S. Redfield, "The Brief on Appeal," from *Brief Making and the Use of Law Books* (Second Edition) (R. W. Cooley, editor), p. 436. West Publishing Company, 1926.

case, you would select certain sections for your contest debate (with your colleague); you would frame one case for your contest debate (your colleague would present about half of the case), another for a short talk before the Kiwanis Club, another for a radio debate, another for an editorial, another for a farm audience, still another for an open-forum discussion. You would need to consider the time limits and possible prejudices on the part of the audience. From the same brief you can draft several speeches and different outlines.

### III. RULES FOR CONSTRUCTING THE BRIEF

For convenience in constructing the brief, rules which students of argumentation and debate have found through experience to be most convenient are followed. It is recognized that no one set of rules is absolutely necessary. The experience of students of debate indicates that the rules given below are highly satisfactory. They are classified as (A) general rules for brief-making; (B) rules for the introduction; (C) rules for the discussion; and (D) rule for the conclusion.

**A. General Rules for Brief-making.** 1. *Arrange the brief in three parts, marked "Introduction," "Discussion," and "Conclusion."* The purpose of the introduction is to present a complete analysis of the question (including a statement of the issues) and a partition of the case. The purpose of the conclusion is to summarize the points as proved.

This division of the general speech has sometimes been condemned as being unnecessarily rigid. Experience, again, will justify us in using it. Corax, of Sicily, who flourished about 470 B.C., is said to have formulated a fourfold division: introduction, narration, proof, and conclusion. Aristotle's division is practically the same: exordium, or approach to the audience; exposition, or analysis proper; proof, or discussion; and peroration, or conclusion. Cicero named six: introduction, narration, proposition, proof, refutation, and conclusion. This classical

form, simplified somewhat, has been retained to our day. We continue to advise the marking off of these parts, not because antiquity sanctions the usage but because practical speech-making indicates the advantage of these principles. An examination of almost any excellent speech will reveal a rather definite approach, or introduction; a discussion proper; and a well-defined conclusion.

2. *Phrase the ideas as complete statements.* The purpose of this rule is to guarantee clearness and completeness for every idea contained in the brief. The argumentative outline is intended for the reader as well as for the composer of the brief. A complete *statement* obviously is less likely to cause confusion than a mere *term*. A term, although it may be clear to the writer, may be meaningless to the reader. Students sometimes neglect to follow this rule, first, because their ideas are not specifically worked out; secondly, because most people, composers of briefs included, are in a hurry. Writing topics is not nearly so laborious as writing complete sentences. A comparison of the following examples of briefing will show the superiority of the use of complete sentences:

- I. The various states should adopt a policy of state medicine: for
  - A. The problem of necessity.
    - 1. Bad health conditions.
      - a. Drafted men during the World War.
      - b. School children.
      - c. Industrial workers.

Consider the improvement in the second statement, in which each idea is fully expressed. This latter arrangement, whatever you may think about the caliber of the arguments and the supporting evidence, at least maps out a line of reasoning which the reader can readily follow.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The principle of outlining generally followed in this text is to provide at least two coördinate units in each main or subordinate division of material. To save space through the abbreviation of illustrative material, this principle has sometimes been disregarded.

- I. The various states should adopt a policy of state medicine ; for
- A. The policy is necessary ; for
1. Conditions of health in the United States are extremely bad ; for
- a. The Surgeon-General's report of examinations of drafted men during the World War shows a high frequency of physical defects ; for
- (1) Of nearly three million men examined, 21 per cent were rejected because of physical defects.
- b. The survey of school children in six cities made by the Committee on the Cost of Medical Care shows health defects to be common ; for
- (1) From 65 to 95 per cent of those examined had more or less serious defects.
- c. The survey of industrial workers made by the Committee on the Cost of Medical Care shows physical defects to be common among laborers.

3. *Indicate the relation of ideas by proper symbols and proper indentions.* The following system of symbols is generally used :

- I. ----- ; for
- A. ----- ; for
1. ----- ; for
- a. ----- ; for
- (1) ----- ; for
- (a) ----- .
- B. ----- ; for
- (Etc.)

The symbols and indentions thus serve to indicate clearly the relative logical rank of ideas. Note in the following outline the confusion due to failure to use distinctive indentions :

- III. Group medicine has worked effectively in practice ; for
- A. Industries have provided medical attention for their employees on the group basis ; for
1. Mining and lumbering concerns in Washington have a well-organized group medical system.
2. The Wholesale Mills Company provides medical care for the employees.

3. The Sweepstake Mining Company gives medical attention to the employees.

B. Community insurance is provided in several small communities ; for

1. Roanoke Rapids (North Carolina), Cardston (Alberta), and other communities use the group system.

2. The United States army has a highly effective tax-supported medical service.

Consider the improvement in clearness resulting from observance of the proper margins :

III. Group medicine has worked effectively in practice ; for

A. Industries have provided medical attention for their employees on the group basis ; for

1. Mining and lumbering concerns in Washington have a well-organized group medical system.

2. The Wholesale Mills Company provides medical care for the employees.

3. The Sweepstake Mining Company gives medical attention to the employees.

B. Community insurance is provided in several small communities ; for

1. Roanoke Rapids (North Carolina), Cardston (Alberta), and other communities use the group system.

2. The United States army has a highly effective tax-supported medical service.

4. *Under each heading express a single point.* Since the brief aims to give a logical statement of each line of argument that contributes to the proof, it is necessary that double arguments be carefully separated. Therefore headings or subheadings that express more than one point must be avoided. Consider the confusion inevitable in a section such as the following :

C. The economic security of the doctor would be improved ; for

1. The doctor is also interested in having a definite amount of work to do and thereby insuring himself a definite salary, rain or shine.

2. The government would provide equipment for him through his attachment to a state hospital.



In the case above, double statements following a single symbol need to be separated, because obviously one proposition is logically subordinate to the other. Compare the outline above with the reorganized statement, as follows :

- C. The economic security of the doctor would be improved ; for
  - 1. The doctor would be insured a definite salary, rain or shine ;  
for
    - a. He would have a definite amount of work to do.
  - 2. His equipment would be provided ; for
    - a. He would be attached to a state hospital.

Sometimes a whole paragraph is wrongly inserted after a symbol. Thus :

- I. The cause for discussion is as follows :
  - A. Science is making rapid advances.
  - B. The progress made in the invention of poison gases raises the question.
- II. The terms are defined as follows :
  - A. What is science? It is something broader than mechanical invention or achievement. Science is systematic knowledge that has been built up since the beginning of man. It can be contrasted with literature only in the sense that literature embraces virtually all knowledge which science does not include. Thus the question might be restated as follows :  
*RESOLVED, That more harm than good is done to the world by systematic knowledge.*

5. *Make the brief impersonal.* Frequently the brief is confused with the speaker's notes or with a fully developed argument. In such case the outline contains such expressions as "I believe that," "We argue that," and frequent use of the personal vocabulary. The argumentative outline is intended as an impersonal statement of the facts involved and is in no sense framed to include persuasive elements.

6. *Note on the margin the exact sources of evidence.* Thus :

- II. Federal aid to state and local education would weaken our governmental system ; for

A. It would mean undue centralization of powers; for

1. The source of distribution of money would become a source for power and dictation; for

*Nation's*

*Schools*

13: 36

Feb., 1934

- a. President J. J. Tigert of the University of Florida stated that Federal money would be followed by Federal interference.

Although these exact sources need not always be recounted when the debater is on the platform, they should be at hand for citation.

**B. Rules for the Introduction.** 1. *Let the introduction contain a full analysis of the proposition, including a statement of the main issues and main arguments to be established.* The analysis should include some or all of the following items: (1) a statement of the occasion, or cause, for discussion, (2) a history of the case; (3) an explanation of terms, (4) a statement of admitted or waived matter, (5) the contrasted arguments of each side, (6) a statement of the issues, and (7) the partition. Each step of the analysis should be sufficiently complete to provide an adequate understanding of the discussion.

2. *Exclude all argument from the introduction.* Since the analysis is intended for the purpose of discovering and stating the issue and the partition, it is clear that argumentative material is irrelevant. This rule, however, need not apply to the introduction as presented in actual debate, where the interests of persuasion may lead to the inclusion of highly debatable statements. Nor is this rule violated by that step of analysis which calls for a contrasting of the affirmative and negative arguments. The listing of arguments is of course not an attempt to develop, or even to indorse, those controversial points. The following section of an introduction states points that would be challenged by negative speakers (questionable phrases are in italics):

II. The proposal for state medicine is not a new one; for

A. Similar legislation is common in other countries; for

1. There are twenty-five European countries with compulsory insurance laws (*Ann. Am. Acad. of Pol. and Soc. Science, 170: 120; Dec., 1933*).

2. The British system, established in 1911, *is satisfactory to both layman and doctor.*
3. Russia has a *highly successful* system of socialized medicine.

3. *In the introduction use expository briefing.* Expository briefing requires that each heading shall explain or be a division of the heading to which it is subordinate. Argumentative briefing requires that substatements prove the main statement. Contrast the two types.

#### A. EXPOSITORY BRIEFING

- III. The plan provides for an international agreement signed by as many powers as can be induced to join.
  - A. It provides for an international court of justice.
  - B. It provides that all questions not of a justiciable character are to be presented to a commission for settlement.
  - C. It provides for a league that shall codify international law and serve in a legislative capacity.

#### B. ARGUMENTATIVE BRIEFING

- III. The plan should be adopted; for
  - A. It provides for a practicable plan to deal with international problems; for
    1. It provides for an international court of justice.
    2. It provides for a commission to settle nonjusticiable questions.
    3. It provides for a league to serve in a legislative capacity and to codify international law.

In the first example above, the subtopics attempt to prove nothing; they merely give information. The mood of the author is that of explaining to his audience certain facts later to be discussed. In the second case the object of each statement is to convince the reader or hearer, that is, to induce him to accept the proposal. The subtopics aim to provide a series of reasons.

4. *Clearly differentiate the successive steps of the analysis.* This rule means that separate headings will be used for cause for discussion, for history, for definition, and for each of the other steps,

so that the reader of the brief will see clearly what special step is under development. Amateurs in argumentative outlining frequently have the material of history and definitions interwoven so that the analysis seems confused.

**C. Rules for the Discussion.** 1. *Let the main headings of the discussion correspond to the main arguments listed at the end of the introduction.* Compare the following, consisting of (1) issues; (2) points to be proved, or partition; (3) main steps in the discussion:

#### A. ISSUES

- I. Is military training in state universities needed in preparation for future wars?
- II. Is military training in state universities desirable as physical training?
- III. Is military training in state universities in harmony with the principles of democratic government?

#### B. PARTITION

The affirmative will prove that

- I. Military training in state universities is needed in preparation for future wars.
- II. Military training in state universities is desirable as physical training.
- III. Military training in state universities is in harmony with the principles of democratic government.

#### C. DISCUSSION PROPER

Military training should be continued in state universities; for

- I. Military training in state universities is needed as preparation for wars; for  
(Argument and evidence)
- II. Military training in state universities is desirable as physical training; for  
(Argument and evidence)
- III. Military training in state universities is in harmony with the principles of democracy; for  
(Argument and evidence)

2. *In the discussion use argumentative briefing, in which each subordinate statement proves the more general statement.* A frequent fault in the proof is the presence of expository briefing, with the result that subtopics stand in no logical subordination to the topics under which they are placed. Notice in the following example of classroom briefs that a number of the subtopics fail to follow as logical reasons for the topics which precede:

- I. There is need for some action concerning medical conditions in the United States; for
  - A. Investigation of medical conditions in the United States reveals maldistribution and lack of planning; for
    - 1. There are one hundred thousand people who need medical attention.
    - 2. Fifty million people have decayed teeth; yet
      - a. There are eight thousand clinics and out-patient departments of hospitals.
- II. Maldistribution is further apparent; for
  - A. There are many state, county, and municipal health departments.
  - B. The results of maldistribution are bad; for
    - 1. We have too many cases of tuberculosis.

Note that under I, A, above, "50,000,000 people have decayed teeth" does not prove "maldistribution." Note that II, A, should go to establish I, A. "Maldistribution is further apparent" is unnecessary, for the statement is merely a repetition of I, A.

3. *Show the relation between the various statements by the word "for."* This word, shorter than *since* or *because*, indicates the logical relationship and becomes a test of the logic. Inserted at every point in the two examples above, it shows clearly the failure of subtopics to follow logically from the previous statements. The rule thus makes unnecessary the continual repetition of main headings. *Therefore, hence, thus*, and similar headings are objectionable. The connectives of the introduction indicate the expository methods, such as *as follows, namely, in that, for example*. The proof proper is worked out deductively, the conclusion preceding, and the causes or reasons following.



The rule suggests a device by which the logical order of the discussion may be tested. Since the brief proceeds from the conclusion downward, you may begin with the argument last in order and work backward, substituting the word *therefore* at each point indicated by the word *for*, and so proceed inductively to the conclusion. This method of testing will often bring to light a gap in the logic. Note how the following section of brief may be tested :

## A

- I. The Japanese-exclusion act of 1924 should be repealed; for
  - A. The act was unnecessary; for
    - 1. There is no Japanese menace from numbers in America; for
      - a. Few Japanese are found in the United States; for
        - (1) Only 150,000 or 175,000 Japanese are found in the continental United States.

## B

- (1) Only 150,000 or 175,000 Japanese are found in the continental United States; therefore
    - a. Comparatively few Japanese are found in the United States; therefore
      - 1. There is no menace from the numbers of Japanese in America; therefore
        - A. The Japanese-exclusion act of 1924 was unnecessary; therefore
- I. The Japanese-exclusion act of 1924 should be repealed.

4. *State clearly the argument to be refuted.* This rule assumes that argument is both constructive and destructive; that the purpose of the brief is to establish proof partly by removing inhibitions.

The beginner in briefing often states his refutation in an obscure or negative form that leaves the reader in doubt as to whether that part of the brief is intended as refutation. The supreme advantage of the rule is that it requires a clear and accurate statement of the opposing argument. Note the weakness of the following brief in the handling of refutatory material :

- III. The morale and institutionalism of the medical profession would be raised ; for
- A. It is not true that doctors would be held back in their practice for want of sufficient return ; for
1. Each practicing physician would receive a just compensation in accordance with his fitness.

Note the rewording to indicate the argument to be refuted :

- III. The morale and institutionalism of the medical profession would be raised ; for
- A. The argument that doctors would be held back in their profession for want of sufficient return is fallacious ; for
1. Each practicing physician would receive a compensation in accordance with his fitness.

5. *Admitted matter in the discussion should be placed in a subordinate clause immediately preceding the argument to be established.* The form here would be as follows :

- I. Although it is true that occasionally college fraternities are low in scholarship, yet as a group they maintain satisfactory scholarship ; for
- A. They compete with each other for scholastic standing.
- B. Any fraternity falling below a required standard loses its social privileges on the campus.

6. *In the brief include the concrete evidence used in actual debate.* The brief, as suggested earlier, is more than a chain of reasoning. It should include practically all the material to be used. The example at the top of page 95 illustrates how the argument, however strong or weak, at least rests upon concrete evidence, in this case the statement of a university president.

**D. Rule for the Conclusion.** *In the conclusion summarize the main arguments and follow with an impersonal affirmation or denial of the original proposition.* The faults of conclusions are (1) an unduly elaborate summary of the preceding material, (2) haphazard and inaccurate summary, (3) personal sum-

mary and appeal. The following is a satisfactory example of a conclusion :

- I. Since the present medical system is inadequate ;
- II. Since the program of socialized medicine would greatly further the cause of preventive medicine and make possible a more effective use of curative medicine ;
- III. Since the moral and institutional character of the medical profession would be raised ;
- IV. Since socialized medicine can be financed through a system of levying uniform taxes ;

Therefore the several states should enact legislation providing for a system of complete medical service available to all citizens at public cost.

For an example of briefing see the Appendix.

#### IV. THE SKELETON BRIEF

The following skeleton outline will be of advantage in working out a brief :

RESOLVED, *That* ----- (State the proposition.)

#### INTRODUCTION

- I. The cause for discussion is as follows :

A. -----  
 B. -----  
 C. -----

- II. The history of the case is as follows :

A. -----  
 B. -----  
 C. -----  
 D. -----

- III. The terms are thus explained :

A. -----  
 B. -----  
 C. -----

IV. The conflicting arguments are as follows :

A. The affirmative argue :

1. -----
2. -----
3. -----

B. The negative argue :

1. -----
2. -----
3. -----

V. From this discussion is waived the question of -----

VI. It is admitted that -----

VII. The main issues are thus suggested :

- A. ----- ?
- B. ----- ?
- C. ----- ?
- D. ----- ?

VIII. The affirmative (or negative) will establish the following arguments :

- A. -----
- B. -----
- C. -----
- D. -----

### DISCUSSION PROPER

The --- (Repeat proposition as you intend to prove it) --- ; for

I. ----- ; for

A. ----- ; for

1. ----- ; for

a. ----- ; for

(1) ----- ; for

(a) -----

II. --- }  
 III. --- } as I, above  
 IV. --- }

- V. ----- ; for  
 A. The argument that ----- is fallacious ; for  
   I. ----- ; for  
     a. -----  
 B. ----- ; for  
   I. ----- ; for  
     a. -----  
 C. Although -----, yet ----- ; for  
   I. ----- ; for  
     a. ----- ; for  
       (1) -----  
   2. ----- ; for  
     a. ----- ; for  
       (1) -----

## CONCLUSION

- I. Since ----- ;  
 II. Since ----- ;  
 III. Since ----- ;  
 IV. Since ----- ;  
 Therefore, --- (Repeat proposition as you have proved it)

## V. TWO KINDS OF BRIEFS

In briefing articles the student may use either of two methods of procedure. He may compose an original brief on the basis of the material before him or he may reproduce literally the arguments of the articles. In the first case he selects, omits, rearranges, amplifies. In the second case he adheres closely to the methods, content, and sequence of the work under consideration. The first method is of course preferable if you wish to convince the reader of the truth or falsity of your proposition. The second method gives practice in analyzing and interpreting the argument of another ; the reconstructed brief presumably reflects the mental attitude and mental process of the author in the construction of the argument.



## VI. RELATION OF THE ARGUMENTATIVE BRIEF TO THE LEGAL BRIEF

The debater's brief has much in common with the legal brief, or "brief on appeal" in cases appealed from a lower to a higher court, the document in which the argumentative brief no doubt had its origin. The chief resemblances and differences may be noted.

The purpose of the legal brief is to give to the court a statement of the complete case for either the plaintiff or the defendant; the purpose of the debater's brief is to provide a complete statement of the case for either the affirmative or the negative so that both debater and reader may have a clear understanding of the entire argument.

The legal brief uses the paragraph structure, whereas the argumentative brief uses the system of indentions.

The legal brief has the following steps: (1) title, (2) preliminary statement, (3) statement of the case, or "facts," (4) specification of errors, (5) brief of the argument. It will be noticed that the debater's brief conforms closely to these subdivisions. (1) The title corresponds to the statement of the proposition. (2) The preliminary statement corresponds to the preliminary explanation sometimes attached to the extralegal brief. (3) The facts are in general like the main introduction, or analysis, of the student brief. (4) The specification of errors corresponds to the main issues and the partition in the introduction. (5) The brief of the argument is similar to the debater's discussion proper, or proof. The legal brief proper emphasizes the authorities much more than does the extralegal brief.

## VII. RELATION OF THE ARGUMENTATIVE OUTLINE, OR SPEAKER'S NOTES, TO THE ARGUMENTATIVE BRIEF

After you have worked out your brief, you will no doubt want to draft from it the outline for your speech. The process of adaptation to your audience will lead you to a method of development more or less different from the order of the brief. Your

speaker's outline will probably use mere terms, a paragraph arrangement of ideas, and a sequence calculated to secure the maximum response from a definite audience.

### VIII. A JUSTIFICATION OF BRIEFING

**A. The Objection from the Point of View of Literary Composition.** The argumentative brief, like other types of outlines, has been severely criticized because of the woodenness of the resulting speech or written argument. The brief, it must be admitted, usually so dominates the speech or written forensic that the bones of the skeleton protrude. Elaborate briefing often makes for dull, uninspired speech-making, filled with mechanical summaries, repetition of words and phrases that make up the brief, many terms of enumeration, and other earmarks of a mechanical rather than a literary foundation. Such is the literary objection.

Even if these dull characteristics inevitably followed the brief, the formal outline would probably be justified. For the process, as suggested at the outset of this chapter, gives order to your thinking, clearness to your thought, logical sequence and definiteness of statement, and other rhetorical results that are no mean elements in an effective speech. If conviction and understanding may thus be obtained, a certain amount of ponderousness is excusable.

**B. The Objection from the Point of View of Logic.** Another indictment, from students of logic, is that the brief is "based on the categorical syllogism and therefore does not fit all kinds of arguments. There is need for an alternative type of reasoning and method of arrangement."<sup>1</sup> This alternative type would not argue so much as it would set forth the situation in expository or narrative form. It is systematic argument which "unfolds" rather than enumerates argument after argument. Yet this implicative reasoning persuades in the end because it points to an

<sup>1</sup> Gladys M. Graham, "Logic and Argumentation," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (November, 1924), Vol. X, pp. 350-363.

inevitable "this-or-nothing" conclusion.<sup>1</sup> The method is based upon the theory of logic that the world is an "implicative system," an "implicative whole," or an "inferential whole," and that to lay out arguments, as the brief does, in linear form, brick upon brick, is to defeat the process by which the mind of the debater or of the audience often works.

It must be admitted that the brief does not contain *all* the material which a persuasive speaker would present to an audience; that the order in which the ideas are unfolded in the speech might be vastly different from the sequence of the brief. Indeed, every creative speaker refuses to be bound by mechanical outlines. Fitting his material to the occasion, he does use description and exposition freely; he does present the situation as a unit, as a "this-or-nothing" statement; he does develop his theme so that he remains on common ground with the group. Such is ideal debating. Nevertheless, the brief such as has been proposed in this chapter forms a logical pattern of the argument which may well be used as a basis for the type of speech described by the critics. There is no reason why the rigid brief should not form the material out of which the inferential whole could be built up, to the practical satisfaction both of the debater and of the logician who sees all argument and thinking as unitary.

The mature student of briefing need not be a slave to his rigid document. It becomes a means to a practical end. Its construction has given the facts, sharpened the mental processes, and created a mental alertness which means a continuation of creative thinking. In the writing of the argument the elaborate outline may be put away. So will the student shift the order of development, omit valueless statements, and include other persuasive material — in short, translate the dry structure into a living composition, vigorous, original, spontaneous. If he keeps his mind alert both to argument and to original expression, if he follows the best literary standards of both poetry and prose, and

<sup>1</sup> Gladys M. Graham, "Natural Procedure in Argument," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (November, 1925), Vol. XI, pp. 338-357.

if he keeps in mind all the requirements of his audience and regards his speech as a process of communication, there is no reason why the brief, with its ten or twenty rules, should not be the basis for a speech effective in every detail.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Explain what rules are violated in the following examples of briefing:

#### A

III. The Hare system of proportional representation does not elect a higher caliber of legislative officers.

A. The representatives are what the voter chooses, and no party is able to elect men contrary to the wishes of the voters.

1. Thus the new system puts into office practically the same caliber of men.

B. The caliber of the representatives depends not on the system but on the character of the men who work the system.

C. Local representation would be destroyed and vast districts would be totally unrepresented.

1. This would cause immense distrust and dissatisfaction in these unrepresented districts.

#### B

The American university is not a failure; for

I. It may not be perfect, but we cannot label it a failure; for

A. The universe is not perfect, but we do not consider it a failure.

B. If you were "bumming" to Denver, you would not refuse a lift to Omaha just because it did not take you to Denver; for

1. You would be glad of the chance to get what you could.

C. We could not agree on a definition of a perfect university anyway.

II. The cash value of an education is recognized; for

A. Endless statistics have been compiled on the subject, which will not be listed; for

1. The class has expressed its dislike for statistics.

- III. Results of research sponsored by universities would in themselves justify the existence of the universities; for
- A. The accomplishments of medical science; for
    - 1. Who would not admit its value?
  - B. Scientific study has resulted in airplanes, radio, etc.
  - C. Psychologically much is being done in research; for
    - 1. Psychopathic cases are in many instances diagnosed and cured.
    - 2. In the field of vision experiments show new and important facts; for
      - a. Aged beliefs are often discovered to be incorrect and damaging.
    - 3. Studies are being made in audition; facts may later be used in locating submarines.
    - 4. Seashore's musical tests discover failure, if they do not detect sure success; for
      - a. They detect bad or good rhythmic sense, tonal discriminations, etc.
  - D. Physicists and chemists have made a fused quartz glass through which the ultra-violet rays of the sun pass, which will benefit humanity; for
    - 1. The violet rays of the sun, important in body metabolism, were heretofore obtainable only through out-of-door life.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- BLANCHARD, F. T. *The Art of Composition*. Ginn and Company, 1934.
- BRIGANCE, W. N. *The Spoken Word*, pp. 65-117. Crofts & Co., 1927.
- GENUNG, J. F. *The Working Principles of Rhetoric*, pp. 432-285. Ginn and Company, 1900.
- GRAHAM, GLADYS M. "The Natural Procedure in Argument," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (November, 1925), Vol. XI, pp. 338-357.
- MAXCY, C. L. *The Brief*. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1916.
- ROBINSON, D. S. *The Principles of Reasoning* (Second Edition), pp. 1-11. D. Appleton-Century Company, 1930.
- WINANS, J. A. *Public Speaking*, pp. 385-423. D. Appleton-Century Company, 1917.



## CHAPTER VI

### EVIDENCE

I. NATURE OF EVIDENCE. II. RELATION OF EVIDENCE TO ARGUMENT AND PROOF. III. THE NECESSITY FOR EVIDENCE. IV. CLASSIFICATION OF EVIDENCE. V. NEED FOR ASSUMPTIONS. VI. RELATIVE VALUE OF TESTIMONIAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL EVIDENCE. VII. RELATION OF LEGAL TO EXTRALEGAL EVIDENCE. VIII. TESTS OF EVIDENCE

#### I. NATURE OF EVIDENCE

Once you have analyzed your argument and decided what points you wish to establish in the mind of the reader or hearer, your next task is to offer arguments that will lead the reader or hearer to think and act as you wish him to. Argument is the progression from an accepted truth to an alleged conclusion. This mental process is that of *inference*. It is the process of the mind by which we pass from old to new facts; by which we bridge the chasm between that which is familiar and that which is remote. The assumed truths are the premises. When these premises deal with facts which are accepted as true, they constitute *evidence*. Evidence is

that which tends to render evident or to generate proof . . . any matter of fact, the effect, tendency, or design of which is to produce in the mind a persuasion, affirmative or disaffirmative, of the existence of some other matter of fact.<sup>1</sup>

A matter of fact is concerned with the existence of things, the occurrence of facts, the classification of objects, and the connection between events, whereas a matter of theory is concerned with the general laws or principles that may be employed in settling questions of facts or questions of policy.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> W. M. Best, *Principles of the Law of Evidence*, p. 5. Boston Book Company, 1908.

<sup>2</sup> W. C. Shaw, *The Art of Debate*, pp. 49-50. Allyn and Bacon, 1922.

## II. RELATION OF EVIDENCE TO ARGUMENT AND PROOF

Thus the basis of argument is evidence — concrete illustration, quotations, instances, and figures. The process of advancing from evidence to conclusion is argument. The conclusion is proof. "Proof is the sufficient reason for assenting to a proposition as true."<sup>1</sup>

An illustration of the relationship of these terms is found in the following section of a brief:

- I. The present Japanese policy is leading to war; for
  - A. Her policy is one of unrestrained aggression; for
    - 1. She has been an aggressor nation since 1894; for
      - a. In 1894 she first invaded Korea.
      - b. In 1905 she fought the Russo-Japanese War over Manchuria and annexed Korea.
      - c. In 1915 she made the twenty-one demands on China.
      - d. In 1918 she attempted to seize the Maritime Province of Siberia.
      - e. In 1926 she proposed the division of Manchuria with Russia.
      - f. In 1931 she attacked Shanghai and invaded Manchuria.
      - g. In 1933-1935 she made further invasions in North China.

In this brief the proof consists in the fact that the present Japanese policy is leading to war. The detailed enumeration of instances of "unrestrained aggression" constitutes evidence. The basis of every worth-while argument must be these instances, authorities, statistics, hypothetical examples, or other factual items that furnish the foundation for the superstructure of argument or inference.

## III. THE NECESSITY FOR EVIDENCE

In the everyday world of affairs we make countless inferences without evidence. We accept our own judgment as trustworthy; and in many cases our friends, when confronted with our con-

<sup>1</sup> Francis Wharton, *Treatise on the Law of Evidence in Criminal Cases* (Eleventh Edition), Vol. I, p. 5. Lawyers Co-operative Publishing Company, 1932.

clusions, admit them good-naturedly or keep silent. The human mind is so organized, however, that different people fail to make the same inference from a given group of facts, because their experiences differ or because their prejudices affect their points of view. Hence arises the necessity for argument. Assertion, the attempt to state conclusions without a logical approach, is valueless as argument. Much of the so-called discussion on street corners, in hotel corridors, in legislative halls, and in student conversations is based upon mere assertion. Much of the reasoning of the average person ignores the real question at issue and arrives at the real conclusion by the assumption of the facts that need to be proved. How many theories about the trend of an automobile stock, or the status of the Republican party, or the future of Siwash University, or the merits and demerits of some campus leader would go into the discard if a few tests of evidence were applied!

When a person with a tendency toward sweeping statements attempts to convince a person who has taken the trouble to master definite and numerous facts on the question up for conversation, the former may experience some awkward moments. Neither deep conviction nor vehement declaration is sufficient. One thing only helps: the presentation of definite facts that will logically invite inferences favorable to the purpose of the speaker.

The first elementary principle behind all argumentative thinking and speaking is this: Whenever you make an assertion or advance any proposition which you wish others to accept, couple that idea with evidence sufficiently complete to convince "beyond a reasonable doubt." Because people have their prejudices and individual points of view, it is often necessary to justify to others what to you seems obvious.

To illustrate: Senator Borah, in a speech on July 6, 1922, discussed in the Senate the question of the "soldiers' bonus" bill:

We are now paying out over \$1,000,000 a day for the disabled veterans; about \$436,000,000 for this year will be paid, more than a million dollars a day. If we calculate the obligations which we owe these men — and if they are disabled it is an obligation which we must

meet at whatever cost — it will cost this government, upon the ratio that it cost us after the Civil War, in the next fifty years over \$65,000,000,000. Some estimate it higher. But add to that the \$22,000,000,000 which we already owe and the immense budget which we have, and you have about all that the American taxpayer will be willing to carry during these coming years.

But it is proposed out of hand to lay upon the American people at this time an extra burden of from four to six billion dollars, almost twice as large as the debt which we had at the close of the Civil War ; and if we pay it in the same way and at the same rate that we paid the debt after the Civil War, it will take us two hundred and fifty years to pay off the debt which we propose to lay in a few weeks for the purpose of this supposed obligation.

With such facts — evidence — before his audience the speaker then stated his conclusion :

For the sake of our common country, for the sake of peace and happiness among the millions who must bear this awful load, who cannot pass it on, will not the old party of so many noble victories rise to meet the occasion and stop once and for all this orgy of extravagance?

President Wilson, in his war address to Congress, April 12, 1917, presented to that body the following facts (evidence) :

1. The German government announced that on and after the first day of February it was the intention of that government to sink, by submarines, every vessel that approached the shores of England, Ireland, or the western coasts of Europe.
2. Under the new policy vessels of every kind, whatever their flag, have been without warning sent to the bottom.
3. Even hospital ships and ships carrying relief to the Belgians have been sunk.
4. Noncombatants, men, women, and children have been killed.

With this evidence clearly before the American public the message then called upon Congress to declare war against Germany.

Whether you are condemning certain provisions in bonus bills, declaring war on a nation, advocating a swimming pool for your school, or expressing your opinion about types of motors, about

radio sets, about your favorite newspapers, or about the best vocation to follow, you need to have the same methodical habits of laying a logical foundation for what you advocate. Some speakers and writers scatter generalities about and then claim the right of approval. Form the habit of being concrete, and, without seeming to be contentious about secondary matters, habitually offer supporting evidence and insist upon having it from others.

#### IV. CLASSIFICATION OF EVIDENCE

**A. Form.** Evidence, in law, may be classified according to its form, its source, and the relation which the facts bear to the conclusion. You should understand each of these divisions. The last-mentioned is of chief interest to college debaters.

Evidence may be classified according to its form as real, verbal, positive, or negative. Real evidence consists of any object that may be used to establish the debater's contention. Verbal evidence is made up of statements concerning the objects. Positive evidence consists of facts that go to prove the existence of alleged facts. Negative evidence is that resulting from the absence of facts.

Real evidence is illustrated by the revolver exhibited in the murder trial; verbal evidence, by the statements of a witness about this weapon.

Positive evidence is offered concerning the fact that the accused was seen in the vicinity of the house at the time of the robbery; negative evidence would consist of the fact that he was not observed anywhere else at that time. In debate negative evidence is often used when the speaker argues that "no evidence exists that the Japanese are preparing for a war against the United States" or makes some similar assertion which he is confident cannot be disproved.

**B. Relation to Source.** According to the nature of the source, evidence is original, hearsay, written, unwritten, ordinary, or expert. Original evidence is any fact or statement of fact from an original source without passing from mouth to mouth. Hearsay



evidence is that which is passed from one person to another. Written evidence is any fact derived from a printed or written source. Unwritten evidence is that which springs from common knowledge or from a spoken source. Ordinary evidence is that which comes from a person who is without special knowledge. Expert evidence is that derived from someone who has special knowledge and experience.

Original evidence is exemplified in the statement, "In November, 1922, the United States Supreme Court decided in the *Ozawa* case that Japanese were not included in the term 'free white persons' in our naturalization laws and hence could not become citizens of this country" (260 U.S. 178).

Hearsay evidence would be, "The speaker says that it is reported that the United States Supreme Court decided that Japanese were not included in the term 'free white persons' and hence could not become citizens of this country."

Written evidence would be that found in printed or typed argumentative articles; unwritten evidence would be these same facts incorporated in a speech.

Ordinary evidence is that given by the student debater who asserts that Federal income taxes should be reduced. Expert evidence would be similar testimony offered by the Secretary of the Treasury.

**C. Relation to Conclusion.** Evidence is further classified, according to the relation that the facts bear to the conclusion, into two types: testimonial, or direct, and circumstantial, or indirect. In the *Carlyle Harris* murder case the following statement was given in instructions to the jury:

Evidence is divided into two kinds, direct and circumstantial. It is direct when the witness testifies to the principal fact in issue, as when a murder is committed and the witness testifies that he saw the blow inflicted. . . . In such a case the truth of the witness is the main object of inquiry.

In circumstantial testimony . . . the circumstance must be proved to the satisfaction of the jurors and it is for them to . . . draw the inference.

For example, the shooting of Senator Huey Long in the rotunda of the state capitol at Baton Rouge, Louisiana, on September 9, 1935, by Dr. Weiss, had at least a dozen witnesses. Their testimony to the principal fact would be direct evidence. The evidence in the trial of Bruno Richard Hauptmann, in 1934, for kidnaping and killing the Lindbergh baby was circumstantial. No person saw that crime committed. Circumstantial evidence included among other things the handwriting of Hauptmann as compared with that used by the writer of the ransom notes; the possession by Hauptmann of marked money; the comparison of the wood in the ladder found near a window of the Lindbergh house at Hopewell, New Jersey, with that in the garage of the Hauptmann home in the Bronx, New York; the links of time; the man's occupation; and his activities before and after the crime. The general conclusion in such a case is based entirely on inference. It should be noted that in the final analysis all testimonial evidence becomes a matter of inference, and that all inference, or indirect evidence, involves finally a search for a cause. This twofold division of evidence is a practical rather than a philosophical one.

#### V. NEED FOR ASSUMPTIONS

While assertions must be supported by evidence, behind this evidence must be certain assumptions taken for granted by both sides. On assumptions we proceed daily, as in assuming that we exist, that two persons cannot be in the same place at the same time, that patriotism is worth while, that life is worth living, and that self-protection is justified.

Argument is successful only when assumptions are accepted. For example, when the debater arguing in support of economic nationalism makes the point that free trade will mean the dumping on American markets of foreign goods and the consequent destruction of American prosperity, he assumes that the preservation of American prosperity is worth while. A classroom debate

was enlivened by a negative speaker who, in reply to the affirmative argument that Ireland should continue to be an integral part of the British Commonwealth of Nations because, if that island were free, England's strategic security would be gone and the British Empire would crash to ruins, asked the question, "What difference would it make if the British Empire did go to ruin?" In this case the affirmative assumption was not granted.

The proper procedure in selecting true or acceptable assumptions is, first, to be sure that your assumptions are not those that grow out of prejudice or bias; secondly, to note carefully the relation of the assumption to the argument; and, thirdly, to have in reserve a fund of fact which, if necessary, you can offer to support your assumption. Debaters, for instance, often argue from the false assumption that a simple panacea will easily remedy a complex social ill. The complexity of the biological world was illustrated by Darwin, for example, when he suggested that the number of cats affected the crop of clover. The fertilization of clover was dependent on the humblebees, nests of which were attacked by field mice, which in turn were warred upon by cats. Similarly, debaters, in their arguments in favor of worldwide disarmament, prevention of international shipment of armaments, and kindred projects, have singled out a so-called primary cause of war and have offered a single remedy. Thus they have lighted upon race prejudice, nationalism, economic imperialism, commercial competition, religious fanaticism, general ignorance, the influence of dictatorships, the propaganda of munition-makers, or some other factor as the one determining cause of international conflict. The arguer would come nearer the mark if he assumed that a combination of these influences together with others even more remote might explain more logically the true "causes" of wars. Likewise the corrective for this situation is too easily assumed and developed. The skillful debater will be wise in making his assumptions and in stating them.

## VI. RELATIVE VALUE OF TESTIMONIAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL EVIDENCE

The popular impression is that direct evidence is much more trustworthy than indirect. Seeing is believing, we are told, and the most reliable kind of material is obviously that in which the witness testifies directly to the truth or falsity of the proposition. The fact is, however, that circumstantial evidence, when properly dovetailed, is as significant and conclusive as direct evidence. The eye and the ear are not infallible ; whereas a complete chain of circumstances may present the true account of the incident. Few murder convictions are based upon direct evidence. Circumstantial material need not depend upon human fallibility. "Witnesses may lie but circumstances cannot." Clothes, fingerprints, tools, typewriting, handwriting, chemical analysis of blood, and all kinds of materials become the clear basis for conviction. A classic illustration is the case of Professor Webster of Harvard, found guilty of the murder of Dr. Parkman. The two had quarreled over a debt. It was discovered that Dr. Parkman had made an appointment with Professor Webster, though no one had seen an interview. A search of Webster's laboratory revealed the charred bones and the identifying false teeth in the furnace, a sufficient basis for conviction.

One of the chief elements in the picture that convicted Hauptmann was the ladder. H. Koehler, wood technologist of the United States Forest Service, testified that part of the wood used in the ladder found outside the Lindbergh house came from the flooring in Hauptmann's attic. The basis for the confession and conviction in the Loeb-Leopold case was the discovery of a pair of horn-rimmed glasses, found near the culvert in which the murderers had deposited the body of Bobby Franks.

Circumstantial evidence can be convincing. But all circumstantial evidence, of course, is valid only to the extent that it proceeds from sound reasoning. It is impressive in proportion to its cumulative character. In order that it may be valid, the

representative facts must all point to the alleged conclusion and no representative facts may indicate otherwise. In short, each type is weak and each is strong. The value of either type is to be measured only by the extent to which it convinces.

#### VII. RELATION OF LEGAL EVIDENCE TO EXTRALEGAL EVIDENCE

Evidence as used in the court room has a restricted meaning not attached to the popular use of the term. Courts of law, for many reasons, have limited the application of evidence. The orderly conduct of trials, the unreliability of human senses, and various other factors have led courts to limit the kinds of evidence used. These laws of evidence, stipulating what shall be admissible, are made by legislature or inherited from English common law, and of course are followed rigidly. These rules stipulate, for example, that a man, after seven years of absence, shall be assumed to be dead; that facts of general knowledge do not require proof; that evidence must be confined to the point at issue; that the burden of proof is upon him who holds the affirmative; that hearsay evidence is inadmissible; that testimony in general should have to do with matters of knowledge rather than of opinion.

Outside of the court we refuse to be bound by these restrictions. In practical debate all evidence is admitted; the only question is the value of that evidence.

#### VIII. TESTS OF EVIDENCE

It is highly important that we weigh each bit of evidence to determine its value. Are the alleged facts worth while (assuming that the inferences drawn from this evidence are valid)? Will the alleged evidence be accepted as true on the basis of common knowledge or on the basis of the authorities who offer it?

1. *Is the testimony consistent internally?* Are the facts as stated to be reconciled with each other? Is undesigned testimony



offered by a witness which is directly contrary to other statements made by him? Sometimes, in their zeal to stress various arguments, debaters use facts that apparently contradict each other. A student argued for government ownership of coal mines because it would mean cheaper coal to the consumer. In the next breath he argued in favor of such ownership because it would mean much better labor conditions, in that the laborers would receive much higher wages. He did not dispose of the apparent inconsistency between the higher wages and the lower price of coal.

2. *Is the testimony consistent with the laws of logical argument?* Here we touch upon the matter of causes and effects. The principles and characteristics of argument as discussed in the following two chapters need to be applied as a final gauge of the validity of evidence.

We should inquire, Is it reasonable to suppose that the evidence is as presented? A witness testified that snow fell in the state of Iowa in July. We ask, By what laws of causation could such a freak of nature be possible? Is the testimony consistent with argument from cause to effect? with the laws of analogy? with the argument from specific instances?

In addition to a consideration of consistency as a test of evidence, we have to deal with the criticism of the source. The source of evidence is in the testimony of witnesses and authorities. In the law court the two are clearly distinguished. A *witness* in court is one who gives testimony concerning a disputed fact, whereas an *authority* is one competent to give opinions about the fact. A witness gives testimony evidence; an authority gives opinion evidence. The legal distinction between authority in regard to matters of opinion and testimony concerning matters of fact does not hold for the school or college debater. He derives both opinion and facts from authorities. He applies the term "authority" both to the author and to the author's article. The tests for evidence from authority, as used in this sense, are similar to those applied to evidence from witnesses.

3. *Is the authority or witness competent?* Is his opinion based on expert knowledge of the subject at issue? Has he had special opportunity to know facts in the given case? John Bassett Moore and Elihu Root, for example, are authorities on international law; Charles A. Beard and A. Lawrence Lowell, on government.

Debaters often commit the fallacy, to be discussed more fully in the chapter on "Fallacies," of assuming that because a man or woman is prominent his or her opinions are expert on every subject. If a baseball player achieves national fame, he straightway is quoted as having declared that this automobile is more satisfactory than any other; that this brand of collar wears better than all others. He may be quoted as authority on any matter from political parties to the rehabilitation of China. Automobile magnates are not always experts concerning racial problems; Congressmen are not always the best authorities concerning what types of battle cruisers should be built; internationally known business leaders are not always specialists in the field of drama or poetry and may be no better qualified than less pecunious citizens concerning the value of some freshly produced drama. Only men who have become specialists on a given subject are worth citing as authorities on that subject.

The obstacles to competency of witnesses are numerous. Powers of observation and judgment differ widely. Mary E. M. Splaine, the chief witness in the conviction of Sacco and Vanzetti for the pay-roll robbery and murder at South Braintree, Massachusetts, identified Sacco. Dr. Morton Prince, professor of abnormal and dynamic psychology at Harvard, thus commented on her testimony:

I do not hesitate to say that the star witness for the government testified, honestly enough, no doubt, to what was psychologically impossible. Miss Splaine testified (though she had only seen Sacco at the time of the shooting, from a distance of about sixty feet for from one and one-half to three seconds, in a motor car going at an increasing rate of speed at about fifteen to eighteen miles an hour) that she saw,

and at the end of the year she remembered and described, sixteen different details of his person, even to the size of his hand, the length of his hair (as being between two and two and one-half inches long), and the shade of his eyebrows! Such perception and memory under such conditions can be easily proved to be psychologically impossible. Every psychologist knows that — so does Houdini. . . . Why was not Miss Splaine asked to pick out Sacco from among a group of men? If this had been done, this unconscious falsification of memory would have been avoided.<sup>1</sup>

Note that errors appear in reporting, such as the omission of statements, or errors of addition or substitution. Note that many who testify are not in a position to observe; their observations are "hearsay evidence." Similar is the testimony of children or of the mentally incompetent. Mental disease, senility, deafness, blindness, limited education, inexperience, lack of mental poise, weak memory, suggestion, or failure to understand the questions put to a witness — any of these may account for faulty evidence.

4. *Is the authority or witness free from prejudice?* The prejudice growing out of racial, nationalistic, political, economic, military, religious, or purely personal interests will often explain the character of the testimony. The following editorial satirizes the use of prejudiced authority:

#### MILITARY AND NAVAL APPROPRIATIONS

For the past three weeks, however, the newspapers have been carrying columns of woe, emanating from Congressmen, generals, admirals, officers of defense societies, and others who claim intimate and incontestable knowledge of the facts, and all to the same effect. According to these witnesses, the army, the navy, and the air forces are a wreck, with the morale of personnel shattered by public indifference and with equipment hopelessly deteriorated through neglect. The brigadier general who holds forth in the daily press on the morning these lines are written tells a tale of army desertions which indicates that the soldiers are streaming away from the army posts in a

<sup>1</sup> Letter, "A Psychologist's Study," *Boston Herald*, October 30, 1926.

continuous parade that must look like an annual review at an American Legion convention. Congressman Britten is nobly upheld by sundry naval officers in his broadcasts of the helplessness of the navy. And Mr. Brisbane's remarks on aviation sound optimistic when compared with those of the officers attached to the flying branches.

The inference is that because these men who were bewailing a weak army and navy and the need of appropriations were themselves naval and military officers, and hence prejudiced, their testimony was obviously worthless.

5. *Is the authority reliable?* Is he given to bombast, exaggeration, and questionable assertions? The application of this test would lead to the rejection of the authority of certain prominent newspapers.

College debaters, like other people, often assume that because a statement is printed, it is necessarily an accurate and reliable statement. Whoever bursts into print, therefore, is freely quoted. Only through experience, sometimes disheartening experience, do we come to realize how much that is found in books and papers is utterly unreliable. Newspapers, although they are in the main laudable agencies for informing public opinion, necessarily gather their news quickly and from sources that frequently are open to question. Hence the false statements and the exaggerations that occur. Moreover, the human family is so eager to add to the world's libraries that books are hastily or ignorantly patched together. Students of argument will do well to scan with discrimination printed sources as well as oral testimony.

6. *Is the authority definite?* "Statistics show," "someone has said," "a prominent member of Wall Street said recently," "a Mexican diplomat wrote," and similar expressions mean little. In argumentation, especially in debating, the source should be precise. In the body of the written forensic the references should be explicit; accurate and definite sources should appear as marginal notes or footnotes. In actual delivery of the debate the speaker need not bore the audience with elaborate recital of page



and chapter ; whenever it seems necessary, however, the speaker must be ready to cite his sources.

7. *Is the authority or source primary rather than secondary?* Debaters often say, "*The Congressional Record* tells us . . .," without suggesting that, no doubt, some Senator or Representative is holding forth on the page cited. Or we may be told that the latest number of the *Literary Digest* declares on page 43 that such and such a statement is true or untrue. The need here is to get the exact source and, if possible, the original source. Perhaps the *Literary Digest* is quoting Senator Smith in a recent speech in Congress. The student will ultimately substitute, for statements of the type above, such remarks as "Senator Smith, in his address in Congress on April thirteenth, said so and so."

Be sure that your record in each case is primary. A primary source of any information is the "oldest living record that furnishes that information, either explicitly or by implication, or an authentic copy of that record."<sup>1</sup> Primary sources are either original documents or copies of original documents. Of course an original document should be examined if possible ; for example, the original letters of Lincoln rather than the copies. Secondary sources — for example, histories and biographies written long after the death of the subject — are often prejudiced and inaccurate. Primary sources, such as the Gospels, should be carefully examined from the angle of external criticism and from that of internal criticism. External criticism looks to the origin of the document, its authorship, and the source from which the information came. External criticism has been applied to documents. An instance is the scrutiny of a series of documents purporting to be orders from the president of Mexico for payment to the editor of *The Nation* for propaganda in favor of the government of Mexico. Another instance is the examination of an alleged decree of the Russian government, which appeared in the American press in 1918, ordering the nationalization of women. Both

<sup>1</sup> E. L. Clarke. *The Art of Straight Thinking*, p. 268. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., New York, 1929.



documents proved to be forgeries. Internal criticism examines the manuscript or printed source by any means available, to decide whether what it says is really true. This type of criticism involves all the tests of evidence and of argument.

8. *Is the authority supported by other sources?* Superficial students often rely on one authority. Continued reference to one book is usually an index of limited preparation.

9. *Is the authority supported by argument from specific instances, causal relation, and analogy?* Evidence from authority, excellent as it is, should not be used exclusively. Students often make the mistake of trying to prove their case by a list of quotations from magazines and other sources. Authorities are mainly to furnish a source for verifying facts rather than for the voicing of opinions. A variety of evidence should be used, both direct and indirect. Articles and other sources of information should be thoroughly digested so that the ideas as presented become fresh and original. As suggested above, testimonial evidence, wherever possible, should be combined with circumstantial evidence.

10. *Is the evidence acceptable to the audience?* The problem in handling evidence is one not simply of testing the validity of your material but of persuading an audience that your concrete items are valid. Students of debate who accumulate and present a wealth of evidence usually make the mistake of failing to show the significance of that evidence.

a. Point out to your listeners the significance of your material. If, for example, you quote H. L. Markson as an authority on rubber, it would be well to cite his particular qualifications and lead the audience thus to appraise rightly his opinion concerning the future of the rubber market. If you are using statistics, make clear that the averages on which your argument rests have significance; or that you are using a median, to determine in what class you have the most representative number of cases; or that you have taken other precautions to conform to statistical tests.

b. Show your audience that the value of your evidence has not been exaggerated. Qualify your statements so that those

who listen will have confidence not only in the items which you present but also in your judgment and integrity as an arguer. Never say "millions" when you mean "thousands."

c. Show your audience that your material will withstand the tests of counter-argument. Apply the principles of refutation and rebuttal as outlined in subsequent chapters. State clearly the evidence to be offered against your data and draw conclusions based upon the entire picture.

d. Show your audience that your material is recent and the best you can secure on the problem.

e. Show that your evidence fits in with the established beliefs of your listeners.

f. Simplify the evidence so that the auditors may quickly catch it. This suggestion means that statistics should not be too numerous, that they should be expressed in round numbers, that they should be translated by means of analogous cases, and that the important items should be repeated.

g. Make the evidence vivid and persuasive by identifying it with imaginative and emotional concepts. Use the devices suggested in the chapters on "The Audience" and "Development of the Speech"; use figurative analogies, and appeals to self-preservation, profit, social convenience, ambition, indignation, duty, justice, and loyalty to friends, home, and country.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS



①. Apply the tests of evidence to each of the following examples:

a. According to the 1930 World Almanac, the Massachusetts automobile death rate per one hundred thousand population in the three years before the law went into effect and the two years thereafter varied only two tenths.

b. The magazine *Time* in one issue told of shirt factories in which the average wages of the employees were only three dollars a week.

c. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics the wholesale price index varied from 68.1 in 1914 to 114.4 in 1920; it fell to 86.7 in 1922 and rose to 103.5 in 1925.

d. High officials are not always intelligent. Mr. Adolph C. Miller, Federal Reserve Board representative, stated at hearings on the Strong Bill that "the members of the Federal Reserve system are not economic statesmen, and they are frequently in the dark as to the consequences of their acts."

e. Henry Fletcher, chairman of the Republican National Committee, stated in *Vital Speeches* for February, 1935: "The New Deal has sown and is sowing the wind of socialism. The country may have to reap the whirlwind of demagogic radicalism."

f. Professor E. W. Kemmerer, professor of finance at Princeton, stated in *Vital Speeches* for April, 1935, "Inflation exists in the country whenever the supply of money and of circulating bank credit — that is, deposit currency — increases relatively to the demand in such a way as to cause a rise in the general price level."

g. Insects are extremely costly to a nation. Why, in 1928 in France alone, three million dollars was spent to repair damage done by the Japanese beetle.

h. Germany's balance of trade was favorable in 1931. In that year the exports amounted to twelve million marks, and the imports to fourteen billion marks.

i. The United States has had a larger navy than France since 1928. While the United States navy numbered 311 ships throughout this period, the ships which France had during the successive years were: 300, 309, 325, 285, 285.

j. Under "state medicine" private medicine will still exist. Dr. E. F. Archer, of the Willis Hospital of Cambridge, states in the *Crawfordsville Journal*, July, 1930, "Medicine has been impressively treated in Sinclair Lewis's *Arrowsmith*."

k. The Honorable Claude A. Swanson, Secretary of the Navy, said yesterday, "The best way to disarm Great Britain and Japan is for the United States to build to treaty strength."

l. Professor Jones, professor of dramatic literature at Green College, declared last night that "the Irving Fisher Commodity Dollar will guarantee a stabilized currency."

m. According to a recent magazine, the Republican party will raise a campaign budget of two million dollars.

## REFERENCES ✓

(For advanced students)

- BEST, W. M. *Principles of the Law of Evidence* (Twelfth Edition). The Carswell Company, 1922.
- WELLMAN, F. L. *The Art of Cross-Examination*. The Macmillan Company, 1920.
- WELLS, F. D. *The Man in Court*. G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1917.
- WHARTON, FRANCIS. *Treatise on the Law of Evidence in Criminal Cases* (Eleventh Edition). 3 vols. Lawyers Co-operative Publishing Company, 1932.
- WIGMORE, J. H. *Code of the Rules of Evidence* (Second Edition). Little, Brown and Company, 1935.
- WIGMORE, J. H. *Principles of Judicial Proof* (Second Edition, Revised). Little, Brown and Company, 1931. Carswell Company, 1933.

Foster  
"Argumentation  
&  
"H. H. H. H. H."

## CHAPTER VII

### ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES: DEDUCTION

I. IMPORTANCE OF THE STUDY OF ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES. II. THE PROCESS OF REASONING BY INDUCTION AND DEDUCTION. III. ARGUMENT FROM DEDUCTION. IV. RELATION OF INDUCTION TO DEDUCTION. V. THE TYPICAL FORM OF DEDUCTIVE REASONING: THE SYLLOGISM. VI. THE CATEGORICAL SYLLOGISM. VII. THE DISJUNCTIVE SYLLOGISM. VIII. THE HYPOTHETICAL SYLLOGISM. IX. MODIFIED FORMS OF THE SYLLOGISM. X. NONSYLLOGISTIC ARGUMENTS. XI. PRACTICAL USE OF SYLLOGISTIC REASONING

#### I. IMPORTANCE OF THE STUDY OF ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES

Since proof is derived from both evidence and argument, it is highly important that you should be able to classify the types of argument and to test the validity of each type. Such knowledge and skill you will apply to test the validity both of your own arguments and of those of your rivals.

#### II. THE PROCESS OF REASONING BY INDUCTION AND DEDUCTION

Argument, described earlier as the explorative process by which we advance from premises to conclusions, is from this point of view synonymous with reasoning. The reasoning process, or the process of inference, is carried out by two methods: induction and deduction.

#### III. ARGUMENT FROM DEDUCTION

Deductive reasoning is the complement of induction. In deduction we proceed from a general truth in the premise to a particular truth in the conclusion, whereas in induction we argue from a number of particular premises to a general conclusion. We assume a general principle or classification and assert a definite conclusion about a person, event, or thing to be found within that classi-



fication or under that principle. For example, we may reason that all nations that have developed the imperialistic policy have been destroyed; that the United States has developed an imperialistic policy; and that the United States will be destroyed. It should be noted that the deduction is no stronger than the induction upon which the deduction contained in the premise is based.

#### IV. RELATION OF INDUCTION TO DEDUCTION

To illustrate the difference between these two types, compare the following examples:

##### INDUCTION

- I. Liquor laws are violated in New York State.
- II. Liquor laws are violated in Illinois.
- III. Liquor laws are violated in California.

Therefore liquor laws are violated in every state in the United States.

##### DEDUCTION

Liquor laws are violated in every state in the United States.

Therefore they are violated in New York State.

Since induction of some truth, fact, hypothesis, or postulate must proceed from assumptions, deduction is clearly present in all inductive inferences. On the other hand, every deduction is established by inductive methods. For you to treat these two as if they were antagonistic or widely separated indicates a failure to understand each. Reasoning is in each case both deductive and inductive and can be described as either deductive or inductive according to the point of view from which it is examined.

#### V. THE TYPICAL FORM OF DEDUCTIVE REASONING: THE SYLLOGISM

Although care must be taken not to limit deduction to syllogistic reasoning, the typical form of reasoning from a general truth in the premise to the particular conclusion is contained in the

sylogism. A syllogism is a set of three propositions: a major premise, a minor premise, and a conclusion. The premises are so called because they contain a common term; the conclusion is so called because it presumably results from a comparison made in the premises between the two terms contained in the conclusion and a third term, called the middle term.

## VI. THE CATEGORICAL SYLLOGISM —

*effect to effect -*  
**A. Organization of the Categorical Syllogism.** The first type of the syllogism to be considered is the categorical syllogism. In this type the conclusion and both premises are categorical propositions. A categorical proposition defines, classifies, asserts without qualification. The following is an example of a categorical syllogism:

I. All voters are at least twenty-one years of age.

II. Mary Milo is a voter.

III. Mary Milo is at least twenty-one.

The syllogism above consists of three statements and three terms. The major premise is so designated because it contains the major term; the minor premise contains the minor term. This syllogism may be organized in different ways; we are concerned with the typical form above because to this form we attempt to reduce arguments in order to test them properly. The names of the terms and their relative positions may be illustrated by the following example:

	MIDDLE TERM	MAJOR TERM
<i>Major premise.</i>	I. All college men	believe in intercollegiate football.
	MINOR TERM	MIDDLE TERM
<i>Minor premise.</i>	II. Algernon Aldergate	is a college man.
	MINOR TERM	MAJOR TERM
<i>Conclusion.</i>	III. Algernon Aldergate	believes in intercollegiate football.

Each proposition is composed of two terms; in no proposition does each term appear more than once. The major term represents belief in intercollegiate football. The minor term represents the concrete instance about which the conclusion is

drawn — Algernon Aldergate. The middle term is the mediating or connecting link which enables us to place the minor term within the field of the major term. It thus disappears in the conclusion.

**B. Special Rules for the Categorical Syllogism.** Logic recognizes the following general rules for the syllogism :

1. *A syllogism must contain three propositions:* major premise, minor premise, and conclusion.

2. *A syllogism must contain three terms and only three terms:* the major term, the middle term, and the minor term. This rule means that each of the three terms must appear in two of the six occasions in a syllogism when a term is necessary. Those who construct syllogisms often use more than three terms. An illustration of the use of four terms would be as follows :

- I. Whatever lowers the standard of scholarship in the university should be condemned.
- II. Fraternities at White College lower the standard of scholarship.
- III. Fraternities should be condemned.

In this proposition "should be condemned" is a major term ; "Whatever lowers the standard of scholarship" is the middle term ; "Fraternities at White College" is the minor term ; and in the conclusion "Fraternities" is the use of the minor term in a broader sense, so that this term is a different one from the minor term found in the minor premise. In other words, the proposition above contains four terms.

To construct a syllogism arrange the major term as the predicate of the major premise. The other term of this major premise is the middle term. The subject of the minor premise is the minor term, and the predicate of the minor premise is the middle term. The subject of the conclusion is the minor term, and the predicate is the major term. In the correctly stated categorical syllogism the terms thus occupy the following relative positions :

- I. Middle term — Major term.
- II. Minor term — Middle term.
- III. Minor term — Major term.

3. *The middle term of the syllogism must be distributed in at least one of the premises.* A distributed term is not a term that is scattered throughout premises and conclusion; rather it is a term that is used universally, broadly, or in its widest meaning. The qualifying adjective which symbolizes *universal* is *all* or *every*.

The following example illustrates the violation of this rule:

- I. Some students of this university have a knowledge of Greek.
- II. Percival Pinkerton is a student of this university.
- III. Percival Pinkerton has a knowledge of Greek.

The term *students* is obviously undistributed. Therefore we are not justified in placing the minor term within the middle term. The *undistributed middle* is called the *illicit middle*.

4. *No term can be distributed in the conclusion unless it is distributed in one of the premises.* An undistributed major term is called the *illicit major*. The following illustration contains an illicit major:

- I. All soldiers of the American Expeditionary Force receive bonuses.
- II. No school teachers are soldiers.
- III. No school teachers receive bonuses.

"Bonuses" in the major premise are not, as implied, *all* bonuses. Compare this example with the following, in which the minor term is undistributed:

- I. All followers of Plato are idealists.
- II. All followers of Plato are Greeks.
- III. All Greeks are idealists.

"Greeks" in the minor premise does not include "All Greeks."

5. *No valid conclusion can be drawn from two negative premises.*

- I. All beer is not intoxicating.
- II. All elderberry wine is not beer.
- III. All elderberry wine is not intoxicating.

As a matter of fact, elderberry wine, although not like beer, may on occasion be most intoxicating.

6. *If one premise is negative, the conclusion must be negative; and we cannot have a negative conclusion unless one of the premises is negative.* Thus:

- I. Americans do not believe in monarchical government.
- II. John Jones is an American.
- III. John Jones does not believe in monarchical government.

7. *The alleged facts of each premise should be verified.* The syllogism should be tested not only for form but for substance. Before a conclusion is drawn, the accuracy of the preceding statements should be carefully tested. The following syllogism will illustrate the application of the rule:

- I. Whatever plan will prevent strikes should be adopted.
- II. Compulsory arbitration will prevent strikes.
- III. Compulsory arbitration should be adopted.

A labor unionist and others would deny that "whatever plan will prevent strikes should be adopted." Furthermore many students would question whether "compulsory arbitration will prevent strikes."

## VII. THE DISJUNCTIVE SYLLOGISM

*effect to cause*

**A. Organization of the Disjunctive Syllogism.** The disjunctive syllogism is a syllogism which has as the major premise a disjunctive proposition. A disjunctive proposition is one in which alternative possibilities are stated. The connectives are either and or. The following syllogism has for its major premise a disjunctive proposition:

- I. Either the high protective tariff or overproduction was responsible for the post-war plight of the Mid-West farmer.
- II. The protective tariff was not responsible.
- III. Overproduction was responsible for the plight of the Mid-West farmer.

The major premise here states two possibilities; the minor premise is a categorical proposition which denies one of the alternatives; and the conclusion is a categorical proposition which affirms the other possibility.



**B. Tests of the Disjunctive Syllogism.** Four tests are to be applied to determine the validity of these syllogisms:

1. *Are the possibilities enumerated exhaustive?* The validity of the syllogism depends upon the completeness with which the possibilities have been enumerated. The entire field must be described. Consider the following example:

- I. The United States must either annex Mexico or establish a protectorate over it.
- II. The United States must not annex Mexico.
- III. The United States must establish a protectorate over that country.

Other possibilities at once occur: (1) we may have merely a policy of doing nothing about that country; or (2) if we think affairs there warrant, we may intervene temporarily. Other policies may occur to the student of the situation.

It is difficult to state disjunctives which do exhaust the possibilities. Examine the following syllogisms:

- I. Either the state universities must have more funds or they must curtail their educational work.
- II. The state universities must not curtail their educational work.
- III. The state universities must have more funds.

It would of course be possible for higher institutions to develop their educational work by a redistribution of their funds.

- I. Either Germany or Serbia started the World War.
- II. Serbia did not start the World War.
- III. Germany did so.

Some people would say that Russia or France was the instigator.

2. *Are the possibilities enumerated in the major premise mutually exclusive?* The process of eliminating the possibilities in order to find the real cause means also the necessity for arriving at a division in which the possibilities do not overlap. Note in the following example that the alternatives have elements in common:

- I. Either we must reduce armaments or decrease the navy.
- II. We must reduce armaments.
- III. We must not decrease the navy.

It is presumed that *armaments* would include naval armaments. A scientific definition of each term becomes necessary if the major premise is to be logically framed.

Consider the validity of the following cases:

- I. Either Wallace or Darwin originated the theory of evolution.
- II. Wallace did not originate it.
- III. Darwin originated it.

- I. Either the European nations will pay the war debts owing the United States or European international credit will decline.
- II. The European nations will pay their war debts owing the United States.
- III. The European international credit will not decline.

- I. Either Washington or Lincoln was the greatest American.
- II. Washington was the greatest American.
- III. Lincoln was not the greatest American.

- I. Either the United States will repeal the legislation prohibiting Japanese immigration into this country or a war will take place.
- II. War will not take place.
- III. The United States will repeal the legislation prohibiting the Japanese immigration into this country.

3. *If the minor premise affirms one of the possibilities does the conclusion deny the other?* It is clear that if the minor premise affirms a possibility, a valid conclusion follows only if the other possibility is ruled out.

4. *If the minor premise denies one of the possibilities does the conclusion affirm the other?*

A disjunctive proposition which fails to meet any one of the above tests is imperfect. Although disjunctive propositions are used widely in everyday reasoning, it is rare for the reasoning to be sound. Almost invariably the alternative overlaps or other possibilities are overlooked.

## VIII. THE HYPOTHETICAL SYLLOGISM

**A. Organization of the Hypothetical Syllogism.** This syllogism is so called because the major premise is a hypothetical proposition. A hypothetical proposition is one in which the chief assertion is conditioned. The sentence is complex in structure and the dependent clause is a condition. The conditional clause is called the *antecedent* and the main clause the *consequent*. The proposition thus implies a cause-to-effect relationship. The major premise is a hypothetical proposition, the minor premise is a categorical proposition which affirms or denies either the antecedent or the consequent of the major premise, and the conclusion affirms or denies that antecedent or consequent not affirmed or denied in the minor premise. Note the following illustrations:

- I. If the peace of the Western Hemisphere is to be maintained, the United States must retain the Monroe Doctrine.
- II. The peace of the Western Hemisphere is to be maintained.
- III. The United States must retain the Monroe Doctrine.

Here the minor term affirms the antecedent, and the conclusion affirms the consequent.

- I. If the United States joins the World Court, international law will be accepted as a substitute for international war.
- II. The United States will not join the World Court.
- III. International law will not be substituted for international war.

In this example the minor premise denies the antecedent; and the conclusion, the consequent.

- I. If the United States is to endure, the American people will retain their idealism.
- II. The American people will retain their idealism.
- III. The United States will endure.

In this case the minor premise affirms the consequent; and the conclusion, the antecedent.

- I. If the Republican party wins in the next national election, that party will declare itself in favor of reducing taxes.
- II. That party will not declare itself in favor of reducing taxes.
- III. The Republican party will not win in the next national election.

In this case the minor premise denies the consequent; and the conclusion denies the antecedent. The reasoning is valid.

**B. Tests of the Hypothetical Syllogism.** These examples make clear that (1) if the minor premise affirms the antecedent, the conclusion must affirm the consequent; (2) if the minor premise denies the consequent, the conclusion must deny the antecedent; (3) no reliance can be attached to a conclusion based upon a denial of the antecedent or an affirmation of the consequent. If the syllogism is to be valid, the minor premise should either affirm the antecedent or deny the consequent.

An invalid hypothetical syllogism results when we deny the antecedent, because we are uncertain whether the antecedent as described is the only condition which will lead to the consequent assigned. Other antecedents or causes may also lead to this consequent. Therefore to deny this one antecedent gives no justification for denying others that have not been considered. Whenever an antecedent is denied, it is necessary to deny every antecedent. Thus in the example quoted above concerning the relation of the United States to the World Court the syllogism is probably invalid because the antecedent is denied. In spite of the fact that the United States fails to enter the World Court, international law may be substituted for international war. The syllogisms might properly represent other possibilities or conditions:

- 1. If the United States dominates the economic policies of European nations, international law will be a substitute for international war.
- 2. If the United States leads the nations in a program of disarmament, international law will be a substitute for international war.
- 3. If the nations educate their peoples to understand the futility of wars, international law will be a substitute for international war.

If only one of these antecedents is affirmed as true, the affirmation of the consequent follows. On the contrary, if only one of these conditions is denied, we are certainly not justified in denying the consequent, for in such case we ignore the possible influence of another antecedent in establishing the fact that law may be a substitute for force.

To affirm the consequent also leads to illogical reasoning, for the consequent may result from other antecedents than the one considered. Why should the affirmation of one consequent justify you in affirming that since one consequent is true all others are eliminated? Logically, we assume a number of antecedents. In the example above, to assert that "international law will be a substitute for international war" is no warrant for asserting that therefore the United States will enter the World Court.

The result might be due to any one of many other causes, such as the fact that the United States might lead the other nations in a program of disarmament, or that the nations might carry out a program of education in regard to the futility of war. But if we know that international law is not a substitute for war, we are logically justified in asserting that "the United States has not led the nations in a program of disarmament." In the example cited above concerning the idealism of the American people, to declare that "the American people will retain their idealism" and therefore will endure, is to ignore the fact that causes other than the retention of idealism are to be reckoned with. A comet or an earthquake might blot out the race, regardless of American idealism.

The tests to be applied are as follows:

1. When the minor premise affirms the antecedent, does the conclusion affirm the consequent?
2. When the minor premise denies the consequent, does the conclusion deny the antecedent?
3. Is the conclusion derived from a denial of the antecedent?
4. Is the conclusion derived from an affirmation of the consequent?



IX. MODIFIED FORMS OF THE SYLLOGISM

**A. The Enthymeme.** The enthymeme is a syllogism in which one of the premises or the conclusion is absent.

1. *Three Orders.* An enthymeme with the major premise missing is an enthymeme of the *first order*; one with the minor premise suppressed is an enthymeme of the *second order*; one with the conclusion lacking is an enthymeme of the *third order*. Examples of each follow:

*First order.* War is an evil and should be abolished.

*Second order.* These people are Americans, for all who are natives of Georgia are Americans.

*Third order.* Whoever denies the existence of a personal God is an atheist, and he denies the existence of a personal God.

Each of these expressed in the form of a full-fledged categorical syllogism would be:

I. Whatever is an evil should be abolished.

II. War is an evil.

III. War should be abolished.

I. All who are natives of Georgia are Americans.

II. These people are natives of Georgia.

III. These people are Americans.

I. Whoever denies the existence of a personal God is an atheist.

II. He denies the existence of a personal God.

III. He is an atheist.

2. *Construction of the Syllogism from the Enthymeme.* The enthymeme, we remind ourselves, is to be converted into a *categorical* syllogism for purposes of testing. The first step is to put down the conclusion. It is usually obvious, even if absent, as in the case given above in which "he is an atheist" was so obvious as hardly to need statement. If present, the conclusion is clearly shown by such expressions as *therefore*, which points forward to the conclusion, or *for* and similar expressions of causal reasoning,

which refer to the conclusion as preceding the reason therefor. The conclusion has for its predicate the major term; and for its subject, the minor term. Each term is next placed in its appropriate premise — the minor term as the subject of the minor premise, the major term as the predicate of the major premise. The middle term may be easily supplied from the context.

To illustrate, let us convert the statement "Blessed are the meek" in the conclusion. Correctly placed, it reads, "The meek are blessed." "Meek" becomes the subject of the minor premise, and "are blessed" the predicate of the major premise. Thus we have the terms as follows :

- I. ? - - - - are blessed.
- II. Meek - - - - ?
- III. Meek are blessed.

"They shall inherit the earth" becomes the middle term. Stated as a universal, we have as the completed major premise, "All who inherit the earth are blessed," and as the minor premise, "The meek inherit the earth."

**B. Chains of Reasoning.** Many arguments are complex, made up of a series of syllogisms or of enthymemes. The conclusion of one syllogism becomes a premise for the next. This type of argument is called a *chain of reasoning*. The problem is to organize the assertions into full syllogisms and to test each syllogism. Here is a characteristic example :

- I. All transgressions of the law ought to be punished.
- II. Drinking alcohol is a transgression of the law, for it is a violation of the Eighteenth Amendment.
- III. Drinking alcohol ought to be punished.

The chains of reasoning would be arranged into two complete syllogisms, as follows :

- I. Whatever is a violation of the Eighteenth Amendment is a transgression of the law.
- II. Drinking alcohol is a violation of the Eighteenth Amendment.
- III. Drinking alcohol is a transgression of the law.

- I. All transgressions of the law ought to be punished.
- II. Drinking alcohol is a transgression of the law.
- III. Drinking alcohol should be punished.

**C. Sorites.** The *sorites* is a special kind of chain of reasoning, consisting of a series of syllogisms in which "the two terms of the conclusion are united through the mediation of more than one intervening or connecting term."<sup>1</sup> An example follows:

- Whoever lives in America enjoys seeing American plays.
- Whoever enjoys seeing American plays appreciates literary art.
- Whoever appreciates literary art has culture.
- Therefore whoever lives in America has culture.

The chain of reasoning needs to be reduced to a series of syllogisms; thus:

- I. Whoever enjoys seeing American plays appreciates literary art.
- II. Whoever lives in America enjoys seeing American plays.
- III. Whoever lives in America appreciates literary art.

- I. Whoever appreciates literary art has culture.
- II. Whoever lives in America appreciates literary art.
- III. Whoever lives in America has culture.

## X. NONSYLLOGISTIC ARGUMENTS

Many arguments, cast in the form of categorical propositions, cannot be reduced to syllogistic form. They are called nonsyllogistic arguments. These are arguments dealing with space, relations of time, quantity, and causality. Many of these arguments are used in daily reasoning. For example: (time) The World War took place after the Spanish-American War; the Spanish-American War took place after the Civil War; therefore the World War took place after the Civil War.

In reference to all of these irregular arguments it should be especially emphasized again that, whereas they have no real middle term and are

<sup>1</sup> B. H. Bode, *An Outline of Logic*, p. 78. Henry Holt and Company.

not conformable to the rules of the syllogism, nevertheless their validity does depend on whether they correctly exhibit an actual implicative system or inferential whole. Unless such a real system is assumed . . . as well as in the arguments used to exemplify space, time, and quantity, the argument falls to the ground.<sup>1</sup>

## XI. PRACTICAL USE OF SYLLOGISTIC REASONING

Most of the arguments passed about in everyday life and in school and college debates are based upon assumptions not directly stated. For example, we argue in favor of the American newspaper because we claim that it is necessary for the protection of democracy. Perhaps only after some opposing speaker asks, "But do we need democracy?" do we realize that our argument was based upon a syllogism, the major premise of which would read, "Whatever would protect democracy is necessary." Or we argue that we ought to support the League of Nations because it is the best single agency in the international world for promoting peace. Someone challenges the logic, "But do we want peace rather than war?" The practical problem of the debater is to translate into syllogisms the numerous enthymemes making up an argument, and then to test those propositions, particularly the major premise, making up the syllogism. Demagogues, shallow debaters, and superficial thinkers need to have their ideas subjected to the methods outlined in this chapter and so exposed for the illogical and therefore untenable ideas they often are. The study and use of syllogisms, far from being merely an academic discipline coming to us from medieval schoolmen, is a most practical aspect of the study of argument. You will find more and more delight and satisfaction in so analyzing your own and other people's arguments.

<sup>1</sup> D. S. Robinson, *The Principles of Reasoning*, p. 158. D. Appleton and Company, New York, 1924.

EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

①. Bring to class two examples of inductive reasoning ; two examples of deductive reasoning.

②. Hand in one satisfactory example of each of the following : categorical syllogism, (disjunctive syllogism, hypothetical syllogism, enthymeme, chain of reasoning, sorites. /

③. In each of the following examples reduce the argument to a syllogism : -3-

a. The political parties in this country should be realigned, for they no longer reflect the needs and demands of the people, and we know that any political party should reflect these needs and demands.

b. The Federal government should be gradually reorganized so as to substitute the cabinet system for the present congressional system. The present form fails to bridge the gap sufficiently between the executive and legislative branches of government. Such union of the branches is necessary if the government is to function efficiently, if it is to represent the will of the people, and if it is to have sufficient stability.

c. Prohibition is highly desirable because it has increased the savings accounts of America, and whatever agency leads to accumulation of savings is highly desirable.

d. The certificate plan of admission to college is unjust, for it certainly excludes many desirable candidates who have not had opportunity to attend certain private schools and thus receive certification by a short cut, and anything which leads to injustice should be changed.

e. The plan of examination for admission to college is unjust and should not be exclusively used for admission, for it requires candidates to undergo a most grueling strain of writing for three days, usually in hot weather. Any plan which tests so rigidly the candidate's physical and nervous condition is unjust.

f. Sunday concerts for the working people should not be continued, for many rowdies are attracted, the music is of a low character, and the expense involved is not justified.

g. The free-textbook system should be discontinued, for it is unjust to many taxpayers. It adds unduly to the school tax of many who have no children in school.

h. Revolvers, narcotics, and automobiles were named by Chief City Magistrate William McAdoo to a delegation of Chicago prison officials



as the greatest contributors to crime. The pistol, he declared, is the curse of the American nation. Legislate pistols out of existence, he suggested. The daily murders reported in New York and elsewhere would be averted if pistols could be placed beyond the reach of the people.

✓ 3. Outline, and explain to the class, the general method, inductive or deductive, used by Huxley in "On a Piece of Chalk."

✓ 4. Be prepared to discuss Poe's methods of reasoning as illustrated in his stories "The Murders in the Rue Morgue" and "The Mystery of Marie Roget."

✓ 5. Write two argumentative paragraphs, one deductive, the other inductive, on one of the following propositions:

a. This state should establish a board of censorship of moving pictures.

b. This city should establish a municipal theater.

c. This school (or college) library should be open on Sunday.

d. The lecture system in college courses should be discontinued.

e. The local streets should be more adequately lighted.

f. All cats should be licensed.

6. Reduce to syllogistic form the following statements, and bring to class for criticism:

a. The laws prohibiting the speeding of automobiles should be repealed, for they cannot be enforced.

b. Smith is a freshman, and therefore wears a green cap.

c. All bootleggers are thieves and cutthroats, and we have proof that Smith bootlegs home brew.

d. Whatever is good for the United States is good for Iowa; therefore the latest Federal education bill is good for Iowa.

e. Zoöphytes have no flowers; therefore they are not plants.

7. Make complete syllogisms of each of the following conclusions:

a. That poem is by Wordsworth.

b. That man is well educated.

c. Coeducation is a failure.

d. One man in his time plays many parts.

e. A five-year college course for women is necessary.

f. Mail-order houses should be prohibited.

g. Every community of five thousand or more should provide a municipal dance hall.

8. Indicate the order of each of the following enthymemes. Supply the missing premise (or conclusion). Explain whether the syllogism is valid or invalid. If it is invalid, explain why.

a. War is a means of promoting national progress, and therefore should be encouraged.

b. Radishes are vegetables, and fish are not radishes.

c. These students are football players and therefore brave.

d. The American Revolution was long and terrible, for all struggles for liberty are so.

e. You, as you are old and reverend, should be wise.

f. Those who study argumentation and debate are more likely to be good reasoners, and Jonathan Wild studies argumentation and debate.

9. Apply the tests for hypothetical syllogisms to the following; if the syllogism is invalid, explain why.

a. If reforestation in the Mississippi Valley is not accomplished, Mississippi River floods will continue. Mississippi River floods will continue. Reforestation of the Mississippi Valley will not be accomplished.

b. If you failed to attend the university play, *Hamlet*, you made a great mistake. You failed to attend the university play. You made a great mistake.

c. If our university football team wins the next game, we shall have the Big Ten Conference championship. Our football team will win the next game. We shall have the Big Ten championship.

d. If the Republican party continues to have the backing of big business, the Republicans will continue to rule in American politics. The Republican party will continue to have the backing of big business. The Republicans will continue to rule in American politics.

10. Apply the tests to the following disjunctive syllogisms. If the syllogisms are invalid, explain why.

a. Mountains are either *original* or *relict*. The Appalachian Mountains are relict. They are not original. (D. S. Robinson, *The Principles of Reasoning*, p. 175. D. Appleton and Company, 1924.)

b. Either you must refrain from purchasing an automobile or you must expect to save little money. You must not refrain from purchasing an automobile. You must expect to save little money.

11. Examine a printed interscholastic or intercollegiate debate for the chains of reasoning. Reduce five of the leading arguments to categorical syllogisms, and test the reasoning.

## 12. Comment on the following statement :

a. "We should, of course, recognize that the terms in the syllogisms are open to various constructions and that our practical business is to free them from ambiguity as much as possible. We further recognize that these logical propositions exhibit probability rather than absolute, or categorical, truth. The premises are to be tested at every point, factually as well as formally. The severe logic is to be checked and supplemented by supporting arguments and data whenever possible. Like Aristotle we may well view the enthymeme as a rhetorical syllogism or, conversely, think of the syllogism not as merely a logical device but rather as a rhetorical formula. Thus applied, it will furnish desirable judgments for probability and a useful tool for college debaters."

b. "Enthymeme. After Aristotle's use: an argument based on merely probable grounds, a rhetorical argument as distinguished from a demonstrative one."—Murray's New English Dictionary (Oxford, 1897)

## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- Columbia Associates in Philosophy. *An Introduction to Reflective Thinking*, pp. 97-117. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1923.
- CREIGHTON, J. E. *An Introductory Logic* (Fourth Edition), pp. 112-132. The Macmillan Company, 1920.
- DEWEY, JOHN. *How we Think*, pp. 145-156. D. C. Heath & Co., 1910.
- SCHILLER, F. C. S. *Logic for Use*, pp. 269-287. Harcourt, Brace and Company, 1930.
- SELLARS, R. W. *The Essentials of Logic* (Revised Edition), pp. 112-145. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1925.
- SIDGWICK, ALFRED. *The Application of Logic*, pp. 133-141. The Macmillan Company, 1910.

## CHAPTER VIII

### ARGUMENTATIVE TYPES: INDUCTION

I. INDUCTION. A DESCRIPTION OF THE GENERAL SYSTEM. II. PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF INDUCTION. III. ASSUMPTIONS OF INDUCTION. IV. CLASSIFICATION OF INDUCTIVE ARGUMENT. V. ARGUMENT FROM SPECIFIC INSTANCES (ARGUMENT BY GENERALIZATION). VI. ARGUMENT FROM AUTHORITY. VII. ARGUMENT FROM CAUSAL RELATION. VIII. ARGUMENT FROM ANALOGY

#### I. INDUCTION. A DESCRIPTION OF THE GENERAL SYSTEM

In inductive argument we proceed from a particular premise or statement to a general conclusion. We examine a number of concrete instances and then make a general statement which covers the field of these instances. Or we attempt to discover and express some general principle or law which arises from the concrete facts. This method is not so much that of leaping across a great chasm or gap, from the known to the unknown, as it is a method of discovering the general law or describing the general system in which the facts are placed.

But mere experience, mere enumeration, mere observation of the data resulting from analysis and experimentation is not enough. The mind must see as well as the eye. The underlying system of connections, in which each separate fact and datum lives and moves, must be brought to light. . . . When theorizing brings the system to light, the law is discovered.<sup>1</sup>

#### II. PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF INDUCTION

**A. Reasoning from the Facts of General Experience.** In practical experience we are constantly drawing such general conclusions from observation of particular truth or truths. We have driven

<sup>1</sup> D. S. Robinson, *The Principles of Reasoning*, pp. 21-212. D. Appleton and Company, New York, 1924.

Gyro automobiles for the past ten years. We conclude, "Gyro automobiles are dependable." Again we spent ten years in northern Maine and found the winters comparatively severe. We conclude, "Northern Maine winters are quite cold." Still again in our travels abroad we discover, or think we discover, in England a strong sentiment in favor of universal peace. In France, Germany, and Italy we meet leaders who express vigorous sentiment in favor of peace, and attend meetings of organizations that are supporting peace movements. We proceed to Egypt, India, and Japan and note similar movements and pacific activities. We return to America announcing, "The world today, despite the hostilities occasionally outcropping, is moving in the direction of universal peace."

The cases above illustrate the typical method of inductive reasoning. In the first case, we had satisfactory experience with four different automobiles manufactured by the Gyro Company and had reached a conclusion regarding thousands of machines turned out by this company over a period of years. In the second case, after ten years' experience we arrived at a conclusion which presumably would apply to thousands of years. We stated a general law which seemed to cover every Maine winter. In the same way observations in the United States, England, Germany, France, Italy, Egypt, India, and Japan—eight countries in all—led us to a conclusion which applied to all countries, including many that we had not observed. Thus do we arrive at general conclusions by an observation of concrete particulars or by describing a universal or *implicative* system into which the cases fit.

**B. Reasoning and Student Routine.** So do we arrive at many conclusions that govern our daily routine. Students report to the eight-o'clock class because they have found through previous experience that the instructor almost invariably appears at that time. Study is necessary in order to remain at the university. Does not the fact that the railway station is filled with trunks after each semester examination indicate that examinations must be passed? Again, one thousand students at our university



who have been examined show an intelligence rating of 125 in a mental test, a high average, let us say. We therefore conclude that the six thousand students in our university are all highly intelligent.

**C. Inductive Reasoning and Student Arguments.** In the same way we apply continually in student arguments the inductive process. Suppose the proposition is, *RESOLVED, That Congress should enact a law embodying the essential provisions of the Huber unemployment law*, which proposition provides that any employer employing six or more persons shall be required to contribute to an unemployment insurance fund, out of which fund the workers when laid off shall receive compensation. The advocates of the plan could show that the plan would lessen the turnover in industries, because in a number of cases cited such turnover had been lessened, as in Swift and Company, the Dennison Manufacturing Company, the United States Radiator Company, and the Procter and Gamble Company. Similarly various other conclusions, such as "There is great unemployment in America today," "This plan will lessen overproduction in industry," "This plan works well in England," and so on, all bearing on the general proposition, could be established by inductive methods. Practical debate uses continually this type of argument.

### III. ASSUMPTIONS OF INDUCTION

We should keep in mind that inductive reasoning always assumes that (1) what is found to be true of the instances given will always be true of other similar instances, (2) that nature is an ordered system or that the universe is a systematic and ordered whole, (3) that law operates in an absolute and unbroken reign.

What basis have we for assuming that there is uniformity of this kind in nature, that a given situation will yield definite consequences, and that for every set of circumstances there are antecedents which account for them? This question leads at once to one of the funda-

mental aspects of the universe in which we find ourselves. We discover, as we look about in nature, that events do not just happen without any relation to preceding or succeeding events, but that certain sequences in events take place over and over again. We see lightning, and we hear thunder. We are assured that every time we hear thunder, lightning has previously been observed. When we swat flies, they cease to buzz. No matter how many we swat, provided we swat vigorously and accurately enough, the same result will occur. These two examples are but typical of the myriads that occur in nature. Our life is one long course of discovery of these invariable sequences, these fixed patterns of events, that form so essential a part of our experience. They are, in fact, precisely that feature of our universe that makes it an ordered cosmos rather than a mere chaos, in which lightning might be followed now by thunder, now by cream cheese, and now by purple-bearded tigers. These patterns which force themselves upon our attention, and to the analysis of which the scientist devotes his life, are causal relations, uniform correlations between causes and effects, such that, unless some other cause has prevented it, when one part of the pattern is discovered the rest is sure to follow.

How do we know that these patterns exist in nature? Because we have discovered them in our experience, and have found that they repeat themselves again and again. Sometimes, to be sure, exceptions seem to occur, but we have hitherto been able to explain these exceptions as cases in which one pattern entered into and was altered by another pattern. Most bodies, we have found, fall to the earth; but balloons rise. This anomaly is explained by reference to the more general laws of mechanics, which furnish patterns into which we can satisfactorily fit bodies lighter than air. How do we know that these sequences will continue to repeat themselves in the future? Strictly speaking, of course, we don't; it is possible that to-morrow the trump of doom will sound, that the dead will rise, and that all things will be made new — with, it is to be supposed, quite new millennial patterns for events to follow. Yet no man can really believe that such an overthrow will take place; the uniformity of nature, the conviction that things will continue to occur in the same manner as they have hitherto, is undoubtedly the best-founded generalization in the whole range of human experience.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Columbia Associates in Philosophy, *An Introduction to Reflective Thinking* pp. 92-93. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1923.

#### IV. CLASSIFICATION OF INDUCTIVE ARGUMENT

Inductive argument is classified as (1) argument from specific instances, (2) argument from authority, (3) argument from causal relation, (4) argument from analogy.

#### V. ARGUMENT FROM SPECIFIC INSTANCES (ARGUMENT BY GENERALIZATION)

The argument from specific instances is that form of reasoning or inference in which a general conclusion is reached as a result of the examination of concrete instances. It is the most typical form of inductive reasoning, often called *argument from induction* or *argument by generalization*. The assertion is made that the American newspaper is to be condemned because it exaggerates, colors the news, paints a false picture of life. One by one the papers have been examined. In the eyes of the investigator they fail in the test. From the process of observation of the examples the general law or conclusion is stated concerning newspapers as a whole. This is the process of generalization.

**A. Tests of Argument from Specific Instances.** The following tests are applied in order to determine the validity of these generalizations: (1) Are the instances examined sufficient in number to warrant the generalization? (2) Is a negative instance discoverable? (3) Are the instances typical? (4) Are the facts upon which the generalization is based known to be true? (5) Is any causal connection established?

1. *The Test of Sufficient Instances.* The first test is whether sufficient instances have been enumerated. The problem of determining the number of specific instances that will warrant a general conclusion is no easy one. The number varies with the types of material under examination. To prove that all material bodies fall would need to be verified by examining only a few instances. On the contrary, to assert that every American college has a course in military training would call for an examination of as many cases as possible.

Suppose that you in your preparation for an argument find that during the past year the number of lynchings in Georgia has decreased, that a similar decrease has taken place in Mississippi and in Illinois. These facts would hardly justify you in asserting that lynchings have decreased in all the states of the Union during the past year, because such murders may have increased in other states. The conclusion would stand only if each state were examined. Three states would hardly be a sufficient number to cite, for it may be that coincidence had operated in this case. The conclusion, therefore, would have to be limited to the statement that in the three states mentioned lynchings declined for the year.

This loose method of arguing is continually used. We call it *hasty generalization*. Scientific handling of material will lead you to examine frankly your own conclusions and those of others to decide to what extent chance or guesswork is responsible.

2. *Test of Negative Instances.* The second test is that of considering negative instances, or exceptions. The method of formulating a generalization on the basis of a large number of positive instances, called the *enumerative* method, has so many weaknesses that some logicians condemn it altogether. Bacon called it "puerile, precarious, and exposed to danger from contradictory instances." Accordingly we ask, Are there any exceptions or negative instances? Our constant tendency is to generalize as a result of observing a few positive instances without taking pains to see the exceptions that are observable. A householder has difficulty with the family plumber, who belongs to a union and charges union wages. The householder's conclusion is that labor unions are unreasonable and unjustified. A physician evidently uses bad judgment in a certain case, and the patient dies. The bereaved ones conclude that doctors are stupid, unreliable quacks. The farmer denounces all book agents because one of them fleeced him. One dishonest lawyer, one drunken college student, one backsliding minister, will call forth a series of sweeping generalizations that condemn the entire group to which he belongs. In each of these cases a further examination would no doubt



bring to light many exceptions. And a single negative instance should go far to destroy the argument.

Apply this test to the following argument: All countries today are building navies, for the United States, France, Germany, Great Britain, Italy, and Japan are carrying out extensive naval programs. An examination of Switzerland, however, destroys the value of the argument and leads the speaker or writer to couch his conclusion in less sweeping terms.

3. *Test of Representative Instances.* A third test is that of whether the instances are typical. In considering a large group of cases you will take care to see that the examples selected fairly represent the whole. Fifty students are examined to determine the physical and mental fitness of a thousand students. These fifty samples must not be the exceptionally capable physically or mentally, nor yet the comparatively inefficient ones, but rather those selected from the rank and file. Seven newspapers are examined as illustrating the tendency of the press to feature crime and scandal. The city-manager plan in three cities is reviewed to prove the efficacy of this type of government. Four states are examined to demonstrate the lack of law enforcement in present-day America. In these cases typical newspapers, cities, and states must be selected.

It is difficult for some debaters to resist the temptation to select cases that are especially favorable — to magnify, for example, the single instance of some city that had good fortune with the manager system.

The test means that the cases cited should be without striking variation from the class as a whole. If we are generalizing about diamonds, or college students, or lions, or any other group of objects that may fall within a single class, we may safely do so after inspecting a few cases. All elephants have trunks, all diamonds are hard, all human beings reason, and so on. But not all colleges have debating teams, not all schoolhouses are red, not all senators have red hair. Great discoveries have resulted from an examination of not more than two or three instances.



4. *Test of Accuracy of the Instances.* A fourth test would examine the accuracy of the facts upon which the generalization is based. If the conclusion is drawn that lynching is on the decrease in the United States because during the past year only eighteen cases were reported in the various states, is it true that only eighteen were officially recorded? Sometimes a careful scrutiny of the facts will reveal details or major features of a situation that are inaccurately reported. Many generalizations are based upon newspaper reports which, however zealous the reporters may be to "get the facts," include at times erroneous information.

5. *Test of Causal Connection and of Scientific Analysis.* After the foregoing requirements are met, we still are confronted with the problem of the reasonableness of the conclusion. Mere enumeration, so important in compiling statistics, has its limitations, as illustrated by the fact that variety of cases, if they are typical, is often more important than numbers. The ultimate test of validity is the question: Having subjected the instances to scientific analysis, can you discover the underlying system which explains the relationships?

This system or general law may be more easily detected or tested if you apply the law of causation. Nature is consistent, or, as we say, ruled by the law of causation. Nothing happens by chance. Is there any causal connection between the instances and the conclusion? If we conclude that the four-quarter system in colleges is desirable, because the plan has worked satisfactorily in several instances, we are justified in inquiring whether it is reasonable to expect the plan to operate successfully.

Instances are cited to establish the conclusion that women use the ballot wisely, or that women succeed in professional and business life. A scientific explanation of causes would make the conclusion more reassuring. In a sense our analysis would become an attempt to place woman in the scheme of nature and explain her every action in the light of "fixed patterns in events."

**B. Generalization and Statistics.** Generalizations are often based upon statistical methods. The word *statistics* is derived

from *state* and indicates the methods used for collecting data and drawing inferences from them that will be of value in the conduct of the state; for example, we have statistics in regard to population, numbers of nationalities, immigration, births and deaths, disease, and so on. The word applies especially to complex data involving large masses of material the essential character and interpretation of which are ordinarily difficult to determine.

The statistical method is based upon the laws of probability: "While in a small number of cases there is irregularity in the observed ratio between the number of times a given event has happened and its failures, still in a large number of instances this ratio tends toward a constant limit."<sup>1</sup>

If, for example, you toss a penny, cast dice, or examine an individual in regard to his health or illness, the probable outcome is hard to predict. If, on the other hand, you tossed a penny a hundred thousand times, you could predict with almost mathematical certainty that in fifty thousand cases heads would appear and in the fifty thousand other cases tails would be uppermost. The probability increases with the number of cases observed. By this method of dealing with large numbers insurance companies are able to reckon results definitely, because the risk which is involved in dealing with an individual sinks to the minimum when applied to large classes of individuals.

Statistics, originally applied in the field of government, are extended into the field of business. Stock reports, information concerning different types of industries, and a thousand other compilations are applied to the advantage of those who possess this statistical knowledge. In the fields of education, psychology, physics, astronomy, and other departments of knowledge the statistical method has come to be widely applied. In fact, statistics are regarded as more or less synonymous with the scientific method.

The following steps characterize the statistical method:

1. *Classification.* The first step in handling statistics is to

<sup>1</sup> J. G. Hibben, "Probability," *Encyclopedia of Religion and Ethics*. Quoted by D. S. Robinson in *The Principles of Reasoning*, p. 235.

arrange a preliminary classification of the material. This classification will vary according to the purpose of the investigation. The same material may be classified in different ways. For example, if you propose an investigation to determine the scholastic standing of intercollegiate debaters in comparison with college students in general, you will need to have as one classification the individual debaters; another, the students in general; another, classification by college subjects; another, classification by college terms or semesters; another, classification by colleges and universities. Since it would be impracticable to gather statistics from every institution and every student since the beginning of intercollegiate debating in 1892, average grades in sample or representative situations would need to be used.

2. *Gathering Statistics.* The second step would be to gather the concrete data in regard to institutions and various types of students. All the grades from the different terms and semesters for the different students would be tabulated.

3. *Arrangement of Statistics.* The next step in the process would be to arrange the material in an orderly series, — a series for each student, — a series according to grades, according to studies, according to time, and according to colleges and universities selected.

4. *Correlation of Results.* The final step would be the correlation which would express the definite difference, expressed as a percentage, between the intercollegiate debaters and college students in general.

Let us consider another illustration of the statistical method. Suppose we are trying to discover what magazines are read by different classes of people in a city, as determined by the income of the readers. The first step would be the process of classification of readers, number of readers in general, classification by income, a classification of magazines, a classification of cities, and so on. Next the statistics would be gathered. Then the material would be ordered into various classes as suggested by the original analysis. Finally the relation of income to type of magazine read would be correlated.

5. *Testing the Statistical Method.* Tests of generalization become the tests of statistics: (1) The instances must be as numerous as possible. (2) The instances must moreover be typical or the sampling systematically done. (3) Exceptions must be carefully noted. (4) The data must be accurately reported. (5) In addition the units must be carefully defined. What is meant by a student, a university, a laborer? (6) The units to be compared must really be comparable. If we compare statistics of crime in New York with those of crime in Illinois, we must be sure that the two sets of figures mean the same thing. If we compare wages, we must know whether we are discussing money wages or real wages in each case. (7) The quantity measured by the statistics must be an index of that about which we want knowledge. We must decide whether numbers of battleships are a true index of the strength of a navy; whether the number of churchgoers is a true index of the power of the church; whether the death rates of cities are a fair index of the health of the country as a whole. He who uses such statistics must prove that a relationship does exist between the facts in the figures and the matter about which he draws conclusions.

## VI. ARGUMENT FROM AUTHORITY

**A. The Method in General.** Numerous arguments are based upon direct evidence from authority. The assertion is made that the press exerts a harmful influence on international affairs. Then the reason for the assertion is advanced: "Lord Bryce in his *Modern Democracies* says: 'Press power is more dangerous in the sphere of foreign than in that of domestic policy and is one of the chief hindrances to international good will.'" Here the induction is made that because one authority testifies about a certain fact, that testimony justifies the generalization. The inference is based upon the assumption that whatever the authority, in this case Lord Bryce, says about a specific matter is true. Expressed in complete form, this argument would read:

I. The press exerts a bad influence on international affairs, for

A. Lord Bryce so stated, and

B. Lord Bryce's statement is true.

**B. Tests of Argument from Authority.** The tests here are those discussed in connection with direct evidence: (1) Is the authority competent? (2) Is the authority prejudiced? (3) Is the authority reliable? (4) Is the authority definite? (5) Is the authority supported by other authorities? (6) Is the authority supported by argument from specific instances, causal relation, and analogy?

Granting that Bryce is competent, unprejudiced on this subject, well balanced, and that his testimony is corroborated by that of other authorities, we ask, *Why* should the power of the press be more dangerous in the sphere of foreign than in that of domestic policy? Is it that in the international realm papers are less well informed and so print items that misrepresent? Is it that papers fail to understand the mind of other peoples and so print statements calculated to inflame? Or, to put the same thing from the other angle, is it that other countries misinterpret news in the foreign press?

## VII. ARGUMENT FROM CAUSAL RELATION

A form of reasoning more explicit and fundamental than that of argument from specific instance or from authority is argument from causal relation. This type of argument attempts to establish or to imply relationship between two particulars. Argument from causal relation assumes that "nothing happens by chance," and that if certain conditions are known, certain results will undoubtedly follow. Nature acts consistently and uniformly. Every event in the universe results from another event or events. Without this cause it could not operate, and with it the result is inevitable. Day after day during the spring and summer it rains. The inference is that poor crops will follow. The government in war time appoints a food controller. The inference is that prices for food will not soar. A rich business man is murdered. The



probable motive is robbery. The Republican party is returned to power. Its friends predict prosperity. A large wheat crop is raised. The conclusion is that wheat prices will decline and hard times for the farmer will follow. A senator votes against a bill demanded by his constituents. The inference is that the senator will be defeated in the next election.

Although in argument from causality the conclusion is a particular one, the process as described is induction rather than deduction because in every case a generalization is implied. If the conclusion is drawn from a rainy spring that poor crops will follow, the conclusion is based on or implies generalization; namely, that whenever much rain falls in spring and summer, poor crops follow. Whenever rich merchants are murdered, the motive is robbery. Whenever the Republican party comes into power, prosperity follows.

The type of reasoning here involved is, first of all, the establishment of a generalization by the processes described early in this chapter. This generalization becomes the major premise of the syllogism which has for its conclusion the specific statement which we call the *effect*.

For convenience we describe causal relations as being made up of a single act or phenomenon acting upon another phenomenon. These instances we describe as occurring in simple chronological order, but the relationship is far more complicated. It is not so much the matter of one given event affecting another, nor yet a matter of temporal sequence; for we discover that action and reaction are reciprocal, equal, and opposite.

Moreover, causes are so numerous and effects are so numerous that it is impossible to describe these relations in terms of sharp separation between single cause and single effect. The diphtheria germ may cause death, but the group of circumstances operating in this case is too complicated for us to describe causes and results in such simple terms. We are really dealing with a system of events, and this system moves within a larger system, the whole making up a vast pattern. We single out one unit and

call it a *cause*; another, and call it an *effect*. We need to test carefully these relationships before drawing a hard and fast conclusion.

Argument from causality is usually classified as from cause to effect, from effect to cause, or from effect to effect.

**A. Argument from Cause to Effect.** Argument from cause to effect, *a priori* reasoning, draws a conclusion concerning the effects of an observed phenomenon. It shows that a known fact, event, or phenomenon is of such character as to produce another fact, event, or phenomenon.

For example, we argue that war, except in cases of invasion and internal rebellion, should be declared by a direct vote of the people, because that plan would remove the influence of private and corporate interests in the decision, and so promote peace. Or we argue that declaration of war by the people would jeopardize national safety, because such popular referendum would be too slow and cumbersome. We argue that a Federal amendment to the Constitution, prohibiting child labor in the United States, should be passed, because such a law would do away with migratory child labor and would remove the present burden on high-standard states — the burden of competition between manufacturers in a state that allows child labor and those industrialists in a state that forbids it. Or it could be argued that we should not pass such an amendment, because it would lead to Federal control of education, for every child-labor law regulates education.

In each case we point out a known situation or a group of antecedent circumstances which we argue are sufficient to bring about certain alleged results, the consequents. The known cause, in the first example above, is a popular referendum concerning a declaration of war. The probable effect is (1) the promotion of peace or (2) the jeopardizing of national safety. Various other effects, pro and con, would be cited by those in a debate on this proposition. In the second argument illustrated above, the known or assumed cause is the passage of the Federal child-labor amendment. What are the effects? The affirmative tries to show several

benefits; the negative traces from this cause a list of unfortunate results, one of them Federal control of education.

Each of these cases is an argument from the future to a more remote future; but we may in the same way argue from the present to the future, from the past to the present, or from a more remote to a less remote past.

To test the reasoning from cause to effect we ask:

1. *Can a causal relation be established?* Can it logically be shown that any connection exists between a Federal child-labor amendment and Federal control of education? The Volstead Act operated from 1920 to 1934. Divorces per capita increased in the United States during that time. Could any causal relation between these two facts be established? On the other hand, bank accounts increased during that time and more telephones were in use. Those who tried to prove desirable results of this Federal law sometimes argued that prohibition favorably affected bank accounts and even increased the number of telephones used. Granted that the cause is operating, a second test is necessary.

2. *Is the cause adequate to produce the alleged effect?* Often a given phenomenon may operate but without sufficient force, to use the analogy of physics, to become a controlling cause. Wet feet, although hardly a determining factor, might be one of twenty elements in the development of small pox. The assassination of a prince might start an international war; but a true analysis of the causes of the conflict would make clear that this one act, without the parallel action of a great variety of other forces — militarism, land hunger, racial pride, economic depression, fear of other nations, and so on — would not generate a world war.

3. *Are other causes operating to prevent the known cause from producing the alleged effect?* Again our problem is that of separating one cause from many and eliminating all others as possible factors in preventing the free operation of the known antecedent circumstances. Let us assume for the sake of argument that prohibition, if allowed to proceed unhindered, would result in greater

bank accounts. But what of unemployment, bootleg whisky, war, pestilence, desire for automobiles, and what not, as possible agencies that might interpose themselves to prevent the money, saved through prohibition, from finding its way into the savings account? The general prosperity or easy interest rates or expanding consumption may each argue for a rise in stocks. A causal connection between these factors and a rising market has been established beyond question. Yet the factors at work for and against a rising market are so complicated that an exceedingly hard problem confronts us, namely, of trying to explain whether or not the assigned cause or causes will operate.

4. *Have the alleged facts been verified?* As in all tests of generalization, we must be certain that the facts are accurate.

**B. Argument from Effect to Cause.** The argument from effect to cause reasons from an observed result to the possible or probable causes. Causation, as was stated above, is a problem in interaction. Whether we are proceeding from cause to effect or from effect to cause is merely a question of our point of view. To reason from effect to cause is to attempt to explain the forces responsible for certain known or assumed circumstances. We view the situation from the angle of consequents rather than that of causes, and the process we call a *posteriori* reasoning; that is, reasoning *from that which comes after*. We observe the ancient civilizations of Egypt and Babylonia (effect) and conclude that the fertility of the Nile and the Euphrates (alleged cause) is responsible. Extensive poverty in the city of New York (effect) is due, so we argue, to physical and social environment (alleged cause). The earnings of industries engaged in the manufacture of copper and steel products showed enormous increase in profits between 1914 and 1919 (the known effects). The earnings of the Anaconda Copper Company, for example, during 1914, were \$4,500,000; by 1919 it had paid a debt of \$15,000,000 and had a surplus of \$40,000,000. Similar figures apply to other companies. The explanation of this remarkable prosperity was undoubtedly the war (alleged cause).



The tests here are similar to those of reasoning from cause to effect :

1. *The causal connection must be clearly established.* If the cold summer is attributed to the activity of sun spots, some scientific relationship must be shown between the two phenomena.

2. *The alleged cause must be adequate to produce the known result.* If physical environment is held as the chief explanation of the known result (poverty), what shall we say of degeneracy, disease, intemperance, desertion, old age, indolence, and other factors?

3. *No other cause must have intervened to neutralize the effect of the alleged cause.* General depression sweeps over the country. The situation, it is alleged, is due to the general reduction of the tariff. But this circumstance, it might be argued, would be largely canceled by the lower cost of living, by an increase of production, and a consequent increase in trade. Other causes would be posited in explanation of the known panic in industry, and so the debate would become an attempt to measure the relative power of alleged conflicting causes.

4. *The facts involved must be ascertained as true.* It must be shown that depression actually *exists*, that the cost of living *is* lower, and that the volume of trade *is* larger. In the same way it must be proved that the summer is unseasonably cold and that the sun spots are unusually active.

**C. Argument from Effect to Effect.** Texts on argumentation and debate usually include a third type of causal reasoning, argument from effect to effect. This type argues from one effect to another effect of the same cause. Such reasoning is a combination of argument from effect to cause and from cause to effect. It has been argued that the northern lights (or aurora borealis) are active and therefore that the summer will be unseasonably cool and damp. The complete argument assumes the aurora borealis as an effect of the activity of sun spots (alleged cause). The cause thus assumed is found to have another effect — cool, damp summers. The presence of one of these phenomena, therefore, is presumably attended by the other. It is argued that since *What*



*Every Woman Knows* is an excellent play, *Quality Street* is also a drama of high rank. The excellence of *What Every Woman Knows*, it is reasoned, is caused by Barrie's dramatic genius. From this same cause is logically inferred the superiority of the other Barrie play. Consider another example involving a more subtle reasoning. "We are having extremely cold winters," observes one. "We shall have serious floods." The effect (extremely cold winters) is, according to this argument, due to the rapid destruction of forests. This same cause (that is, deforestation) will lead to heavy floods. The reasoning may be illustrated by reducing the argument to syllogisms :

#### EFFECT TO CAUSE

- I. Whenever the winters are extremely cold is a time when forests have been destroyed.
- II. This is a time when the winters are extremely cold.
- III. This is a time when the forests have been destroyed.

#### CAUSE TO EFFECT

- I. Whenever the forests have been destroyed is a time when serious floods will occur.
- II. This is a time when the forests have been destroyed.
- III. This is a time when serious floods will occur.

To test the validity of this argument, first reduce the example to two syllogisms, or separate it into its two parts, from effect to cause and from cause to effect. Then apply to each section the tests already outlined in connection with each type of causal reasoning.

#### VIII. ARGUMENT FROM ANALOGY

The fourth important division of argument from induction is *argument from analogy*. This type of reasoning assumes that if two things are alike in certain respects, they are probably alike in other respects. A certain proposition, true of a known case, is also affirmed to be true of an unknown case. Analogy is argument

from resemblance, or comparison. The conclusion is a specific one. For example, "Sacramento University has an excellent football team; it is therefore probable that San Joaquin University also has a first-rate football team." The comparison is between two universities, about each of which much is known. We know that Sacramento possesses a winning football team. We know nothing of the athletic teams at the other school. We do know, however, that San Joaquin has a student population as large as Sacramento's and that the two institutions are similar in such other respects as endowment, location, and educational point of view. We therefore conclude that San Joaquin's teams are of similar rank. Expressed syllogistically the argument is as follows:

- I. Whatever school is similar to Sacramento University in numbers, location, endowment, and educational outlook possesses an excellent football team.
- II. San Joaquin University is similar to Sacramento University in numbers, location, endowment, and educational outlook.
- III. San Joaquin University possesses an excellent football team.

**A. Figurative and Literal Analogy.** Analogy is of two kinds, figurative and literal. *Literal analogy* is that type of comparison based upon a similarity of objects in the same field or class; *figurative analogy* is a comparison between relationships of objects in different fields or classes. The example given above is a literal analogy because the two universities belong to the same class. So would we draw analogies between types of students, between professors, between cities, between countries, between public utilities, or between types of government. As long as none but things within the same field are involved, the argument is one of direct or literal comparison.

Compare such examples with one of *figurative analogy*. "The present system of declaring war by vote of Congress is sound and strong, like a trestle over which twenty trains have passed." Here the method of declaring war by Congress is compared to the passage of trains over a trestle. Congress is the trestle; the rum-

bling trains are the Declarations of war by Congress. We know — or assume — that the trestle has withstood the strain; so do we conclude that Congress — and America — will continue to stand the test of this method of deciding whether we should declare war. Here the comparison is that of a “resemblance of relations.”

**B. Tests of Analogical Reasoning.** Analogy is exceedingly helpful as illustration or explanation. Its use in argumentation has often been deplored. It is nevertheless a type of reasoning to which debaters and scientists alike continually resort. Consider these specific tests for the validity of this type of reasoning:

1. *The Test of Essential Likenesses.* The two objects must be alike in those particulars which affect the conclusion. This means (1) a careful observation and listing of all points of similarity between the two objects or relations under consideration; (2) the listing of facts known about one object and not about the other; (3) the selection, from what is known of one and unknown of the other, of those features likely to be true of both.

The process of comparison is usually not so detailed, but the complete study of the analogy calls for similar systematic scrutiny of the particulars which bear upon the conclusion. “You cannot break up the trusts any more than you can un-scramble eggs” asserted a familiar analogy of a number of years ago. If, the comparison infers, scrambled eggs and consolidated industries have in common a certain cohesion which defies separation, widely different though these objects are, they must closely resemble each other in that particular which affects the conclusion. The problem is not one of enumeration but of selection. And the process of the selection depends upon our judgment in deciding what is an *essential* particular. Any likeness is essential when it is important to prove the case at hand and is to be discussed when its relevancy is clear.

What would be an essential difference between Iowa and Massachusetts concerning the prospects of agriculture would be of minor significance in a comparison of educational standards of these states. A student debater argued that the United States

should enact a law similar to the British Trade Disputes Act of 1906, because that law had worked well in England and therefore would work well here. The essential industrial conditions in each country, it was held, were the same. The negative, however, pointed out that such legislation presupposed highly developed unionism and that that situation would not hold in the United States; for whereas less than 10 per cent of the English workers are engaged in agriculture and more than 60 per cent of all workers are in trade unions, the large proportion of our workers is unorganized and belongs to the agricultural, professional, and business groups. The points of difference in those items bearing on the conclusion outweigh the points of likeness, and — according to the negative — the analogy did not hold.

2. *The Test of Similar Instances.* A second test that may be applied to argument from analogy is the test of similar instances and of negative instances. If the proposal is made to adopt in America the British Trade Disputes Act, it is logical to inquire whether other countries have adopted it. If it can be shown that France or Canada or Australia has had success with similar legislation, then the analogy is more likely to be justified. On the other hand, if a failure of the law can be cited in any country, the analogy is to that extent weakened.

3. *The Test of Causal Connection.* A third test applied to argument from analogy is the test of *causality*. According to this test a definite causal relation must exist between the terms employed in the argument. The general principle or law must be stated and tested, or a series of syllogisms must be constructed to show the causal relation between the terms. For example, it is argued that in 1953 the United States will have a period of economic depression, for this country had periods of business depression in 1873, 1893, 1913, and 1933. We state the general principle as follows:

- I. Great periods of economic depression occur in the United States at intervals of twenty years.
- II. The year 1953 is the end of a twenty-year period.
- III. Economic depression will occur in 1953.

But the validity of the major premise may be attacked by showing that no marked financial panics occurred in 1833, 1853, or 1913. The general law, therefore, does not provide a causal connection between a period of economic depression and the year 1953. Moreover, it is difficult to construct a series of syllogisms — or chain of reasoning — which would show that the panic of 1893 occurred because that date was twenty years after 1873. It is hard to show that the twenty-year periods, 1853, 1873, 1893, 1913, 1933, are causally connected with the appearance of periods of economic depression. If there is any connection between the facts, it may be set down as coincidence or chance rather than causality. Valid argument by analogy must be based upon some factors more substantial than chance.

4. *The Test of Accuracy of Evidence.* A fourth test of analogical reasoning has to do with the question concerning the accuracy of the facts upon which the analogy is based. The facts alleged to be true in regard to the factors under comparison must be verified. If it is asserted that unemployment insurance should be applied in the United States because that principle has been used with success in England, we should make sure that the law has worked well in that country. In one debate a speaker urged the adoption of a state income-tax law in Nebraska because of the success of that law in Iowa. The next speaker, however, made clear that Iowa possessed no such law. The analogy failed because one of the factors was untrue.

No safeguard against false analogy is more necessary than a thorough knowledge of the facts underlying the analogy. The drift of the discussion is almost invariably in favor of the one who has the most complete and accurate information of the subject matter. A temptation to yield to coloring of facts or suppression of unfavorable elements should be resisted. The alleged facts must be fairly and accurately stated. Genuine discussion is to be carried out in such scientific spirit.



EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

①. Hand to the instructor one sound example of each of the following : (1) argument from specific instance ; (2) argument based upon the use of statistics ; (3) argument from authority ; (4) argument from cause to effect ; (5) argument from effect to cause ; (6) argument from literal analogy ; (7) argument from figurative analogy.

②. Hand to the instructor an example of unsound argument illustrating each of the following : (1) argument from specific instance ; (2) argument from cause to effect or from effect to cause ; (3) argument from analogy. Indicate the source of your example.

③. In each of the following cases explain the kind of argument and determine the validity of the reasoning by applying each of the tests listed in this chapter :

a. A humble beginning means great success in life. Jacob Gould Schurman, former president of Cornell University, worked during his boyhood in a grocery store on Prince Edward Island, for sixty dollars a year.

b. Do you admire O'Neill's *Hairy Ape*? Then you should see his later play, *The Great God Brown*.

c. The Supreme Court of the United States is uniformly progressive in its decisions. During the twenty-five years from 1887 to 1912 the Supreme Court examined five hundred and sixty cases which involved a state law concerned with social justice, and the court declared only three of these cases unconstitutional. The best proof of this court's success in dealing with new and advancing social conditions is its decisions.

d. You are sure to have bad luck, for you bought that auto on Friday, June the thirteenth.

e. Dr. Bunnion's Golden Remedy is a sure cure for coughs and colds, as the following statement will show :

Chicago, September 1. Gentlemen : Last spring I was greatly troubled with pains and a disagreeable cough. After taking two bottles of your wonderful remedy, I was completely restored, and have increased in weight ten pounds.

f. There are more students in Black College, which has no fraternities, than in White College, which maintains six Greek-letter societies. Such secret organizations thus affect the enrollment of students.

g. We read that of all occupations farm life is the most hazardous ; in support of this assertion German statistics are cited to show that

45 per cent of all accidents in industry occur among agriculturists, whereas mining, the steel and iron industry, and the building trades each contribute only 9 per cent. There is irresistible fascination in the idea that the man who feeds pigs at night is engaged in a business five times as hazardous as that of the man who bestrides a steel girder forty-five stories in the air.

*h.* It is neither desirable nor necessary to go into a detailed account of English misrule in Ireland. No more definite indictment against British misrule could be secured than the emigration figures. Ireland, under British misrule, decreased its population one half in the last seventy years, while Poland under Russian rule increased its population fourfold in the same length of time. Moreover, Ireland is the only country in Europe whose population has decreased and is rapidly decreasing. Clearly, English rule didn't succeed in making Ireland an interesting, profitable, or desirable place for the Irish to live in.

*i.* The granting of complete independence to Ireland would be a signal for the breaking up of the British Empire, and we need only look back over history to know the benefits of this empire. It has given the Western civilization its impetus in liberal ideas of government. Our entire legal system, our common law, our jury system, our writ of habeas corpus, are all products of this civilization.

*j.* Let us consider another labor problem. According to the latest issue of the *World Almanac*, in a single period of eight years twenty thousand men were killed while mining coal. This unnecessary sacrifice of human life is brought about simply because the private operators in their greed for profit fail to install the proper safety devices. What measures have been installed have been enforced by the states. Down through the years it has been the state's hardest fight to enforce sanitary and safety measures and to prevent child labor in the mining districts. Under government ownership the mines would not be operated for profit, and the government would spare no expense in the installation of safety measures for the protection of the miners.

*k.* Judge Elbert Henry Gary, at the thirty-first general meeting of the American Iron and Steel Institute in Manhattan, said :

Opportunities in this country are better than ever before — every man must admit this. Never before in my affiliation with the steel industry has there been a time when governmental administration was honestly, sincerely and actually so much interested in the prosperity of the people of the country.

*June*  
 l. Think of it, gentlemen, here we are representing the greatest government on earth, with the greatest natural monopoly on earth, and then say, "We have no machinery of adequate defense." If you will pass this bill and take three million bales of cotton out of the channels of trade, you will see whether or not we have sufficient machinery for adequate defense.

My colleague in a speech on this floor a few days ago stated that we paid to the Chilean government in 1925 the sum of \$135,065,000 as a bounty on nitrates alone, and I am advised by the Department of Commerce that we paid in excess of a fair price on rubber and coffee \$494,688,000 in 1924, and the estimate for this year, 1926, is that we will pay approximately \$1,000,000,000 on these two commodities, each of which enters into practically every home in the United States, and every family, therefore, is called upon to contribute to this enormous bounty. Yet we are told that "we have no machinery of adequate defense."

Gentlemen, the situation reminds me of a 300-pound father standing more than 6 feet in his shoes with a half dozen or more of his own children nestling at his feet. As he stands empty-handed and looks down on them, he sees the pygmy children of his alien neighbors walk up and take the bread from the hands of his helpless offspring; he watches as they remove the shoes from their feet and clothes from their backs, leaving them cold, hungry, and naked; and while his own flesh and blood are writhing in pain and begging their giant father for bread, he is untouched and unmoved by their cries of misery further than to say, "I am sorry for you; these pygmies should not be so cruel and treat you so harshly." What would you think of a father like that?

*Bill*  
 m. The persistent use of these alcoholic beverages will so lower the vitality of the body that it becomes an easy mark for all forms of microbic diseases. This type of patient stands a very limited chance for recovery from "flu," pneumonia, typhoid fever, and so forth, as evidenced by the heavy toll levied on our apparently healthy young men in the scourge of influenza during the fall and winter of 1918-1919. Physicians in every part of the United States were forced to admit that a large per cent of the young, robust soldiers and home boys who had been regular imbibers, not drunkards, of alcoholic beverages fell an easy victim to these diseases. The registrar of vital statistics of Kansas for the year 1913 gives the accompanying table showing the comparative death rate per 100,000.

	KANSAS	UNITED STATES
Tuberculosis . . . . .	64.6	149.5
Diabetes . . . . .	12.9	15.0
Pneumonia . . . . .	85.5	132.2
Bright's disease . . . . .	64.5	95.5
Suicides . . . . .	10.9	16.0
Homicides . . . . .	4.0	6.5

The comparatively low figures for Kansas are due to the presence of prohibition in that state and the absence of it over the country as a whole in that year (1913). On the basis of such testimony alcoholic beverages should be forever barred from every state!

*g/n.* Let me illustrate the idiocy of the argument of the proponents of the World Court. Leprosy has existed throughout the ages. It is the "white curse" of the Orient. Our policy has been to guard ourselves against its contamination by keeping away from leprosy-infected districts and colonies, and by guarding our gates against the entrance of its victims. Nevertheless, occasionally an individual in the United States is afflicted with the disease. Our policy, therefore, has not been entirely successful.

Suppose now some imbecile were to declare that the way to exterminate leprosy is to turn the lepers loose on the community and let everybody visit the leper colonies and purify the lepers by fondling their diseased flesh, and we were to reply that we declined the experiment. Would it lie in the mouths of the proponents of the new doctrine, therefore, to declare that we were in favor of leprosy and that we must accept their imbecilic proposition unless we could invent a nostrum absolutely guaranteed to exterminate the dread disease? We would answer that, although the present methods have not entirely wiped out the curse of leprosy, the proposed remedy would contaminate the world; that our people would lie along the highways rotting with the awful disease. We would say that, although we could not produce a perfect remedy, we nevertheless declined to abandon a method which had confined the disease and lessened its ravages for the foolish and deadly scheme proposed. War is an evil. It has cursed the world through the centuries, but it is brought about by the voluntary actions of nations. Europe and Asia have been its two hotbeds. It is proposed to get us into the World Court and by engulfing us in every European war to lessen war!



*win*  
o. When I observe from a report of the Bureau of the Census that 27 per cent of the farms in the ten leading cotton-growing states are under mortgage, I am confirmed in the belief that very little prosperity prevails in the cotton belt. And when I take the same report and find that 46.5 per cent of the farms of Kansas, 46.2 per cent of those in Missouri, 54.2 per cent of the farms of Iowa, 52.4 per cent of the farms of Minnesota, 59.1 per cent of those in Wisconsin, 71 per cent of the farms in North Dakota, 57 per cent of those in South Dakota, 37.5 per cent of those in Indiana are mortgaged, I am forced to the conclusion that there is really no prosperity in those states engaged primarily in agriculture, but they are, on the contrary, in a helpless and almost hopeless condition unless they receive substantial aid some way or other.

p. First of all, regarding the racial homogeneity of the Filipino people: They are not divided into tribes as this term is generally understood. The names given to the so-called tribes are really indicative of geographical regions and not of differences in habits of thought or racial origin. They are a homogeneous race. Although, during the last three hundred years, there has been a racial blending as the natural consequence of their social and political intercourse with the peoples of both hemispheres, yet, according to the latest census of the population of the islands, taken in 1918, out of a total population of 10,314,310, 9,936,577, or 96 per cent, belonged to the brown, or Malay, race. In this connection I wish to call the attention of the House to the statement of Mr. W. Cameron Forbes, ex-governor general of the Philippine Islands, published in the *Boston Evening Transcript* on March 13, 1926, in which he said: "It is pleasant to find something in which we can agree with Mr. Storey. He is perfectly right in his objection to the use of the word 'tribesmen' in describing the Philippine people. The great mass of the peoples have not those characteristics which we associate with the word 'tribes.'"

q. Ages ago there was a keeper of flocks who was called to lead a vast company out of bondage. This plain man was Moses. He hesitated to accept the great commission that was his, for he had not the gift of speech that was his brother Aaron's. Nor had he armies nor chariots of war. But in the end he won. How? You will recall that when this keeper of flocks held in his hand a shepherd's crook it was asked of him, "What is that in thine hand?" Answering in humility, but following in confidence the instructions given him, Moses saw the crooked stick become a mighty instrument for freedom.



So it is today with the farmer. There is given him to hold in his hand, not a shepherd's staff, but an instrument of far greater strength — the ballot. Rightly used, used in primaries and general elections, this ballot will insure the triumph of right and justice. But it must be used in time, for annually, with fewer people on farms and in the smaller towns and cities and with privilege becoming more powerful, the fight is ever more unequal.

1. While I am on that subject it is said, "Oh, the court is a cooling-off place." How often have we heard that miserable, silly twaddle about a cooling-off place. These gentlemen talk as though nations went to war like two men with their fists. When somebody calls a man a vile name, he hits him before he has time to think. Not a single war of history ever began that way. Nations go to war over great questions that they have thought of for years. There may be a spark that lights the powder magazine; the spark may be small, but they have been gathering that powder for years and for a purpose. Let us take the last war. Does anyone suppose anybody acted there without knowing what he was doing? About a hundred years ago the Elector of Brandenburg began forming the nucleus of the Prussian army. He starved himself and his family and dressed like a peasant in order that he might gather silver through means of taxes wrung from the people. Having no place else to store it, he made solid silver balustrades for his palaces. All the people wondered at him, wearing wooden shoes and peasant's clothes, and placing silver balustrades in the palaces; but when his son, afterwards Frederick the Great, was called to the bedside of the father just before he expired, he whispered in his ear: "My son, you will go to war with Austria. Then you will melt the silver balustrades into dollars." They had been accumulated through the years. The army had been building, built to carry out a policy of enlargement.

Out of that policy, operated by the Elector of Brandenburg more than a hundred years ago, grew Prussia, and from Prussia sprang the great German Empire. The German Empire pursued those policies. She drilled her men; she opened her schools to study every art of war. Chemists were busy night and day devising instruments of destruction, and so evolved the Great War!

2. My opinion is that so much depends upon the use of coal that coal should be treated from a public point of view just as public utilities are treated; and if it is possible within the law to do so, I

would treat it as a public utility. As the gentleman from Massachusetts suggests, it is a public necessity. On this point I will quote from the splendid report of the United States Coal Commission (Vol. I, p. 1): "Coal is quite as much a public necessity as gas, street-railway service, or any other service or commodity that has been brought under public regulation." And, again, the commission hold "the view that a limited natural monopoly like anthracite, held by a relatively small number of individuals, estates, and companies and supplying a necessity of life for millions of our people cannot continue to be treated as if it were not affected by a public interest."

*t.* In Holland huge dikes are built around the shore line to keep back the sea. Vast areas of that little but brave country are below sea level, and upon these drained lands they have built their national glory. Happy homes are there and prosperity abounds. The streets are full of little children at play and the fields are crowded with the prosperity of harvests. Life is safe so long as the dikes stand — these silent sentinels which they have built to keep back the tides of the sea. But let those dikes break or be punctured and the people will be swept out to sea and to oblivion. So is the Sabbath day. As long as it is observed, happiness and prosperity will abide among us; but when once that wall of defense is punctured or broken through neglect, life itself shall be swept from its moorings. It is our last line of defense. In the maintenance of it rests our safety. God forbid that we should do anything to tear down that institution in which lies the hope of human happiness; restoring strength to the body, fellowship to the family life, keeping our pathway to the eternal stars.

## REFERENCES

- Columbia Associates in Philosophy. *An Introduction to Reflective Thinking*, pp. 63-96. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1923.
- DEWEY, JOHN. *How We Think*, pp. 79-100. D. C. Heath & Co., 1910.
- HIBBEN, J. G. *Logic; Deductive and Inductive* (Third Edition), pp. 169-175. Charles Scribner's Sons, 1923.
- ROBINSON, D. S. *The Principles of Reasoning*, pp. 107-118. D. Appleton and Company, 1924.
- SELLARS, R. W. *The Essentials of Logic* (Revised Edition), pp. 164-178, 239-255. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1925.

## CHAPTER IX

### FALLACIES

I. IMPORTANCE OF DETECTING FALLACIES. II. DEFINITION OF FALLACIES. III. CLASSIFICATION OF FALLACIES. IV. THE FALLACY OF EQUIVOCATION. V. THE FALLACY OF AMBIGUOUS CONSTRUCTION. VI. FALLACIES OF THE SYLLOGISM. VII. FALLACIES OF THE ARGUMENT FROM SPECIFIC INSTANCES. VIII. FALLACIES OF ARGUMENT FROM CAUSAL RELATION. IX. FALLACIES OF ANALOGY. X. THE FALLACY OF BEGGING THE QUESTION. XI. THE FALLACY OF IGNORING THE QUESTION

#### I. IMPORTANCE OF DETECTING FALLACIES

It is hard to overestimate the importance of recognizing fallacies and of knowing the methods to be used in exposing them. To master the art of discussion and debate, you must be able to apply, both to your own arguments and to those of others, tests that will show the strength and the weakness of the reasoning.

#### II. DEFINITION OF FALLACIES

A fallacy is an error in reasoning, an inconsistency in the argument, a false belief whether due to sound reasoning from unsound premises or to unsound reasoning from sound premises, or "any mental confusion whatever." A thoughtful examination of many a specious argument will reveal subtle and elusive fallacies upon which the entire logical framework rests. The most skillful debaters, unless constantly on their guard, will commit these blunders in reasoning. Lincoln clearly established his supremacy in the debates with Douglas by pointing out the flaws in such arguments as "This government was made upon the basis of the sovereignty of the state, and right of each state to regulate its own domestic institutions to suit itself" and "Slaves are subject to the local law of the territory just like any other property."

## III. CLASSIFICATION OF FALLACIES

Any complete classification of fallacies is probably impossible, for the errors of the mind are so numerous and at times so indistinct as to leave us almost entirely in the dark as to how the illogical reasoning actually occurs. The logician De Morgan concludes, "There is no such thing as a classification of the ways in which men may arrive at error; it is much to be doubted whether there ever can be."<sup>1</sup> For practical purposes of argument the following admittedly incomplete classification is offered:

Equivocation

Ambiguous Construction

The Syllogism

A. The categorical syllogism

1. Four terms (ambiguous middle)

2. Two terms (ambiguous middle)

3. Undistributed middle

4. Illicit major

5. Illicit minor

6. Negative premises

7. Hasty generalization, or false causation in the premises

B. The disjunctive syllogism

1. Alternatives not exhaustive

2. Alternatives not mutually exclusive

C. The hypothetical syllogism

1. Denying the antecedent

2. Affirming the consequent

Argument from Specific Instances (Generalization) ✓

A. Insufficient number of instances

B. Negative instances

C. Instances not typical

D. Inaccuracy in facts

E. Faulty causal connection

F. Fallacies of statistics

<sup>1</sup> A. de Morgan, *Formal Logic*, p. 237. Taylor and Walton, 1847.

## Causal Relation

- A. Assumed connection between phenomena
- B. Assumed connection between phenomenon and antecedent
- C. Inadequate cause
- D. Counteracting cause
- E. Inaccuracy of facts

## Analogy, Figurative and Literal

- A. Points of difference outweighing points of likeness
- B. Negative instances
- C. Inaccuracy of facts
- D. Lack of causal connection

## Begging the Question

- A. Arguing in a circle
- B. Assuming a more general truth which involves the point at issue
- C. Fallacious question

## Ignoring the Question

- A. Appeal to passion, prejudice, humor
- B. Discussion of personalities
- C. Shifting ground
- D. Refuting an argument not advanced
- E. Appeal to tradition, custom
- F. Appeal to authority
- G. Appeal to ignorance
- H. Fallacy of false synthesis
- I. Fallacy of division
- J. Fallacy of exceptional instances

## IV. THE FALLACY OF EQUIVOCATION

This fallacy arises from the false assumption that what is true of a term used in one sense is true of the same term used in another sense. Equivocation is often used as identical with *ambiguous construction*, discussed below; but the latter fallacy is reserved for those cases growing out of syntax or grammar, whereas *equivocation* is restricted to the wrong interpretation of a term. To illustrate: "A democrat is a person who hates kings and believes in the rule of the people; therefore vote for Jones, a good Democrat." A "democrat" is obviously used in a different



sense from a "Democrat." Again, "He who harms another should be punished. He who transmits diphtheria to another harms him. Therefore he who communicates diphtheria should be punished." The legal and philosophical question arises, What is meant by "harm"? Although the fault of misinterpretation, willfully or unknowingly, is not as common in college or school debating as many other fallacies, equivocation is sufficiently common to puzzle momentarily expert judges and other critics. Whatever causes this mental confusion or leads to conclusions that later need to be corrected is an error in reasoning.

To avoid these fallacies you should examine every term that is used more than once in an argument, to discover whether it is used in different senses.

#### V. THE FALLACY OF AMBIGUOUS CONSTRUCTION

This fallacy arises when a statement is phrased so that its meaning is doubtful. The trouble may grow out of a faulty grammatical construction. For example: "After defaulting payment on the bonds, the investors applied court action to the Consolidated Iron Corporation." Here the fault is obviously one of a gerund phrase, "after defaulting," separated from the term it logically modifies, "Consolidated Iron Corporation." "Buy a fireless cooker, for the food in it retains its heat for a long time, for there is no way for it to escape." Here the trouble is ambiguous reference. Does the "food" or the "heat" escape? A similar fault is illustrated in the following assertion: "Automobiles are fast becoming an agent for the closer coöperation of all people. They are scattered in every country." "When doing the same work, the salaries should be identical for both men and women teachers." "Summing up the various cities, Chicago leads them all." Does Chicago do the "summing up"? The faults here illustrated are familiar violations of syntax and grammar. Since, however, these bad constructions may confuse the thinking of those who read or listen, such violations are to be treated as fallacies.

## VI. FALLACIES OF THE SYLLOGISM

**A. The Categorical Syllogism.** The fallacies of the syllogism have already been presented in the chapter on deductive reasoning. Violations of the rules for the correct formulation of the categorical syllogism give the following fallacies, illustrated in each case:

1. *Four Terms (Ambiguous Middle)*

- I. All who believe in popular rule are progressive.
- II. Congressman Jones believes in popular rule.
- III. Congressman Jones is a Progressive.

Here the four terms are (1) people who are progressive; (2) Progressives; (3) all who believe in popular rule; (4) Congressman Jones. This error is in reality parallel to the example cited under equivocation. Many fallacies illustrated in this chapter may be listed under more than one heading.

2. *Two Terms (Ambiguous Middle)*

- I. All beings with intelligence and prudence are wise.
- II. Congressman Jones is a being with intelligence and prudence.
- III. Congressman Jones is wise.

In this example the terms "beings with intelligence and prudence" and "beings who are wise" are so nearly synonymous as to coincide. Thus they represent one term with "Congressman Jones" as the other.

3. *Undistributed Middle*

- I. Some large industries have the shop-committee system.
- II. The Sioux Canning Company is a large industry.
- III. The Sioux Canning Company has the shop-committee system.

In this example "Some large industries" is undistributed.

4. *Illicit Major*

- I. Americans are heroes.
- II. Frenchmen are not Americans.
- III. Frenchmen are not heroes.

The major term "heroes" is here used in the premise to denote *some* heroes. In the conclusion "heroes" is used universally to cover all the heroes in the world.

#### 5. *Illicit Minor*

- I. All who are college students are at least sixteen years of age.
- II. Those students enrolled at White University are college students.
- III. Those students who are enrolled in the universities are at least sixteen years of age.

Here the minor term "Those students enrolled at White University," *not* distributed in the minor premise, is distributed or given a wide application in the conclusion.

#### 6. *Negative Premises*

- I. Whoever is a Republican is not a supporter of free trade.
- II. Mr. Silas Hopkins is not a supporter of free trade.
- III. Mr. Silas Hopkins is a Republican.

Here the major premise states that the middle term is outside the field of the major term; and the minor premise tells us that "Mr. Hopkins" is outside the class of the major term, "supporters of free trade." Mr. Hopkins may or may not be in the class of the middle term, "Republicans." From two negative premises, then, we get no valid conclusion.

7. *Hasty Generalization or False Causation in the Premises.* In the example quoted above, the truth of the major premise is certainly open to question; that of the minor premise may also be questioned.

**B. The Disjunctive Syllogism.** The following examples are characteristic of the fallacies of the disjunctive syllogism:

#### 1. *Alternatives not Exhaustive*

- I. He is either a Democrat or a Republican.
- II. He is not a Democrat.
- III. He is a Republican.

The disjunction here expressed is not exhaustive, for he might be a Progressive, or a Socialist, or a member of some other political party.

## 2. *Alternatives not Mutually Exclusive*

- I. This college student is either a good student or a bookworm.
- II. He is not a bookworm.
- III. He is a good student.

The fallacy here results from the fact that the alternatives are not mutually exclusive, for a student may be both a good student and a bookworm.

**C. The Hypothetical Syllogism.** The following examples illustrate the characteristic fallacies of the hypothetical syllogism :

### 1. *Denying the Antecedent*

- I. If he plays the game, Siwash will win.
- II. He has not played the game.
- III. Siwash will not win.

When the minor premise of the hypothetical syllogism denies the antecedent, the reasoning is fallacious. When the antecedent is affirmed, the conclusion, "Siwash will win," follows. But when we deny the antecedent, "He has not played the game," it does not necessarily follow that "Siwash will not win." Siwash may win whether he does or does not play.

### 2. *Affirming the Consequent*

- I. If he studies hard, he will be appointed as a Rhodes scholar.
- II. He has been appointed as a Rhodes scholar.
- III. He has studied hard.

In such reasoning, when the minor premise affirms the consequent, the reasoning is fallacious. *Denying* the consequent means of necessity that "He has not studied hard," but *affirming* the consequent does not necessarily lead to the conclusion, "He has studied hard." The major premise does not say that he would not be appointed unless he studied hard. He might be appointed a Rhodes scholar even if he failed to study hard. Natural brilliancy combined with athletic, social, and other qualities might bring to him the coveted appointment.

## VII. FALLACIES OF THE ARGUMENT FROM SPECIFIC INSTANCES

In the search for fallacies of generalization the tests which have already been suggested should be applied. Hasty generalization, perhaps the most common sin of all who argue, appears when the number of specific instances relied upon to support the conclusion is too small, when negative instances appear, when the specific instances are not fair examples of the whole, when the facts upon which the induction is made are unreliable, or when faulty causal connection is evident. Each of these fallacies is illustrated by the following cases :

**A. Insufficient Number of Instances.** " Woodrow Wilson dared to stand for high ideals and became a martyr. So every idealist must become a martyr." One case, to be sure an outstanding one, but only one is given. Possibly you think of many other leaders, men of vision, who have not been " martyrs," or even misunderstood. " Tariff rates for the farmer are excessive ; for example, his hardware costs him too much because of these high import duties." The argument would be much more impressive if the speaker were to do as one congressman, developing this point, did.

What are some of the commodities so essential to the farmers upon which the tariff rates are excessive? All the component parts of farm implements and machinery, namely, wagons, trucks, rakes, plows, binders, and all hardware ; also all cutlery and dishes for the table, as well as the tablecloth and the crockery and utensils of the kitchen ; shoes and clothing of all kinds, along with curtains and window shades ; the pins, needles, hooks, eyes, umbrellas ; the automobile, its parts, and also all guns, fishing tackle, musical instruments, and sporting goods ; if the farmer desires to build a home, then all brick, glass, slate, nails, and hardware ; all surgical instruments and burial necessities ; all toys that make the kiddies happy on Christmas are also on the padded list ; most of the necessities from the cradle to the grave. The one commodity above all used universally and upon which the Tariff Commission recommended a lowering of the duty is sugar. This item alone is costing the farmers, as well as other consumers, hundreds of millions annually.



**B. Negative Instances.** In the example above, you could doubtless cite many other idealists who went through life, apparently honored and in no sense "martyrs." Consider this example of argument from specific instances:

To the University of Cincinnati came 300 volunteers who drank whiskey and then let their alcoholized breaths pass through a solution of 50 per cent sulphuric acid containing a trace of potassium dichromate. This solution is ordinarily reddish yellow. As the alcohol vapor penetrated, it turned a bluish green in each case. Thus was established a definite relation between intoxication and sulphuric acid-potassium dichromate tint.

Exceptional cases would weaken or destroy the validity of this conclusion.

**C. Instances not Typical.** "Henry Ward Beecher idled his time in college and became a great preacher. To become a great preacher, therefore, be a loafer in school." This example of hasty generalization is subject to a number of criticisms: (1) not enough cases are given, (2) a moment's reflection will disclose numerous exceptions, and (3) the case here cited is hardly typical. Doubtless Beecher would have been an exceptional preacher even if he had not been graduated from college or theological seminary. The case is obviously exceptional.

**D. Inaccuracy in Facts.** The instance cited above is open to another charge. What is the proof for the assertion that Beecher was a "loafer" in school? Evidence, including the testimony of Beecher himself, is to the effect that he spent much time in desultory reading. But the facts hardly substantiate the spirit of the argument advanced above. Many a generalization may thus be upset by an examination of the alleged facts.

**E. Faulty Causal Connection.** A final test to be applied to the instance of Beecher would be that of raising the logical question, Why should loafing in school result in superior preaching? Possibly because time might then be open for meditation otherwise neglected. It would be hard, nevertheless, to show a genuine causal connection between loafing and preaching.

**F. Fallacies of Statistics.** The following shows how a fallacy of statistics was exposed :

I wish to refer now to the literacy of the Filipinos. It was asserted that their present or actual literacy is 35 per cent. According to the Philippine census of 1918, the total population of the Philippines 10 years of age and over was 6,381,261 (vol. ii, p. 53). The total literate population was 3,138,634 (vol. ii, p. 60). These figures show that the percentage of literacy as of 1918 was about 50. Taking as a basis the increase in Philippine literacy from 1903 to 1918 and applying that rate of increase from 1918 to 1925, the present percentage of literacy is found to be 60.

### VIII. FALLACIES OF ARGUMENT FROM CAUSAL RELATION

The argument from causal relation, like the argument from generalization, is often misused.

**A. Assumed Connection between Phenomena.** This fallacy is that of *non sequitur*, meaning "it does not follow." In such cases no valid connection between the assumed or known truth and the alleged cause or effect is discoverable. Coincidence is mistaken for cause or effect. Examples follow, illustrating popular superstitions :

1. Breaking a mirror brings bad luck.
2. Seeing the new moon over your right shoulder will assure the realization of any wish you make at that instant.
3. Salt spilled on the tablecloth should be thrown over the left shoulder to avoid bad luck.
4. Don't go under a raised ladder.
5. Don't open an umbrella in the house.

**B. Assumed Connection between Phenomenon and Antecedent.** Sometimes an antecedent of a phenomenon is assumed to be the cause of it. This fallacy is known as *post hoc, ergo propter hoc*, "after a fact, therefore because of it." Examples are as follows :

1. The severe winter must be due to the Republican party, for this bad weather followed closely upon the return of that party to power.

2. He stood on a New York dock ten years ago; he understood no English. His equipment was a toothbrush. Today he is general manager of a huge corporation. What could you do with a toothbrush? (Adapted from an advertisement.)

To avoid such fallacy, we should apply Mill's canons for determining causality:

1. Phenomena are causally related when they appear in a sequence.
2. Phenomena are causally not related when an antecedent is invariably absent.
3. Phenomena are causally related when any variation in one of the phenomena is accompanied by a corresponding variation in the other.<sup>1</sup>

**C. An Inadequate Cause assumed to be a Sufficient Cause.** Here the causal connection is clear, but undue power is ascribed to the designated cause. For example:

1. Jones will certainly succeed as a lawyer, because he has brains.
2. The world will not see another world war, for the nations have learned to see the folly of such general struggle.

The logician who assumes that Jones will make a great lawyer simply because of his brains overlooks the other factors necessary for that result.

In the same way the influence of the World War of 1914-1918 may have influenced the minds of nations toward permanent peace, but other influences must obviously work if a second catastrophe of that kind is to be averted forever.

**D. The Counteracting Cause.** An antecedent is predicted as having an alleged effect, whereas a counteracting cause may interfere. Examples are as follows:

1. The tariff has been increased; we are in for higher retail prices.
2. Nebraska has passed a bank-guaranty law; the people of the state will therefore lose no more money through bank failures.

<sup>1</sup> R. W. Sellars, *The Essentials of Logic*, pp. 226 ff. Houghton Mifflin Company.

In each case above, the assumed cause would no doubt produce the alleged effect if counteracting forces were not at work. But we need to state our predictions with care and survey the influence of every other known cause before we attribute to the cause certain definite results.

**E. Inaccuracy of Facts.** The fallacy of causality, too, may result from a misuse of facts. We need to ascertain whether Nebraska *has* a bank-guaranty law, or whether the tariff *has* been increased.

### IX. FALLACIES OF ANALOGY

In the examination of argument for examples of false analogy we may apply the tests, discussed earlier, for analogy. False analogy is present when (1) the points of difference outweigh the points of likeness, (2) when negative instances are produced, (3) when a lack of causal relation is demonstrated, or (4) when the facts upon which the fallacy is based are proved false.

**A. Points of Difference outweighing Points of Likeness.** The following is an example of the points of difference outweighing the points of likeness :

We find men who would have us enter into this unholy compact and bind our Nation to accept the decrees of the great mass of foreigners who constitute its almost total vote. And yet there are those who would lull us into a false sense of security by the siren song of universal peace!

That cry, sirs, was heard when the British armies were marching against the Colonies. There were men then who declared there was nothing to fear. There were men then who were talking amity and good will and loyalty to our sovereign, George III. There were men then who could blind the eyes of the American people and stop their ears; but there was one clarion voice that reverberated through the forests of America: "Gentlemen may cry peace, peace, but there is no peace. Why stand we here idle?" Ah, if ever this country needed a Patrick Henry to arouse in it once more the spirit of independence; if ever this country needed a fagot from the altars of the Revolution to light once again the fires of love of country and independence, it is at this hour.

In this analogy the situation in 1776 is compared with the post-war days after 1918. In the former case Tories advocate surrender to England; in the latter case other presumable Tories advocate surrender to the League of Nations. For rhetorical purposes the comparison is striking. The historical conditions, however, are so different as to make any direct comparison such as is suggested above wholly illogical and therefore valueless.

**B. Negative Instances.** In an intercollegiate debate on the subject RESOLVED, *That the United States government should create a commission empowered to supervise and control the coal industries engaged in interstate commerce* the affirmative argued that this commission would succeed because of the success of the Federal Trade Commission, the Interstate Commerce Commission, the Tariff Commission, and the Tax Commission.

The negative replied by pointing out the weakness of the analogy. A negative instance, the Railway Labor Board, was cited.

The chief duty of this [Coal] commission would be to settle the strike problem. And this problem defied Federal solution. We have one example in point: the Railway Labor Board, appointed by President Harding. This board was appointed to work for harmony between employer, employee, and public. The purpose was to insure continuous service on the part of the railroads. This board, after sitting for only a few months, precipitated the greatest strike ever called, the railroad strike of 1922. This supervision, this control, this government interference in private business, was a colossal failure. The board was dissolved.<sup>1</sup>

**C. Inaccuracy of Facts.** On the question cited above, one student argued: "The proposed Department of Education will be like the Department of Agriculture, the Department of Commerce, and the Department of Labor — departments which control every locality in the country, and which do not spend in any case more than \$15,000,000 annually."

The analogy was attacked by pointing out inaccuracies in the facts: "The Department of Labor, for example, does not touch

<sup>1</sup> University Debaters' Annual (1925-1926), p. 75. The H. W. Wilson Company.



local units and therefore does not serve as an analogy. Moreover, the Department of Commerce spent last year \$25,000,000 and the Department of Agriculture twice that amount."

**D. Lack of Causal Connection.** In each analogy discussed above, the question would arise, Why is this so? In the last case cited why should the Department of Labor be a success, and why should the Department of Education be equally successful?

## X. THE FALLACY OF BEGGING THE QUESTION

The fallacy of begging the question (*petitio principii*) consists in assuming without evidence or argument a conclusion to be proved. Characteristic ways of begging the question include arguing in a circle, assuming a more general truth which involves the point at issue, and the use of question-begging words.

**A. Arguing in a Circle.** A common form of begging the question is found in the fallacy of argument in a circle (*circulus in probando*). Here two or more unproved propositions are used to establish the validity of each other. This argument may be expressed in at least two syllogisms, the conclusion of one being used as a premise to prove this same assertion. Examples are the following :

1. Fighting should be prohibited, for it is morally wrong; we know it is morally wrong because it is a practice that should be prohibited.

These statements arranged as syllogisms would be as follows :

- I. Whatever is morally wrong should be prohibited.
- II. Fighting is morally wrong.
- III. Fighting should be prohibited.

The minor premise is thus proved :

- I. Whatever should be prohibited is morally wrong.
- II. Fighting should be prohibited.
- III. Fighting is morally wrong.

2. College students are poor students, because they spend all their time in social diversion; and they spend all this time in social diversion because they are poor students.

- I. Whatever people spend all their time in social diversion are poor students.
- II. College students spend all their time in social diversion.
- III. College students are poor students.

- I. Whoever are poor students spend all their time in social diversion.
- II. College students are poor students.
- III. College students spend all their time in social diversion.

**B. Assuming a More General Truth which involves the Point at Issue.** In this fallacy the conclusion to be proved is used to establish itself by being stated in a more general or inclusive form. The fallacy is in reality one of repetition; a generalization is implied. The fallacy is illustrated by the following example: "The students of Bridgewater University should be put on probation, for all such students should be placed on probation." The fallacy here grows out of the fact that a generalization is implied, and yet is not proved. To expose the fallacy, the argument may be expressed as a syllogism:

- I. Whatever students burn signboards, assault policemen, storm motion-picture houses, should be put on probation.
- II. The students of Bridgewater University did these things.
- III. The students of Bridgewater University should be put on probation.

**C. The Fallacious Question.** Sometimes a question is so phrased as to imply a statement that needs proof. Titles of articles in the form of questions often imply an unwarranted premise. Debaters in putting questions to the opposing teams, and lawyers in their cross-examinations, often are guilty of the fallacious question. This fallacy is illustrated in the following cases:

- 1. Can the university survive the dominance of athleticism?

The question assumes that the athletic spirit dominates the life of the university. Many argue that the social life is a more controlling factor; others, that the educational values are uppermost.

- 2. Is the new, high-handed premier of Chile to be another Mussolini?

The implication here is that Mussolini is "high-handed" — a fact which many of his supporters would dispute.

3. Has this student given up the habit of cheating?

A categorical "yes" would be an admission of a tendency to cheat; a categorical "no" would be interpreted to mean, not that the student had not practiced cheating but rather that he still had the habit.

4. Did you write a long article in favor of compulsory military training in colleges?

There may have been no article, or it may have been a short one.

## XI. THE FALLACY OF IGNORING THE QUESTION

The error of ignoring the question (*ignoratio elenchi*) in reasoning occurs when the debater jumps the track in the argument and arrives at an irrelevant conclusion or at the logical conclusion through illogical reasoning. "Begging the question" sticks to the problem but merely asserts what needs to be proved; ignoring the question usually leads the disputant and audience away from the problem. Ignoring the question is likely to follow when one is unable, through ignorance, to relate premise to conclusion, or when, through intent, he sidesteps the argument. The proper method of refuting such a fallacy is to state the argument clearly and show that the assumed conclusion is irrelevant or illogical.

The representative forms of this fallacy are (1) appeal to passion and prejudice; (2) attack upon the personality of some individual associated with the question rather than a discussion of the issue; (3) shifting ground; (4) refuting an argument not advanced by another speaker; (5) appeal to tradition and custom; (6) appeal to authority; (7) appeal to ignorance; (8) false synthesis; (9) division; (10) exceptional instances.

**A. Appeal to Passion, Prejudice, or Humor** (*argumentum ad populum*, "argument to the people," and *argumentum ad misericordiam*, "argument to the sympathy"). This type of fallacy

arises when appeal to prejudice is substituted for logic. An example follows :

We ought to abandon our policy of giving military protection to property owned by Americans in foreign lands, because such protection leads us into war sooner or later with Nicaragua and other Central American countries. We would have to protect the Consolidated Fruit Company. And what, pray, is this Consolidated Fruit Company? Merely another of those Wall Street corporations that exploit the weak. It is high time we Americans refrained from sending our soldier boys — our marines — to be shot down and returned home with this inscription on the coffin: "He died to protect the property of the Consolidated Fruit Company."

Here the speaker sets out to prove that our policy of protecting investments abroad will lead to war, but contents himself by inflaming his hearers against Wall Street and "big business." It is a case of appeal to passion. In other cases the speaker might sound the note of sympathy or humor.

**B. Discussion of Personalities** (*argumentum ad hominem*). A second common fallacy of ignoring the question is that of befogging or evading the argument by discussing the personality of some individual associated with the question. This person may be the rival disputant or someone who has espoused his position; or it may be that the speaker will praise himself or some one friendly to his proposal.

This fallacy rests upon the false assumption that it is illogical for a sound proposition to be identified with an individual whose personality may be condemned, or that it is logical to identify a proposition with an individual who is faultless. Examples follow :

1. The evolutionary theory should be condemned, for the evidence to prove it, from comparative physiology, blood tests, comparative anatomy, and so on, is flimsy. Look at the spokesman for evolution — Charles Darwin — a man who believes that his ancestors were apes, who openly admitted that he did not believe in God.

Here the fallacy of discussing personality is committed, because for concrete discussion of the arguments and evidence to

overthrow the theory of evolution is substituted an attack upon the character of Charles Darwin.

2. Fundamentalism as a religious attitude and doctrine is highly satisfactory, for it rests upon the theory that the Scriptures are divine revelation. Consider, then, the reasons for this interpretation of God's word. The testimony of Mr. Bryan cannot but impress those who view this problem impartially. Consider the sincerity, the spiritual power of Mr. Bryan, and his martyred leadership in defending the cause of spiritual Christianity from the attack of contemporary skepticism.

This argument contains the fallacy of discussing personality, because for proof is substituted an analysis of Mr. Bryan's virtues rather than of the force of any specific argument. As a method of suggestion such reference may be defended; on logical grounds the case is one of ignoring the arguments.

**C. Shifting Ground.** This fallacy occurs in debate when a disputant, apparently cornered, carries the argument over to another proposition. The fallacy is common in informal discussion. Such erroneous reasoning is exposed by reminding the debaters and audience of what the real question is. Examples follow:

*Mr. A.* You propose to abandon the policy of this government to protect the property of its subjects in Latin America. If you do so, either you abandon the Monroe Doctrine, which requires us on occasion to protect in that region the property, not only of America, but of European nations; or you require America to protect foreign property while refusing to protect our own.

*Mr. B.* Anyway, the present policy is incurring the ill will of Latin America, as shown by the testimony of South American newspapers. (Testimony follows.)

In this example Mr. A. presents a dilemma which seems too hard for Mr. B. to grapple with. Accordingly Mr. B. attempts to shift to another issue the ground of discussion. Mr. A. no doubt later recalls that his own argument has been ignored — in reality admitted.

**D. Refuting an Argument not advanced by Another Speaker.** Frequently in debate, especially in high-school debate, where



rebuttals are carefully prepared and often memorized, an argument is refuted that has not been advanced — nor presumably will be — by the other side. The debater's duty is immediately to point out to the audience that discussion of an irrelevant argument has taken place.

**E. Argument from Tradition and Custom.** This fallacy (*argumentum ad verecundiam*) is based upon the assumption that customs or traditions that have persisted are therefore to be continued and that things that are untried are therefore not to be accepted. The fallacy occurs when the line of reasoning points, not to the truth or falsity of the proposition but to the fact that tradition or custom justifies the conclusion. An example is as follows: "America ought to keep out of European affairs, because from the days of Washington we have obeyed the injunction: no 'entangling alliances.'" In this argument the fallacy of appealing to tradition is committed, because instead of a reason to support the contention that we should avoid becoming involved in European affairs there is merely the assertion that our forefathers avoided such international relationships.

We are instinctively conservative; therefore we declare that our Federal judiciary should be independent because it has really been so from the beginning; our college, our church, our community are stoutly defended because tradition argues their worth. Behind this appeal to tradition often lies a strong argument. The age of the institution implies its worth and its present efficiency. But this appeal to precedent often needs to be supplemented by an enumeration of reasons for the validity of the precedent.

**F. Argument from Authority.** This fallacy is closely related to the preceding one. The fallacy occurs when the argument points, not to the truth or falsity of the proposition, but to the fact that some authority supports it.

This reasoning assumes that whenever a highly revered authority supports a proposition, the proposition must be true. "Senator Borah is a distinguished and capable man. Since he

believes that Europe should pay its debts in full, we should not whittle down the French or Italian debts to a point of partial cancellation for collection." Here the argument is based solely on the veneration in which Borah is held.

It has been argued that drinking is to be approved because, it may be alleged, Washington approved the drinking of wine. Questionnaires are repeatedly taken, and the results heralded as proof. Most of these published results are of little value, but they are striking examples of fallacious argument from authority.

Although authority has great persuasive value, it should not be used exclusively. In every case it should meet the tests for testimonial evidence.

**G. An Appeal to Ignorance of the Opposite.** A seventh characteristic mode of ignoring the question is to commit the fallacy of appealing to ignorance (*argumentum ad ignorantiam*, "argument to ignorance"). The fallacy is present when the argument attempts to prove, not the truth or falsity of the proposition but the fact that the people are ignorant of it. This type of reasoning assumes that whenever information to prove a proposition is lacking, the proposition is false, and whenever information is lacking to disprove a proposition, the proposition is true. Examples follow:

1. Dr. Trunnion's Elixir cured Silas Jones of rheumatism, because nobody can prove that it did not.

2. Spirits exist, because you cannot prove that they do not.

3. In *Roughing It* Mark Twain has a character support his statement that a buffalo can climb a tree by asking his skeptical listeners if they ever saw a buffalo try. On their replying in the negative he says that they have no grounds for doubting his word until they can prove that a buffalo cannot climb a tree.<sup>1</sup>

**H. False Synthesis.** The fallacy of synthesis consists of assuming that a thing is true of a whole which is true only of the parts — or some of the parts — taken separately. For example, it may

<sup>1</sup> R. W. Babcock and J. H. Powell, Jr., *How to Debate*, p. 186. J. B. Lippincott Company, 1923.

be assumed that a certain university football team is the strongest in the Big Ten Mid-West Conference, because each member on the team is a star performer. These brilliant players, however, may not work together, and in reality a team with fewer superior individuals may be victorious. The fallacy assumes that whatever is true of each individual part or of the parts taken together is true of the whole. Other examples are as follows:

1. The judgment of the jury is unlikely to be reliable, for the individuals are mediocre men and not particularly fair-minded.

Group judgments, on the contrary, are usually regarded as more satisfactory than are individual judgments.

2. Each state in the Union is controlled by provincial narrowness; therefore the United States as a whole is provincial and narrow.

**I. Fallacy of Division.** In the same way we often assume that what is true of the whole is true of each part. This fallacy is the converse of the fallacy of synthesis. The fallacy of division is illustrated by the following arguments:

1. The soldiers of Company F were superior A.E.F. soldiers in the World War, for the A.E.F. Army was a superior army.

2. Brown County is a rich county. Mr. A lives in Brown County. Therefore he is a rich man.

**J. Fallacy of Exceptional Instances.** This fallacy arises from the false assumption that what is true in an ordinary instance is true of a peculiar instance; and what is true of a peculiar case is true of an ordinary case. Examples follow:

1. Boys should play baseball. This little cripple is a boy. Therefore he should play baseball.

2. Airedale dogs are loyal to their masters. This dog with the rabies is an Airedale. Therefore this dog with the rabies is loyal to his master.

## EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Bring to class two examples of fallacies, copied from current newspapers or other printed sources. Name the fallacy.

2. Hand in one example each of (1) equivocation, (2) ambiguous construction.

3. Hand in one example of each of the following fallacies: (1) four terms, (2) two terms, (3) undistributed middle, (4) illicit major, (5) illicit minor, (6) negative premises.

4. Hand in one example of each of the following fallacies: (1) denying the antecedent, (2) affirming the consequent, (3) alternatives not exhaustive, (4) alternatives not mutually exclusive.

5. Hand in one example of each of the following fallacies: (1) hasty generalization, (2) false causal relation, (3) false analogy.

6. Hand in one example of each of the following fallacies: (1) arguing in a circle, (2) fallacious question, (3) appeal to passion, (4) discussion of personalities, (5) appeal to tradition, (6) appeal to ignorance, (7) false synthesis, (8) division, (9) exceptional instances.

7. Point out the fallacies involved in the following:

1. The Republican party should continue in power; for the country has prospered.

2. School tests are a useful preparation for life; for life is made up of a series of tests.

3. Indiana is the best state for farming. Montgomery County is the best farming county in the state. My uncle's farm is the best farm in the county. Therefore my uncle's farm is the best in the United States.

4. When the village post office is broken into and fifty dollars in two-cent stamps are stolen, Mr. Blank is arrested for theft. The evidence shows that the accused was at one time convicted for robbing a bank, that he was in the village at the time of the robbery, that he was seen in the neighborhood four hours before the robbery occurred, and that when arrested he had in his possession twenty-five dollars in two-cent stamps. A verdict of guilty was given.

5. If anyone doubts the importance of an acquaintance with the principles of physiology as a means to complete living, let him look around and see how many men and women he can find in middle or later life who are thoroughly well.

6. Whatever civilization is in Japan is almost entirely due to Christianity, for wherever Christianity has gone it has brought about higher standards of living.

7. Robert Burns, Christopher Marlowe, Edgar Allan Poe, and many other literary geniuses were intemperate. It is only natural that this student with his literary gifts should be somewhat dissolute.

8. The thorough preparation that Green College gives for public speaking is shown by the honors won in the last twenty-five years in forty out of fifty-one intercollegiate debates.

9. Your college education will pay you well; statistics show that five years after graduation the income of the college man is twenty-five hundred dollars.

10. Mr. Blank will be a fine preacher; for his father and grandfather were both successful clergymen.

11. I believe that municipal ownership and operation of railways is advisable, because it will do away with civic corruption, in that there will no longer be a private company to bribe the city officials.

12. The interests of the employers and employees are identical; for both are to be classed as laborers, one laboring with his hands, the other with his brains.

13. The alumni will no doubt contribute the money for the erection of a new gymnasium, because we know how generously they have responded to the call for funds to erect other buildings.

14. Tables issued by the life-insurance companies showing the chances of life in your occupation prove that the average age at death is fifty-two years. From this fact you can easily determine your chances.

15. Mr. Wilson is like a man trying to sell the Senate a second-hand automobile. He admits it has its faults. But instead of discussing those faults in order to determine whether they are vital or trivial, he brandishes the original advertisements showing what a splendid car the unused machine was and points with pride to the excellent trimmings. But on the question of whether the engine will go or not he is discreetly silent. Yet the purpose of a car is to go, and the purpose of a treaty of peace is to make peace.

16. Fair play demanded that the United States refrain from intervening in the late British-Irish question, just as fair play prompted the policy of Great Britain toward America during our Civil War. Why should the United States have done otherwise?



17. Buy a fireless cooker; for the food in it retains its heat for a long time, as there is no way for it to escape.

18. All Democrats favor "share the wealth" plans. Franklin Roosevelt is a Democrat; so he favors "share the wealth" plans.

19. The Sioux Canning Company has the company union; for some large industries favor the company shop, and the Sioux Canning Company is a large industry.

20. Americans are great athletes. Frenchmen are not Americans; therefore Frenchmen are not great athletes.

21. All who are college students are at least sixteen years of age; those students enrolled at White University are college students; those students who are enrolled in the universities are at least sixteen years of age.

22. Mr. Wallace must be a Republican; for Mr. Wallace is not a supporter of free trade, and whoever is Republican is not a supporter of free trade.

23. America ought to keep out of the latest European brawls, because from the days of Washington we have obeyed the injunction "No entangling alliances with Europeans!"

24. The evolutionary theory should be condemned; for the evidence to prove it, from comparative physiology, blood tests, comparative anatomy, and so on, is flimsy. Look at the spokesman for evolution — Charles Darwin — a man who believed that his ancestors were apes, who openly admitted that he did not believe in God!

25. The students of Edgewater University should be placed on probation, for all such students should be placed on probation.

26. Fist-fighting should be prohibited, for it is morally wrong. We know it is morally wrong because it is a practice that should be prohibited.

27. Dewey will succeed as a preacher, because he is a good speaker.

28. The dollar has been devalued; we are in for tremendous inflation.

29. Vote for Jones, a good Democrat, for a democrat is a person who believes in the rule of the people.

30. The judgment of the jury is unlikely to be reliable, for the individuals are mediocre men and not particularly fair-minded.

31. Automobiles are fast becoming the agent for the closer co-operation of all people, for they are scattered in every country.

32. He is either a good student or a bookworm. He is not a bookworm; therefore he is a good student.

33. If Barker plays the game, Iowa will win. He has not played the game. Iowa will not win.

34. If he makes an average of 3.2 at Iowa, he will be elected to Phi Beta Kappa. He will be elected to Phi Beta Kappa. Therefore he makes an average of 3.2 at Iowa.

35. Woodrow Wilson dared to stand for high ideals and became a martyr; so every idealist must become a martyr.

36. The severe winter of 1936 must have been due to the Democratic party; for this bad weather took place during the administration of Franklin Roosevelt.

37. Scipio Africanus was the first who adopted the custom of shaving every day, and by causing his whiskers to come off he distinguished himself among his compatriots. Cooper's Rapid Shave Cream is distinguished for causing whiskers to come off more easily.

38. People of Iowa City should attend the forthcoming debate between Iowa and Melbourne. Peter Falconer, who was recently committed to the Psychopathic Hospital, is a resident of Iowa City. He should attend the debate.

39. The honor system has worked well at the University of Virginia. It will work well at Iowa.

40. Landon has had a successful governorship of Kansas, economical and efficient. It stands to reason that he would apply the same successful principles as President.

41. You should not favor Federal control of industries. Look at the man who supports it. Stuart Chase! What does he know about it?

42. Lindbergh left college in his sophomore year and became a great flier; therefore you should leave college.

43. If you practice public speaking, you will become a successful politician. You have not practiced public speaking. You will not become a successful politician.

44. Fear causes war, because fear leads to armaments, and armaments cause war, because they lead to national fright.

45. France should tear down her frontier forts, especially those facing Germany. Look how well Canada and the United States get along without forts.

46. Our millionaires would stop at nothing to prevent this plan

to tax the rich from working. Andrew Mellon, one of our leading citizens, admitted that he sold stock to his daughter at a tremendous loss and deducted that loss from his income-tax returns.

47. The speaker of the opposition states that drunkenness is not increasing. His argument reminds me of a dialogue between two gentlemen. Said one, "You should be ashamed; I smell liquor on your breath." Said the other, "Yes, I have been drinking gin to kill the smell of Listerine."

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

CREIGHTON, J. E. *An Introductory Logic* (Fourth Edition). The Macmillan Company, 1920.

ROBINSON, D. S. *The Principles of Reasoning*, pp. 187-200. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1924.

SELLARS, R. W. *The Essentials of Logic* (Revised Edition), pp. 146-164. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1925.

## CHAPTER X

### REFUTATION

I. CHARACTER OF REFUTATION. II. IMPORTANCE OF REFUTATION.  
III. REFUTATION AND KNOWLEDGE OF THE PROPOSITION. IV. SELEC-  
TION OF REFUTATION. V. POSITION OF REFUTATION. VI. PHRASING  
THE REFUTATION. VII. GENERAL METHODS OF REFUTATION.  
VIII. SPECIAL METHODS OF REFUTATION

#### I. CHARACTER OF REFUTATION

Refutation is the process of removing objections, of undermining inhibitions, and thus gaining complete attention. It consists of arguments and evidence presented to destroy the proof resulting from counter arguments and evidence.

By the very nature of the process of debate he who advocates a point of view finds that his proposals are in direct conflict with other proposals. When the hearer or reader does not accept the proof presented to him, it is because obstacles in his mind, or inhibitions, compete with or resist the influence of the proposals. These opposing ideas may come from a definite opponent, as in debate, or merely from an audience. At the outset the hearers may be on the whole either indifferent, neutral, or favorable to the proposition. The problem of the speaker, who in effect declares, "I advocate," or "I affirm," is to counteract the effect of some real or imaginary opponent who may immediately afterward suggest to the mind of the audience, "I question," or "I deny." The removal of an inhibition, which consists of anything which blocks the acceptance by another of an idea, is the process of refutation.

#### II. IMPORTANCE OF REFUTATION

For the speaker to prepare and present the so-called constructive case is sometimes to give only one half the proof in debate. For debate does two things: first, it creates positive belief;

secondly, it destroys unbelief. Most amateur debaters err in evolving impressive constructive cases and in ignoring too largely the refutatory elements. Genuine debate can be completed only by giving to the audience a clear-cut contrast between the constructive proof on the one hand and the destructive proof on the other. Effective debating therefore requires a thorough understanding of refutation and skill in its use.

### III. REFUTATION AND KNOWLEDGE OF THE PROPOSITION

The basis for intelligent refutation consists of a complete knowledge of both sides of the question. If the debater is to meet sudden and unexpected criticisms of his point of view and to dispose of these objections with a clearness and completeness that will win the confidence of those who are to be convinced, he must know every possible argument and be familiar with every bit of evidence that may be used against him. His preparation must be so thorough that he will be able to argue on the opposing side with as much skill as he uses in defense of his constructive case.

### IV. SELECTION OF REFUTATION

For the debater to attempt refutation of every idea that might be presented would be disastrous. For one thing, truth is not all on one side. Many arguments of the other side may well be admitted. At least they need not be definitely challenged. Other arguments are too trivial for reply. It is the central pillars of the opposing arguments which are to be undermined. The main issues are to be followed closely, and only the outstanding arguments need to be considered, especially if the speech is limited to a few minutes. Aside from the loss of time and energy involved in a complete refutation of a rival case, undue prominence may be given to comparatively weak arguments of the opposing side. A careful analysis of the main issues is the best safeguard against the tendency of most beginners to refute every argument, whether



it be trivial or irrelevant. The debater will also constantly feel the pulse of the audience and aim to remove those ideas which obviously produce inhibitions.

### V. POSITION OF REFUTATION

One of the major problems of refutation is to decide at what point in the speech to insert refutatory material. Should it precede the constructive material or succeed it? Or should refutation and construction be interwoven? The answer will depend largely on the subject, the attitude of the audience toward the subject, and if the occasion is one of debate, upon the immediate circumstances. Refutation should in general be inserted wherever and whenever it will be most effective.

If the argument to be advanced is unpopular, or if another writer or speaker has presented a strong case, then the first duty of a writer or speaker is to clear the atmosphere by disposing of the objections.

If, however, the audience attitude is on the whole favorable or neutral and if no outstanding objections have been raised, then the material to be refuted may be left until the constructive case is largely developed.

Refutation should, nevertheless, always be followed by a summary of positive statements which will give as a final impression a constructive suggestion to the audience. Undue stressing of material to be refuted may impress on the minds of the audience ideas which otherwise would command little attention. In general, opposing ideas should be taken up at the point where they logically arise. If an opponent has not already stated these objections, this type of reply is known as anticipatory refutation.

### VI. PHRASING THE REFUTATION

Much of the art of refutation lies in the clearness with which the inhibitory ideas to be removed are stated. Often refutation is not understood by the audience and is confused with constructive material because the refutatory ideas are hazily expressed.

The novice who is defending government ownership of coal mines will declare, "Something was said about a bureaucracy," whereas the genuine debater will more definitely put it, "The argument has been advanced that government ownership of coal mines would lead to a huge bureaucracy in Washington," and then will proceed to a definite analysis and destruction of the charge. The rule for briefing refutation<sup>1</sup> should be referred to at this point. Note that, in the following example of briefing, the argument to be refuted is stated as a conclusion, and the reply is developed as a piece of deductive reasoning :

- I. The argument that government ownership of coal mines would lead to extravagance in administration and to a higher cost of coal is fallacious, for
  - A. Efficient managers would continue to direct the coal industry, for
    - (1) The same managers who now operate the mining industry would continue to function under government ownership.

## VII. GENERAL METHODS OF REFUTATION

Refutation, in its attack upon unsupported assertion or unreliable evidence or fallacious argument, will use the general methods suggested in preceding chapters for testing evidence and argument and for exposing the various fallacies of false definition, ambiguous construction, of the categorical, hypothetical, or disjunctive syllogism, of hasty generalization, false analogy, false causal relation, begging the question, and ignoring the question. Since these methods have already been treated at length, they need not here be further discussed.

## VIII. SPECIAL METHODS OF REFUTATION

Special methods of exposing the weakness of opposing arguments are as follows :

<i>Reductio ad absurdum</i>	Exposing inconsistencies
Method of residues	Adopting opposing arguments
Method of dilemma	Exposing irrelevant arguments

<sup>1</sup> See pages 99-100.

**A. *Reductio ad Absurdum.*** A common method of refutation is that of reducing an argument to an absurdity. The debater seemingly accepts for the moment the argument to be refuted, and then shows that the logical conclusion is absurd. For example, the proposition might be advanced that this country should not relinquish control of the Philippines until the Filipinos are fit to use their freedom. In reducing this argument to an absurdity we should discover and state the general principle, and then show that the practical application would not be acceptable even to those who have unwittingly advanced it. The broad principle in this case is, "Freedom should be given only to those who have demonstrated their ability to use it wisely." Applications would be: (1) "Boys should never go into the water until able to swim." (2) "No one should operate an automobile until he is able to drive it properly." By referring the general principle to a case that is more familiar to our experience than the one cited in the rival argument, and by making clear that the two cases are analogous, we may compel the author of the argument, or, at any rate, those who listen, to admit the weakness of the principle. In such case whether the refutation is effective depends upon (1) whether the principle assumed is clearly stated, (2) whether the analogous case is sufficiently close to the experience of the audience, and (3) whether the analogy meets the tests of valid analogy. Note the following example, from a student debate:

They say that the decisions of the compulsory arbitration board are not very valuable, because the members of such board are likely to be men little known and insignificant. We are to presume that the better known a man is, the better man he necessarily is. Well, there is a little minister in my town whom we all think a very good man, and a very wise man, but not many people outside of his own town know anything about him. Of course everybody knows about the bandit, Gerald Chapman; so I suppose he must have been a good deal better than our minister is.

Here the members of the compulsory arbitration board are assumed to be unsatisfactory because they are little known.

The minister has this in common with them: that he, who is trying to function in some service, is also unknown. Therefore, like them, he is unsatisfactory, a conclusion with which probably nobody would agree.

To acquire facility in the use of *reductio ad absurdum*, the debater should be constantly on the alert to discover arguments of his opponent that are based on any of the following false, but commonly used, general assumptions:

That a mere sequence between two things is sufficient to establish a causal relationship between them;

That what is true of a part is also necessarily true of a whole, and vice versa;

That what is true in a peculiar instance is also true in an ordinary instance and vice versa;

That what is true of a term employed in one sense is also true of the same term employed in an entirely different sense;

That no true proposition is in any way associated with a man having faults; and no false proposition is in any way associated with a man who appears to be faultless;

That no proposition is false, if the people are for it; and no proposition is true, if the people are against it;

That when any person lacks information to prove a proposition, the proposition is false; and whenever any person lacks information to disprove a proposition, the proposition is true; and

That whenever a proposition is supported by authority that inspires reverence or respect, then the proposition must be true.<sup>1</sup>

**B. Method of Residues.** The method of residues is used when the debater reduces the case to a definite number of possible conclusions and shows that all but one are impracticable. This method consists of reducing the argument to a disjunction and drawing a logical conclusion. For the disjunction to be satisfactory the possibilities must be exhaustive and mutually exclusive. For example, a student who advocated government ownership of coal mines showed that three courses of action were possible: a continuation of uncontrolled private monopoly, the

<sup>1</sup> W. C. Shaw, *The Art of Debate*, pp. 128-129. Allyn and Bacon, 1922.

establishment of rigid Federal regulation, or government ownership. The speaker then proved that the first two policies were indefensible. The presumption was that government ownership was the only feasible solution. The argument reduced to a disjunction would be as given below :

- I. Private monopoly or Federal regulation or government ownership is the only solution of the coal problem.
- II. Private monopoly is unsatisfactory.
- III. Federal regulation or government ownership is the only solution of the coal problem.

- I. Either Federal regulation or government ownership is the only solution of the coal problem.
- II. Federal regulation is unsatisfactory.
- III. Government ownership is the only solution of the coal problem.

Although a strong presumption occurs when the alternatives are ruled out, nevertheless the wise debater will proceed with a positive justification of the choice remaining. For it is extremely difficult to enumerate and to dispose of all the possibilities. In the case above the speaker overlooked state regulation of the coal industry, as applied in Pennsylvania.

Characteristic arguments, in which a new policy is advocated, are required to prove that the proposed policy is the best policy. In developing this issue the speaker invariably resorts to the method of residues. Once we grant that some action must be taken, it becomes a problem of exploring each possible avenue of escape. The speaker advocating a blanket amendment to the Federal Constitution, giving women equal rights with men, showed that the legal, economic, and social inequalities call for a remedy. The possibilities were (1) special state legislation or (2) Federal legislation. The inadequacy of special legislation naturally led to the conclusion that Federal legislation was necessary. (And it was taken for granted that the only way to have Federal legislation was to pass a blanket amendment — an assumption violently challenged by the other side.)



In another case in which a student advocated the passage of the McNary-Haugen bill for farm relief the statement was developed that "this is the best possible remedy." This was presumably established by a rejection of all other "possible remedies": (1) extension of farmers' coöperative societies, (2) encouragement of rotation of crops, (3) reduction of taxes, (4) building of a Great Lakes-to-the-sea canal down the St. Lawrence. The negative, however, ridiculed this analysis by enumerating a half-dozen other remedial measures, such as reduction of the tariff and extension of credit facilities to the farmers. In this debate the negative refused to commit themselves to any of these "alternative plans."

In another instance the speaker urged the cancellation of war debts owing the United States by the Allies, on the ground that there were two possibilities: cancellation or collection. Then he proceeded to show that collection was impossible, because each of the proposed methods for collection was highly impracticable. Europe could not pay in gold; nor could the United States afford to accept goods from Europe, from European possessions in Africa or elsewhere, or a transfer of credits. The negative replied that a third possibility had been overlooked; namely, partial collection. Then it was admitted that collection by gold alone, goods alone, territories alone, or transfer of credits alone would be unsatisfactory. But another method should have been considered, in this case a successful method, — that of using all these methods in combination. This fallacy of the affirmative argument by the method of residues lay in the fact that the fallacy of synthesis had been committed — the fallacy of assuming that what was true of each separate unit was true of the units taken as a whole.

**C. Method of the Dilemma.** Another effective method of undermining an argument is that of using the dilemma. This type of refutation consists of making clear that an argument leads logically to two possible solutions, both of which are untenable. These alternatives are the *horns* of the dilemma. The

opponent, forced to choose one of these horns, becomes hopelessly impaled. The dilemma, like the method of residues, shows that a given possibility cannot be logically accepted. The remaining alternative, which the author of the method of residues would accept, the rival speaker would show is also to be rejected, leaving dangling in mid-air, or on the two horns, the one who advanced the premise. Since the dilemma is literally limited to two horns, an expansion of the number of possibilities presented against the other side would lead to a *trilemma*, if three horns are employed; to a *tetralemma*, if four; and if many, to a *polylemma*.

The dilemma in its syllogistic form has for its major premise a compound sentence made up of hypothetical propositions or of a combination of hypothetical and disjunctive propositions. The minor premise under the first of these conditions would either affirm the two consequents or deny the two consequents. Under the second condition the minor premise would deny the two alternatives given in the major premise. Examples will make this explanation clear:

#### A

- I. If the United States enters the League of Nations, this country will become involved in wars; and if the United States remains outside the League, this country will become involved in wars. (Compound hypothetical major premise.)
- II. The United States must either enter the League or remain outside. (Affirmation of the antecedents.)
- III. The United States will become involved in wars. (Affirmation of the common consequent.)

#### B

- I. If the United States enters the World Court, this country must either abandon its sovereignty or refuse to abide by the decisions of the court. (Compound hypothetical, disjunctive proposition.)
- II. But this country can neither abandon the Monroe Doctrine nor refuse to abide by the decisions of the court. (Categorical denial of both alternatives.)
- III. This country cannot enter the World Court. (Denial of the common antecedent.)

The example above, reduced to a brief, would be stated as follows:

- I. The United States could not enter the World Court, for
  - A. To enter the court would mean either loss of sovereignty or refusal of this country to abide by the decisions of the court.
  - B. To accept either of these alternatives would be impossible, for
    - 1. To lose our sovereignty would be impossible.
    - 2. To refuse to abide by the decisions of the court would be impossible.

The valid dilemma is one of the most powerful of all forms of refutation. So difficult is it, however, to develop clearly and logically this device that few debaters succeed in handling it effectively. First of all, you need to make the dilemma clear — to strip it of verbiage and attendant arguments that may conceal the real disjunction. To assure yourself that your statement is definite and exact, you will find advantage in framing the dilemmatic argument as a syllogism. Secondly, you need to be sure that the alternatives exhaust all the possibilities. The disjunction must be complete. Most dilemmas are faulty in this respect. Thirdly, you need to be assured that neither of the horns may be accepted without serious injury to the case. Often the accepting of one of the alternatives is shown to have no disastrous consequences. For example, in the argument above, that to enter the World Court would mean the abandonment of the Monroe Doctrine, you could attack the dilemma by showing that to abandon the Monroe Doctrine would be desirable. Fourthly, you should prove, and not merely assume, the proposition containing the horns. In the argument above, it would have to be proved that joining the World Court would lead to the abandonment of the Monroe Doctrine. Supporters of the World Court would deny that that organization would directly or indirectly interfere with this historic doctrine of the New World.

A student debater argued that "the United States should adopt a program for the further reduction of our navy." In reply it was said: "If the navy is reduced, we must rely for defense either on our army or on our air forces. But our army is small and our air

forces comparatively negligible. Therefore, we cannot reduce our navy." This dilemma could be attacked by showing that we have other lines of defense in case of war, namely, coast defenses, chemical-warfare material, a large reserve corps, and so on; in other words, the disjunction used in the dilemma is not complete. Or it could be shown that the air forces, small though they are, would constitute a sufficiently powerful weapon to ward off sudden attacks; here the horn of the dilemma could be grasped directly. Again, the dilemma could be assailed by showing that the implied assumption, "there would be an early war," is unwarranted.

Another example is the following:

- I. If a man is honest, he will land in the poorhouse; and if he is dishonest, he will land in jail.
- II. But a man is either honest or dishonest.
- III. He will land in the poorhouse or land in jail.

The dilemma is obviously false in that many honest men and some dishonest ones land in palaces.

- I. If the United States cancels the war debts owing it, this country will lose great revenue; and if the United States collects the war debts owing it, this country will become a dumping ground for European goods.
- II. The United States will either cancel or collect the war debts owing it.
- III. The United States will either lose great revenue or will become a dumping ground for European goods.

The major premise above has two antecedents and two consequents, and the conclusion is therefore a disjunctive one. The inference is that America will suffer if she loses the principal and interest of foreign debts to us; and will suffer if cheap European goods find their way to our markets. Here again the assumption upon which the disjunction is based may be attacked.

**D. Method of Exposing Inconsistencies.** Still another method of winning a case is that of bringing to light inconsistencies in the

counter argument. Easy is it in the course of an extended discussion to drop statements that are contradictory. Woe to you in discussion if your inconsistencies are exposed. If in one instance you appear to argue against yourself, how much faith can the auditor have in the remainder of your case? In a recent debate a speaker contended that compulsory arbitration of disputes in the anthracite-coal industry was necessary, because the unions had grown so powerful that they would dictate to the government itself. A succeeding argument attempted to convince the audience that compulsory arbitration was practicable in this country, because the unions, although bitterly opposed to this method of settling disputes, would bow to the will of the arbitration board. The listeners naturally found it difficult to reconcile the two contentions. In a number of debates on the subject of government ownership of coal mines, railroads, or other utilities, supporters of the affirmative have fallen into apparent inconsistency, first, by stressing the point that public ownership would result in reduced prices to the public because of the doing away of private-monopoly rates; secondly, by emphasizing the contention that government ownership would greatly improve the lot of the employees by reason of the higher wages and shorter hours.

Inconsistencies often result from the development of arguments that do not square with admissions made at another point in the discussion. For example, one speaker presented the argument that the United States could collect the war debts from Europe by accepting European goods. Since another speaker on the same side had already admitted that this country should be committed to a high protective policy, the advocates of cancellation demanded a consistent explanation of the two apparently contradictory statements. In another intercollegiate debate, on the merits of the "closed shop," the negative admitted that labor unions and collective bargaining were necessary, and then argued that the closed shop had no place in industry. The affirmative attempted, with more or less success, to make clear that since the collective bargain carried with it the necessity for the closed,



or unionized, shop, the negative point of view was inconsistent. To forestall the charge of such inconsistency the speaker must be wary of admissions, or he must carefully check each of his arguments to be sure it is made clear in the light of such admissions.

The tests of consistency of evidence <sup>1</sup> should here be applied. In a debate one speaker brought forth the testimony of Samuel Gompers in proof of the fact that the bituminous-coal miners were unjustified in their rejection of the operators' proposals for a three-year wage contract. The other side replied by showing that this authority had died some time before the statement was supposedly made. Evidence must be consistent with itself, with other evidence, and with the facts of human experience.

**E. Adopting Opposing Arguments.** Most effective is that debater who can appropriate the arguments or evidence offered by the other side, and can so interpret this material of proof offered as to win his own case. One debater in contending that we need a blanket amendment to give equal rights to women in the United States argued that four states failed to give equal contractual rights to men and women. The opposition used this same evidence to prove that the legislation was unnecessary, because only four states still had this discrimination—clear evidence of the fact that there had been a steady and rapid change in state laws to meet the situation pointed out by the affirmative. A debate on the proposition **RESOLVED, *That the American university is a failure*** argued that the higher institutions were failing because college athletics were so highly magnified, as many as eighty thousand spectators attending an intercollegiate football game. The rejoinder was that the stressing of athletics was the very reason why the university was and is a success; that physical fitness and interest in these events were a healthy sign and that it should be fondly hoped that the audiences of eighty thousand would soon swell to a hundred thousand.

**F. Exposing Irrelevant Arguments.** Favorable results often follow a clear-cut explanation of the irrelevant arguments ad-

<sup>1</sup> See Chapter VI.

vanced in a discussion. The refutation, however, must make it evident that the arguments *are* irrelevant. The impression for a speaker is distinctly bad if those who listen feel that he has either deliberately or ignorantly engaged in insignificant or idle talk. A negative speaker on the question RESOLVED, *That the United States should enact a law giving strikes and their concomitant activities the same legality they have under the British Trade Disputes Act of 1906*, in the course of his refutation said :

The first speaker of the affirmative spent his entire time supporting and defending the peaceful strike, the primary boycott—the desirability of which we conceded in our constructive speeches. Therefore all this time was completely wasted. The third speaker asserted that collective bargaining was essential. We concede collective bargaining in general, but we do not concede collective bargaining so powerful as to give monopoly power ; short of that we concede all. This is not an issue ; consequently all argument along this line is time wasted.<sup>1</sup>

In general, strong refutation depends upon a wide knowledge of the question and upon mental alertness. Continually the keen debater will ask : (1) Does the opponent use hasty generalization with too few examples, with untypical instances, with inaccuracy of fact, with faulty causal connection? (2) If statistics are used, are the instances numerous, is the sampling systematically done, are exceptions to be noted, and do the figures cover a sufficient amount of time? (3) Are there false analogies in that the points of difference outweigh the points of likeness, in that negative instances may be cited, in that there is lack of causal connection, or inaccuracy in the use of facts? (4) Are there fallacies of mistaken causal relation in which the assumed cause is merely another effect of the real cause, or in which it has operated after the effect has been noted, or is inadequate to produce the effect, or is interfered with in its action by other counteracting causes? (5) Does the opponent beg the question by arguing in a circle, or by assuming a more general truth which involves the point at issue, or by using question-begging words? (6) Does he ignore

<sup>1</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1923-1924), p. 45. The H. W. Wilson Company.

the question by appealing to passion, prejudice, humor? by discussion of personalities? by shifting ground, refuting an argument not advanced, appealing to tradition, custom, authority, ignorance, or by using exceptional instances? (7) Are the authorities open to attack? (8) Can the argument be reduced to an absurd conclusion? (9) Can the case be reduced to a dilemma from which there is no escape? (10) Can the case be reduced to three or four principles, only one of which can be shown to be feasible? (11) Can the tables be turned so that an opponent's arguments and evidence are used to prove the case?

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Be prepared to deliver a two-minute speech on one of the following topics: (1) The method of refutation by *reductio ad absurdum*; (2) refutation by the method of dilemma; (3) refutation by the method of residues; (4) refutation by exposing inconsistencies; (5) refutation by adopting opposing arguments; (6) refutation by exposing irrelevant arguments; (7) selection of refutation; (8) importance of refutation; (9) nature of refutation; (10) position of refutation; (11) general methods of refutation.

2. Discuss the methods of refutation found in each of the following examples (if possible, identify the quotation):

a. "Judge Douglas finds the Republicans insisting that the Declaration of Independence includes all men, black as well as white, and forthwith he boldly denies that it includes negroes at all, and proceeds to argue gravely that all who contend that it does, do so only because they want to vote, to eat and sleep, and marry with negroes. He will have it that they cannot be consistent else. Now I protest against this counterfeit logic which concludes that because I do not want a black woman for a slave that I must necessarily want her for a wife. I need not have her for either. I can just leave her alone."

b. "The Dred Scott Decision expressly gives to every citizen of the United States a right to carry his slaves into the United States Territories. Now, there is some inconsistency in saying that the decision was right, and saying, too, that the people of the Territory could lawfully drive slavery out again. When all the trash, the

words, the collateral matter was cleared away from it, — all the chaff fanned out of it, — it was a bare absurdity; no less than that a thing may be lawfully driven away from a place where it has a lawful right to be.”

*c.* “If, then, the removal of the causes of this spirit of American liberty be for the greater part, or rather entirely, impracticable; if the ideas of the criminal process be inapplicable — or if applicable, are in the highest degree inexpedient — what way yet remains? No way is open but the third and last — to comply with the American spirit as necessary; or if you please, to submit to it as a necessary evil.”

*d.* “You charge that we stir up insurrections among your slaves. We deny it, and what is your proof? Harpers Ferry! John Brown! John Brown was no Republican; and you have failed to implicate a single Republican in his Harpers Ferry enterprise. If any member of our party is guilty in that manner, you know it, or you do not know it. If you do know it, you are inexcusable for not designating the man and proving the fact. If you do not know it, you are inexcusable for asserting it, and especially for persisting in the assertion after you have tried and failed to make the proof. You need not be told that persisting in a charge which one does not know to be true is simply malicious slander.”

*e.* “If, sir, I wished to find a strong and perfect illustration of the effects which I anticipate from long copyright, I should select — my honorable and learned friend will be surprised — I should select the case of Milton’s granddaughter. As often as this bill has been under discussion, the fate of Milton’s granddaughter has been brought forward by the advocates of monopoly. My honorable and learned friend has repeatedly told the story with great eloquence and effect. He has dilated on the sufferings, on the abject poverty, of this ill-fated woman, the last of an illustrious race. He tells us, that, in the extremity of her distress, Garrick gave her a benefit, that Johnson wrote a prologue, and that the public contributed some hundreds of pounds. Was it fit, he asks, that she should receive in this eleemosynary form, a small portion of what was in truth a debt? Why, he asks, instead of obtaining the pittance from charity, did she not live in comfort and luxury on the proceeds of the sale of her ancestor’s works? But, sir, will my honorable and learned friend tell me that this event, which he has so often and so pathetically described, was caused by the short-



ness of the term of copyright? Why, at that time, the duration of copyright was longer than even he, at present, proposes to make it. The monopoly lasted, not sixty years, but forever. At the time Milton's granddaughter asked charity, Milton's works were the exclusive property of a bookseller. Within a few months of the day on which the benefit was given at Garrick's Theatre, the holder of the copyright of *Paradise Lost* — I think it was Tonson — applied for an injunction against a bookseller, who had published a cheap edition of the great epic poem, and obtained the injunction."

3. Refute one of the following arguments, using a special method discussed in the chapter:

a. Admission to the freshman class in this school should be by examination only, for the certificate system is unsatisfactory in that secondary schools vary greatly in their standards; the examination system, moreover, benefits both the secondary school and the college in promoting habits of patience, self-control under difficulties, and in schooling the student for the practical tests of life.

b. Our colleges should adopt the honor system for all classroom work, including examinations, for there is much cheating at present, and the students feel that they are under suspicion; the honor system would help the student, the undergraduate body as a whole, and the faculty. It has succeeded in Princeton and other colleges.

c. The states should employ a form of compulsory industrial insurance, for the workman at present needs protection, for savings will not meet the problem, voluntary methods are insufficient, and workman's compensation schemes are unsatisfactory; moreover, the plan of industrial insurance is practicable, for it has worked in Europe, for it would compensate adequately, in that it would be compulsory.

d. This city should own and operate its street railways, for the fares are exorbitant, the cars run at infrequent intervals and are poorly heated, the service is dangerous, and employees are unjustly treated, for they are underpaid. Municipal ownership would correct these evils.

e. The labor union is undesirable, for it means strikes and the demoralization of business; it is undemocratic, for it denies to a man the right to sell his labor as he desires.

f. The city-manager plan of government should be adopted in all American cities, for under the present mayor-and-council plan the men in office are petty politicians, and the method of lawmaking is cumbersome and slow; the city-manager plan will eliminate waste and corruption.



g. Congress should have power to override decisions of the Supreme Court, for the present system blocks social progress. The Supreme Court invalidates laws which tend toward social progress, as illustrated by the decisions in the NRA, the AAA, and similar cases. The proposed system would make for greater democracy, for the will of the people through Congress would be more effectively expressed. The plan would certainly make for greater efficiency, for the long period of deadlock between Court and legislative branch would be ended. Finally, the program would insure greater stability of the American system of government; for the conservatism of the Court increases national unrest and invites continual agitation for a change of our governmental system.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- COOPER, LANE. *The Rhetoric of Aristotle*, pp. 177-180. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1932.
- HIBBEN, J. G. *Logic, Deductive and Inductive*, pp. 271-277. Charles Scribner's Sons, 1923.
- ROBINSON, D. S. *The Principles of Reasoning* (Revised Edition), pp. 178-210. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1930.
- WHATELEY, RICHARD. *Elements of Rhetoric*, pp. 177-201 (New Edition, Revised). Sheldon and Company, 1848.

## CHAPTER XI

### REBUTTAL

I. DEFINITION OF REBUTTAL. II. POSITION OF REBUTTAL. III. IMPORTANCE. IV. COLLECTION AND ARRANGEMENT OF REBUTTAL MATERIAL. V. REBUTTAL IN THE MAIN SPEECH. VI. REBUTTAL IN THE SECOND SERIES OF SPEECHES. VII. ORGANIZATION OF THE REBUTTAL SPEECH. VIII. EXEMPLIFICATION

#### I. DEFINITION OF REBUTTAL

Rebuttal applies to those portions of a debate or discussion in which the argument of the opposition is refuted and the speaker's own constructive case or that of his colleagues is defended.

Rebuttal is like refutation in that both aim to destroy rival arguments; but rebuttal is both an offensive and a defensive practice. Rebuttal not only sweeps away opposition but furnishes further substantiation of one's own constructive argument.

#### II. POSITION OF REBUTTAL

The rebuttal may, like refutation, occur in the beginning of the speech, at the end, or at any appropriate point in the speech. In each case rebuttal, in so far as it defends, bolsters up the earlier speeches of one's associates. In formal debate it has been customary to have a main speech, composed almost entirely of constructive arguments, usually ten or twelve minutes long; and a second speech, five or six minutes long, filled with a discussion of the opposing arguments, called a *rebuttal*. When this conventional division is followed, a small amount of rebuttal material is sometimes inserted at the beginning of the first presentation of the negative side. It aims to refute some specific and especially impressive statement of the first affirmative speaker.

The tendency in recent years to adopt the more informal style in debate has led to the practice of limiting each speaker to one

speech, freely filled with refutatory material, and a final rejoinder, largely composed of summary, which is presented by the opening speaker, the mover of the motion.

### III. IMPORTANCE

Skill in rebuttal distinguishes the genuine debater from a merely clever public speaker. The ability to single out, to restate clearly, and immediately to dispose of outstanding objections to one's position is an art requiring long practice. It is, however, of great practical value. The business man or salesman, after he has unfolded his proposition, finds it necessary to deal directly with vigorous or half-expressed objections that strike at the basis of his argument. The legislator, after his prepared remarks upon the bill have been stated, must rally to vigorous defense as amendments, substitutions, counter bills, and endless criticisms are heaped upon the resolution. The candidate for office must likewise run the gantlet of censure from political enemies and must early and late rebut each major indictment. Whenever in practical affairs arguments are advanced, there comes a veritable battle in which alternate attack and defense succeed each other. Rebuttal, skillfully veiled though it may be in persuasive terms, is the indispensable basis for the successful conclusion of the issue. In spite of our hopes for the development of a type of discussion that may be free from bilateral virulence<sup>1</sup> the fact remains that once the contentions are sharply arrayed against each other, there arises an intellectual clash, and in that clash effectiveness in give-and-take rebuttal is the deciding factor. Many a well-knit constructive debate has failed because it has neglected to consider the power of a rival argument.

### IV. COLLECTION AND ARRANGEMENT OF REBUTTAL MATERIAL

Rebuttal statements are not the casual thoughts or bits of information that come to mind as a speaker hears his case dissected by an opponent. On the contrary, the worth-while speech of

<sup>1</sup> See Chapter I, pp. 13-14.

reply grows out of a systematic preparation which carefully anticipates the situation. All the arguments of the opposition are listed by a skillful rebutter as he evolves his own argument. Numerous objections to his points of view are set down on cards or slips of paper, to be answered later. In practice debates and in his review of printed debates on the subject, as found in magazines, congressional records, and elsewhere, he jots down fairly and concisely each of the main pillars and subpillars of the arguments and the evidence which goes to support them.

Under each argument to be refuted he briefs concisely his reply, including the specific evidence which he intends to use in connection with each point. Cards of standard library size should be used, with the general topic placed at the top, and immediately beneath or on the same line the more specific topic discussed. For example, if the question is, RESOLVED, *That a Federal Department of Education should be established with a secretary in the president's cabinet*, the general topic would include "need for research," "teachers' salaries," "illiteracy," "unequal educational opportunities," "physical education," "increased efficiency," "consolidation of departments," "Federal bureaucracy," "political effects," "dangers of centralization," "inadequacy of state control," and "cost." Thus the debater may list under a dozen heads as many as fifty major arguments, which cover practically every idea that may be brought up by the opposition. These arguments, thus classified, are ready for instant use in the crisis.

## SPECIMEN REBUTTAL CARD

ILLITERACY	NEW YORK STATE
1. Although it is argued that . . . . ., yet this argument is false, for	
A.	
B.	
C.	
D.	
SOURCE OF INFORMATION	

## V. REBUTTAL IN THE MAIN SPEECH

A set speech devoid of rebuttal, without any attempt to articulate itself with the preceding speech or speeches of the other side, is a poor substitute for a genuine debate. Much more impressive is that individual debate which at the outset takes up and refutes definite points made by the other side. Rebuttal should be used in the opening of the speech and should, if possible, deal with major issues. Of course these observations do not apply to the first affirmative address. In general they are more applicable to the negative, whose primary business is to destroy. Suppose that three speakers comprise a team, each one having at his disposal ten minutes for a main speech. The second affirmative speaker should allow two or three minutes at the outset, and the third affirmative as much as five minutes, for direct reply. This arbitrary differentiation between the rebuttal elements and the prepared speech is, however, artificial and should not be followed too literally. The entire speech, as has been stated previously, should be permeated with rebuttal. The audience should at every turn be made aware of the relationship which the speaker's remarks bear to the material of the other side.

Note the following speech, quoted in full as given by a third negative speaker on the subject RESOLVED, *That the states should ratify the pending child-labor amendment to the Constitution of the United States* :

MR. CHAIRMAN, LADIES AND GENTLEMEN: The gentlemen of the Affirmative this evening have asked us to take those Federal laws that they have talked about and show where in those laws the Federal government interfered with education, how they failed to meet local conditions under those laws, and what we are afraid of in those laws. To allay some of their fears and trepidations, I will discuss those laws briefly now, because they haven't told you just what those laws contain.

It is easy to take a law that never had any strength and never was enforced, and say, "Point out faults in that law and dangers in that law." They spoke much of the Federal child-labor laws, but they didn't tell you that those laws only laid down a standard for the



states to live up to. They didn't tell you those laws were indirect in operation, and dependent on the states for enforcement. They didn't tell you that this amendment means direct action by the Federal government on the people. They didn't tell you any of the things about those laws which might be said, so they think it is safe to say, "Point out dangers in those laws and faults in those laws." You cannot point out faults and dangers in something that never had any force, and those laws had no force, they depended only on the state laws that were in existence. Under one of them there were only five inspectors over the forty-eight states of the Union. The laws didn't mean anything at the time, they don't mean anything more now except as a standard by which we can judge whether our states now are living up to their obligations in regard to the children.

Now the last speaker for the Affirmative has undertaken to prove to us that this policy and this amendment is in accord with our national principles. The principle he takes to work on, makes it a fairly easy job. He sets down as a fundamental principle of our government this: that the good of the people is paramount. Why, Gentlemen and Ladies, what couldn't you justify on such a principle? What thing that is intended to benefit someone couldn't be justified on that basis? What couldn't be said to be in accord with our policy? If that were a policy of the government, could the Supreme Court ever declare anything unconstitutional? Could Congress ever refuse to do anything which would benefit any individual in the whole country? Of course not. There is a narrower principle; and, although the gentleman hasn't mentioned it, he has based his speech on it. That principle is this: that the Federal Congress takes over control of those things which the states have absolutely failed in, and which are interstate in character.

He quoted you some examples, and every one of those examples is interstate in character. Congress didn't take those cases over through any story about the good of the people being paramount; it took them over because they were interstate. The speaker talked about white slavery, about pure-food laws and about lotteries — all interstate in character. To prove that this child-labor amendment is in accord with our policy he must prove that child labor is interstate. Our opponents have attempted to do something about that; they have tried to show you that migration of labor makes this an interstate problem. But is this problem interstate in character? The United States Supreme Court declared the last child-labor law unconstitutional on

the ground that while it was intended to come under the Interstate Commerce Clause, it was not an interstate matter. The Supreme Court of the United States has set its seal on that. The gentlemen of the Affirmative don't believe it; they say that it is interstate, that there is migration. Yet Secretary Hoover says that child-labor migration today is negligible. If there is any migration, the Affirmative should submit figures on it; but there aren't any figures on it, it is so small. Still, if there is any migration, there is a remedy; and it is not such a drastic remedy as they propose. Every state in the Union has educational requirements. Instead of wasting time changing the system of government to end child labor, why not spend time in enforcing the state laws strictly? We believe that while the state laws are being reasonably enforced now, there is always room for improvement. Let's enforce the state laws in education more strictly and do away with the problem at its very source.

The Negative so far has proved, first, that such a drastic step is unnecessary. The states today have good laws; the laws are constantly increasing. In the last four years thirty-seven states have taken further action on this matter. Our second speaker has told you that this remedy they have proposed is impracticable owing to the great complexity of our country, and that one central Federal law on this subject will build up an inefficient bureaucracy. He has shown that this is one part of a great social problem, and the only way to solve that problem is to take it in its entirety and not separate it into its parts and divide the parts between the states and the Federal government. As the concluding speaker it shall be my purpose to prove to you that this amendment is absolutely dangerous.

The last speaker that preceded me said: "Why doesn't the Negative get down into the facts and point out the evil?" He was a little premature. If he had waited I would have pointed out the evil to him. In the first place this country is unique for two things: its tremendous size and its economic diversity. The founders of the country saw that and devised for us a system of government known nowhere before on earth. The creators of that system of government realized that one Congress at Washington could not pass a law equally just to farmer, manufacturer and plantation owner. To that inspired plan which reserved all power to the states, except certain enumerated powers given to the Federal government, we probably owe our present prosperity.

There are always cranks who tend to go to extremes. One set led into the Civil War, another set today would say: Take all the power away from the states and give it to the Federal government. The gentlemen of the Affirmative are here tonight with this amendment. What does it mean? On which side is it? Does it preserve the balance between the state and Federal government? This amendment says: Take away from the states the control of one third of their population and give that to the central government at Washington. There is a delicate balance between the state and the Federal government; that balance has been preserved through our Constitution. The gentlemen of the Affirmative would take away from the states the control of forty million children under the age of eighteen; they would give that control to the Federal government. It is for them to justify that and to show that it would not upset that equilibrium between the state and the central government.

And along the same line, there is still another danger — it is in education. Every child-labor law regulates education. There is no use arguing that point. The gentlemen of the Affirmative have told you that. They condemn state educational laws today and say that the Federal government should control education. What does that particular thing mean? It means that our system of education today in the United States would be overthrown; it means that our community, our local control, based on the idea that the community knows best what it is the children should learn, should be turned over to the Federal government, the state should be taken out of the schoolhouse and Congress allowed to dictate the courses in the curriculum. All child-labor laws are justified on the ground of protection to the children. This law cannot be justified on those grounds, it goes up to the age of eighteen years of age. That means that the children who have finished their educational requirements, who are sixteen and over, and who are physically able to work are not permitted work; it means that we raise up a great class of loafers in the country — children who are not in school and who are not allowed to work.

The gentlemen of the Affirmative have a sublime, almost childish belief that Congress won't use this power. Congress cleared that up for us when it foresaw that and voted down an amendment to this amendment which would have limited it to the age of sixteen.

They say, again, Congress only wants this power to regulate dangerous and unhealthy occupations. Congress thought of that plan, too,

and voted down another amendment to this amendment that would have put the limit of sixteen to eighteen years only on dangerous and unhealthy occupations.

The gentlemen of the Affirmative leave out entirely from their calculations all agricultural labor. Congress didn't. Congress voted down an amendment to this amendment which said that agricultural child labor over the age of sixteen shall be allowed. What have the gentlemen of the Affirmative to offer contrary to that? Congress knows what it is going to do. The gentlemen of the Affirmative are guessing. They set their guess up against what Congress has already voted on.

The least that can be said is this: we don't know what Congress will do with this power. We are giving them certain unlimited powers. It is the same thing as signing your name to a blank check and giving it to someone else. We believe the best thing to do is not to take a chance; let's limit the power we give to Congress or not give it to them at all.

Senator Thomas of Colorado said that on account of the eighteen-year-old ruling this is the cruelest bit of legislation ever passed by the United States Senate.

We of the Negative have shown you this evening that the proposed action is unnecessary on account of the states' success today; that it is impracticable because it will centralize the government, build up a bureaucracy and destroy real control of local problems; and finally we have shown you that it is absolutely dangerous to the American people, in that it upsets the balance between the state and the Federal government, destroys local control of education and raises up a class in the United States which will not be protected by the law but will be injured by it.<sup>1</sup>

The speaker at the outset meets the challenge of the affirmative to the negative, "to take those Federal laws and show where in those laws the Federal government interfered with education." He shows by specific examples the weaknesses of those laws; next he refutes the argument of the preceding speaker of the affirmative, that "this policy and this amendment is in accord with our national principles."

<sup>1</sup>*University Debaters' Annual* (1925-1926), pp. 369-374. The H. W. Wilson Company.



He next proceeds to analyze the examples as brought up by the affirmative to show that these examples are "all interstate in character." The next part of his speech attempts to prove that this amendment is "absolutely dangerous." Continually the affirmative is cited, and the speech is largely developed as a series of running rebuttals.

## VI. REBUTTAL IN THE SECOND SERIES OF SPEECHES

Some critics of debate, especially those who advocate the open forum, have advised the abandonment of the rebuttal speech because of its artificiality. As long as contest debating maintains its supremacy, however, the demand for this speech will doubtless continue. It was evolved as a device to give each speaker opportunity to defend his own issue and to reply to any part of the case of the other side. Substitutes for it have been worked out, as, for example, a system of cross-examination of one team by the other or by the audience; but its fairness in giving to the audience and the judge a more complete impression of a team is generally recognized.

## VII. ORGANIZATION OF THE REBUTTAL SPEECH

The second speech should contain no added argument but should, of course, include fresh evidence. It should be well organized. The tendency of debaters when they rebut is to take up a promiscuous assortment of detached points. The result is a mixture of materials, an obscurity of thinking, and a lack of logical sequence of ideas. The material of rebuttal should be selected intelligently, arranged logically, and stated clearly and convincingly. The high-water mark of debating should be attained in the rebuttal. It is impossible to draw up a formula for the structure of every rebuttal speech. The exigencies of an individual debate will alone decide the character and content of the appropriate rebuttal. Nevertheless a general plan, to be applied with flexibility, is here recommended.



**A. Statement of an Issue.** Because most rebuttals are scattered and incidental, it is highly desirable to organize the material under a general head or about a general issue. Note how scattered as rebuttal is the following first sentence: "The affirmative speaker argued that, whereas it cost four dollars to mine a ton of coal, the retail price for the same was as high as seventeen dollars." A much clearer approach from the point of view of good debate and of the audience would be to proceed as follows:

An outstanding issue is, Is government ownership and operation of the coal mines necessary? The speaker for the affirmative argued that such program is necessary because of the high price of anthracite coal under the present plan of private monopoly. He told us, for example, that, whereas the cost of mining a ton of coal was four dollars, it has been retailed for as much as seventeen dollars. In reply, etc.

The second of these methods makes clear the relation of the opposing speaker's argument to the main issue and, moreover, the relation of the specific evidence to that argument.

**B. A Clear Statement of an Argument advanced by the Opponent under that Issue.** Sometimes the relation of opposing arguments to each other and to the rebuttal may not be clear. It is therefore a great help to all concerned if the speaker will state the whole matter in terms of fundamental issues, as suggested in the preceding paragraph. The principle here to be observed is that of stating the opposing argument rather than restating one's own case. When the rebuttal opens, it is high time to attack rather than defend. It should also be added that the attack should be made upon a main argument rather than upon minor ones. It is sometimes a temptation to pick out a weak but vulnerable spot in the opposition and attack it with such vigor as forcefully to impress the audience. In the long run, however, audiences, or at least skilled judges, decide in favor of those debaters who in rebuttal systematically take up all the major arguments constituting the opposing case. Hence we suggest stating the opposing arguments in relation to the three or four issues involved.

**C. A Statement of the Specific Evidence presented by the Other Side.** After the stating of the issue and of the opposing argument, the use of evidence is next noted. Under one general argument will usually be found several bits of evidence. These should be taken up and disposed of in turn. The problem, again, is to begin with issues and arguments rather than with the evidence itself. The rebuttal will be much more effective if this evidence, like the argument to which it is related, is clearly and fairly stated. It is a great achievement to quote accurately and fully the argument and evidence to be refuted.

**D. Refutation by Specific Means.** Thus argument and evidence are to be refuted by all the devices mentioned in the preceding sections. The typical and easiest methods of refutation are those of attacking the accuracy of the facts, showing the misuse of authorities, exposing hasty generalizations, false analogy, and false causal relation. In addition, fresh evidence, not touched upon in the main speech, should here be introduced.

**E. Summary of One's Argument.** After the arguments and evidence have been analyzed and refuted in turn, it is then logical for the speaker to revert to his own constructive case and to that of his collaborators and to summarize the points as concisely and vigorously as possible. A few words of appeal may be added. This summary will enable the skillful debater to show a sharp contrast between the rival positions and to strike a balance which will be favorable to his own cause.

**F. A Statement of what remains for the Opposition to Prove.** Although the rebuttal is logically complete at this point, added clearness and force will no doubt result if the speaker adds the final step of enumerating the specific line of argument which the other side must develop to maintain their case successfully. This statement of what remains to be proved may be partly set forth in the form of questions. Of course, if we are considering the final affirmative rebuttal, it is obvious that the speaker will not ask questions other than rhetorical ones of his opponents when the rules of debating compel the negative to remain silent.

On many occasions the formula outlined above will be almost entirely discarded and changed. Many debaters, for example, prefer to end their rebuttal with a so-called appeal rather than with a statement of what remains to be done. The framework, however, can be profitably applied.

### VIII. EXEMPLIFICATION

Compare the two rebuttals following, as illustrations of the application on the formula outlined above. The first one is the first affirmative rebuttal speech of the proposition **RESOLVED**, *That members of the president's cabinet should have seats and a vote in both Houses of Congress.*

LADIES AND GENTLEMEN: It is well to clarify and simplify this debate. *The first great issue to be settled tonight is whether the cabinet attendance upon Congress is necessary.* We outlined for you the situation today in our Congressional System. We explained the glaring weaknesses, the divided responsibility, the economic chaos, the resulting legislative methods necessary in our executive department to get things done, the lack of debate, and the general inefficiency of our Congressional Government. Taft in his book, *The Presidency*, numerous congressional committees, even Harding and Coolidge themselves, all recognize and lament this high degree of confusion. We have offered a simple, conservative remedy, which will not perfect our system, but which will be a vast improvement over the present unbusinesslike arrangement. What have the negative done? They have merely *cavilled at* our proposal and have built up a series of debating bugaboos — a smoke screen, as it were, — to conceal their own position. They face a desperately poor piece of machinery, and they do absolutely nothing about it. Let the next gentleman tell us what he intends to do about these matters.

What about the *divided responsibility*? The scattering of responsibility between the President, the house leaders, senate leaders, minority and majority parties, and sixty house and seventy senate committees? Not a suggestion do the negative make. They merely declare that part of the time our proposal will not work because Congress may be of one party and the President of another. We admit that on such occasions inaction may result — although we note that much was accomplished

even during the later Wilson régime when this state of affairs prevailed. But we do claim that, even during these stagnant interludes, much more progress would be made than at present is possible when cabinet members are denied admission to the floor. And in those times of harmony the gentleman agrees that our plan would definitely expedite legislation and so save infinitely in time, money, and committee labor.

What do the gentlemen propose to do about this *budget* which blind committees in each house will mangle wittingly or unwittingly? Ladies and gentlemen, the negative leave our much-needed budget in confusion. They merely cry out that under the present plan the Director of the Budget cannot be haled into Congress. But if the cabinet goes, the work of each branch of that organization will be fully reported. In other words a way will easily be found by the President, whose interest is all in getting the facts before Congress, to send the Director there. It means merely the creation of another cabinet officer, a director of the budget. Surely the negative will agree that this plan would present no difficulty or meet with no opposition.

Again, what do the negative propose to do about this matter of secret government? We would give proper publicity to proceedings by having the cabinet talk in the light of day. They would continue the plan of having the President resort to cajoling, and private bargaining — autocratic bossism. What do they say to our proposal? Merely that our plan will legalize autocracy — whatever that means. If to give President Coolidge an opportunity to explain and defend his policies openly means legalizing autocracy, we are all for that dreadful alternative. But the plan does not mean that — and this audience knows that it doesn't. Rather it means that our executive will abandon these subterfuges because they will no longer be necessary.

Finally we propose through cabinet responsibility to restore debate. What will the negative do? Apparently let matters continue in the committee dark room. Committees *are* of value. But how much better will it be for the ten leaders of executive policy to go in turn to both houses and give the members and the country an intelligent statement of things and encourage open debate, upon which the whole nation can focus. How much better will it be, even though heckling and so-called vicious interpellation may result?

In a word, we have analyzed the situation and have proposed a remedy. The negative propose absolutely nothing except to say that more information isn't needed.



This rebuttal attempts to stick to a fundamental issue. It attacks the negative, not so much for what they say as for what they do not say. The speech is good in many respects, but is too largely a repetition of the main argument. Where the negative are quoted, the quotations are not sufficiently clear, and not enough fresh evidence is brought up to establish further the affirmative point of view. A certain fervid rhetoric, rather than close reasoning, pervades this speech.

Compare with the following, the second affirmative rebuttal on the subject RESOLVED, *That the United States government should create a commission empowered to supervise and control the coal industries engaged in interstate commerce:*

MR. CHAIRMAN, LADIES AND GENTLEMEN: The gentlemen of the opposition have presented their argument under five points. I shall attempt to answer each one separately. They say that the coal industry is functioning properly at present. The Congress of the United States expended \$600,000 to investigate the industry. This commission found that the miners worked an average of two hundred and fifteen days each year out of a possible three hundred and nine working days. It found that coal sold at the mines for about \$6.50 per ton and retailed for as much as \$15.00 per ton. It found *further* that one miner in every twenty is killed and one in seven is injured annually. I ask you then frankly and candidly, Is the industry functioning properly?

The second point advanced by the gentlemen of the opposition is that the coal problem is so diverse as to make government regulation impossible. The very fact that the industry is diverse, that it is scattered over thirty-eight states, that it includes forty-five mining districts, forty-four of which do an interstate business, makes regulation by the Federal government necessary.

Their third point is that the plan, which we of the Affirmative advocate, is unpopular. They quote in support of this point a statement from the National Coal Operators' Association. Judges, we did not expect our plan or the recommendations of the temporary Coal Commission to please the operators.

Their fourth point is that the plan which we advocate is unconstitutional. Judges, if Congress created a temporary coal commission and gave it power to investigate the coal industry and make recom-



mendations to Congress, if this commission had the expert legal advice of the Department of Justice with all its talent and such other legal talent as it might choose, and then it brought in recommendations which are unconstitutional, as our opponents allege, then how are intercollegiate debaters to hit upon a constitutional plan? No two authorities are agreed as to what is constitutional and what is not. The Supreme Court often decides such questions by a five to four vote.

Their last point is that the plan which we advocate is a violation of states rights. Judges, a state cannot control interstate commerce, and the question under discussion is limited to "the coal industries engaged in interstate commerce." In 1887, Congress created the Interstate Commerce Commission. Since that time the Federal Trade Commission, Tax Commission, and Tariff Commission have been created. If such a plan as we advocate is a violation of states rights then the gentlemen of the opposition and the states have been a long time discovering the fact.

It has been the purpose of the Affirmative to prove to you four points.

First, the evils in the present system demand a change. We showed you that there is at present an excess capacity of three hundred millions of tons of coal. Since the mines are idle practically one third of the time, the public pays the overhead expense and must feed the idle miners. That means increased cost. The present operating policy makes conservation impossible. Only about 60 per cent to 70 per cent of the coal is recovered. The excessive number of middlemen makes for duplication of effort and increased cost. Coal passes through the hands of two, three, four, and even more wholesalers before reaching the retailer.

Our second point is that regulation by the Federal government is the only feasible and logical remedy. Private control has failed. Periodic strikes, coal shortage, high prices and suffering on the part of the public is the order now.

State control is unconstitutional because of the statement of the "industries engaged in interstate commerce" and because the industry covers thirty-eight states and forty-five districts, forty-four of which engage in interstate commerce.

Our third point is that the plan, which we advocate, is practicable because it will remedy the evils of overdevelopment by refusing to license any new mines for a period of five years. It will prevent strikes by removing the cause. It will remedy transportation evils by an extension of the licensing system. It will eliminate waste by providing a market

for all grades of coal and enabling the operator to work his mine clean. It will also conserve this natural resource for future generations.

The plan is American in principle because it is in line with recent tendencies in our government. Congress controls various national activities by creating commissions and delegating to each the power to regulate its particular industry. The Federal Trade Commission, the Tax Commission, the Tariff Commission, and the Interstate Commerce Commission are examples. There is precedent for the licensing system. The Federal government regulates the manufacture and sale of opiates, meats, food, and drugs.

Coal is the black servant of our nation and the world. It begins at birth and continues through life and death its ministry of service. Therefore can we not reasonably ask "That the United States government create a commission empowered to supervise and control the coal industries engaged in interstate commerce"?<sup>1</sup>

This rebuttal is much more direct than the previous example. The specific arguments of the negative are stated — usually with clarity — and are met with concrete counterevidence. Then the affirmative case is summarized with much — almost too much — elaborateness. Finally a brief appeal is added. The speech, in general, is quite mechanical, but it has coherence, force, and underlying logical consistency.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Compare the relative merits of the two rebuttal speeches that follow. Consider effectiveness in (1) statement of issues, (2) statement of the opposing arguments, (3) use of transitions and summaries, (4) freedom from hackneyed terms, (5) use of the rhetorical question, (6) refutation by the method of residues, (7) refutation by the method of dilemma, (8) refutation by the method of *reductio ad absurdum*, (9) refutation by exposing inconsistencies, (10) refutation by exposing irrelevancies.

RESOLVED, *That the several states should enact legislation providing for a system of complete medical service available to all citizens at public expense.*

<sup>1</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1925-1926), pp. 83-85. The H. W. Wilson Company.

## FIRST AFFIRMATIVE REBUTTAL

(Speech A)

The first major issue in this discussion is the question Does the present medical service in the United States call for the adoption of public medicine in the various states? The defender of private medical care and service, in grappling with this problem, gave the stock reply. "We need," he said, "no state medicine, because public health has steadily improved, and voluntary insurance, less dangerous, will probably patch up the system."

Let us briefly examine this position of our critic. It is true, as the speaker argued, that perhaps you may live, on an average, fifteen years longer than did your Revolutionary ancestors. We are gratified that our death rate is lower than that of Great Britain, France, or any other European country and that we have more doctors per capita than have these other nations. But the real question is, Are we making sufficient progress in the control of health? The more mature members of this audience doubtless recall the results of the examination of three million drafted men for the World War. The Surgeon-General's report showed at least one third with physical defects, and one man out of every five rejected because of serious disabilities. Let the visiting speakers recall again that, according to the report of the Committee on Costs of Medical Care, with its six surveys of school children, from 65 per cent to 95 per cent of these boys and girls had serious health defects. Let the gentlemen reflect again on the report of this same committee, which indicated that, of thousands of industrial workers examined, 40 per cent had defective sight and 60 per cent defective teeth. Such evidence the Life Extension Institute confirms in its conclusion that one hundred thousand young men examined had "an appalling number of defects." Does not American preventive and curative medicine need vast improvement? Even though our creaking automobile represents a real advance over the one Dad urged over the dusty roads, should we not swap our 1925 model for today's best?

Our own argument, may I remind you, analyzed the high and unpredictable costs of medical care. You and I have asked, How can the 15 per cent of American families with incomes under twelve hundred dollars meet these average costs of more than one hundred dollars per family each year? How can these same families, who, accord-

ing to figures from the Department of Agriculture, are unable to provide a diet essential for a reasonable standard of living, raise the cash for hospitals, nurses, dentists, and doctors?

Consider further the speaker's answer to our question Do conditions not demand our socialization program? He said, "Let's have voluntary insurance." Do you not note some inconsistency between the vehement conclusion that all is well and the equally positive declaration that what we need is voluntary insurance? You who carry insurance understand the principles of a sound protective service. Did the speaker tell you how he would build up his reserves? how he would fix premiums? how he would benefit those who could not pass the exams? how he would persuade the unwilling to sign up? In hardly more than one sentence, he eulogized the French, British, and German systems. Did he not ignore the fact that most of these countries, faced with failure of their voluntary systems, have adopted the compulsory plan? Let the speaker read again the conclusion of the majority of the Committee on the Cost of Medical Care. I quote: "Families with low or irregular incomes cannot be covered by any form of voluntary insurance." How futile is such a remedy!

Ladies and gentlemen, if our tuberculosis, infantile paralysis, or black and yellow fevers of tomorrow are to have proper control and extermination, you and I are to look to socialized medicine. If the submerged 15 per cent are to have reasonable medical protection, we must provide for them state medicine rather than voluntary insurance. The logic is clear: conditions require our proposal.

Let the visiting speakers who succeed me explain whether present medical costs are not beyond the reach of the twelve-hundred-dollar income class. Let them further analyze their solution of private insurance. Let them, for example, make clear how the twenty million families on the minimum-subsistence level can be sold these old-line or new-line policies. Rather will the American people look to public medicine as one of the feasible methods of obtaining social security.

### FIRST AFFIRMATIVE REBUTTAL

(Speech B)

The negative speaker told you that diphtheria in the United States was declining. He said something about the rate of diphtheria mortality here as compared with the deaths from that disease in Germany



or Great Britain. On the other hand, we showed that deaths from cancer were increasing. We pointed out to you that, from 1911 to 1932, death rates from cancer have risen steadily — an increase of 30 per cent. We also showed you that the trend of mortality from heart diseases from 1919 has been upward.

The speaker also said that Americans live longer than they formerly did a hundred years ago. But according to the report of the Surgeon-General concerning the three million men drafted for the World War, one third had physical defects, and one man in every five was rejected. The report of the Committee on Costs of Medical Care carried out six surveys of school children. These show that from 65 per cent to 95 per cent suffer from serious health defects. This committee also reported that, of the thousands of industrial workers examined, 40 per cent had defective sight and 60 per cent defective teeth. The Life Extension Institute, previously quoted in this debate, reported that its survey of a hundred thousand young men indicated "an appalling number of defects."

I proved to you that the costs of medical care were too high. I cited the testimony of the Committee on Costs of Medical Care to make clear that 15 per cent of our families with incomes under twelve hundred dollars are unable to meet the thirty-dollar average cost per capita for medical service. We referred to the testimony of Joseph Mead, editor of the *Economic Forum*, who showed that nineteen million out of twenty-seven million families, according to the estimates of the Department of Agriculture, are unable to have a diet essential for a "reasonable standard of living."

The speaker said that people could budget and so meet the costs. But we pointed out that families of the lower income level cannot predict nor shoulder the high costs of medical care.

The speaker advocated voluntary insurance. But voluntary insurance has been tried and has failed in Italy, Sweden, France, and other countries. Voluntary insurance would spread too slowly; it would fail to enter the field of industrial hygiene; it would fail to reach the lower-income classes.

The speaker said that families of the middle class could support themselves. But the Committee on Costs of Medical Care stated that even families of five thousand dollars income would find the costs hard to meet.

One speaker said that our plan would be unfair. But our plan



would correct present conditions. It would substitute organization for disorganization; the profit motive would not determine the location of the hospitals. We challenge the negative to show that doctors are now on the average receiving a sufficient income. We challenge them to show that under our plan the practitioner would not be benefited.

Therefore, since there is need for a change, and since our plan would fulfill that need, state or socialized medicine should be adopted. I thank you.

2. Analyze and criticize the rebuttal speeches of an intercollegiate debate as reported stenographically in a current volume of the *University Debaters' Annual*, *Intercollegiate Debates*, or other yearbook of debating.

#### REFERENCES

(For advanced students. See references at the end of Chapter X.)

Is hard  
and long

## CHAPTER XII

### THE AUDIENCE

- I. DISCUSSION AND DEBATE A PROBLEM OF INFLUENCING THE AUDIENCE.
- II. THE GENERAL AIM IN INFLUENCING THE AUDIENCE. III. TYPICAL AUDIENCES. IV. ANALYSIS OF THE AUDIENCE. V. GETTING AND HOLDING ATTENTION. VI. SELECTION AND ARRANGEMENT OF ARGUMENTS THAT APPEAL. VII. CONVICTION THROUGH ACCEPTABLE ARGUMENTS AND EVIDENCE. VIII. SUPPLYING MOTIVES FOR ACCEPTANCE. IX. SECURING ACTION

#### I. DISCUSSION AND DEBATE A PROBLEM OF INFLUENCING THE AUDIENCE

Argumentation was previously defined as a process of influencing the belief and conduct of a hearer or reader by supplying him with reasons and motives for action. Successful discussion and debate results from securing the desired response from the audience. The specific end of argument is the influencing of belief and conduct. Our problem, then, is to analyze our audience and to select and arrange the material to effect a favorable decision.

#### II. THE GENERAL AIM IN INFLUENCING THE AUDIENCE

The purpose of the arguer is to (1) catch the attention of the potential hearer, (2) hold his interest through the selection and arrangement of ideas, (3) convince him through logical argument and evidence, (4) persuade him through proper motivating materials, and (5) secure from him definite action.<sup>1</sup>

Not all persuasive or argumentative speeches need to stress these five steps. The final step, for example, will of course be

<sup>1</sup> Hollingworth, H. L., *The Psychology of the Audience*, pp. 12-13. American Book Company, 1935.

omitted in situations where the speaker's aim is to secure only the most general agreement with his ideas. You will note, too, that these steps or aims need not be developed in chronological succession. Rather, these aims overlap at every point. The speech is a unit, in which attention, interest, conviction, persuasion, and action (as we define these terms) parallel each other and merge. The action step and the motivating elements are in reality identical; the fivefold differentiation is largely one for convenience in treating aspects of this highly complex problem of audience control.

### III. TYPICAL AUDIENCES

Audience and speaker may have a number of mutual relations. The individuals of the audience will have definite relationships to one another, and the speaker will bear a relation to these individuals.

Note the differences in typical audiences in the relations of the members to each other and to the speaker. The sidewalk or open-air crowd, for example, which you may sometime address if you are politically ambitious, especially has little homogeneity, common interest, or purpose. In this situation you will apply the entire formula and may spend most of your time in trying to get attention. Your sales talk to an individual prospect often presents a similar problem in applying at length each phase of the complete process, — a problem hardly less difficult to solve than that of speaking in a municipal park. Your process of orienting a typical college debate audience is relatively easier. The group arrives in the auditorium with a fairly well-established pattern of attention; they know something of the speakers, the subject, and the general situation into which they voluntarily fit. If you address a college mass meeting, you may have some of the elements of the soap-box occasion; but with the aid of a common collegiate enthusiasm, cheers, and music, you should quickly polarize or orient the group toward your purposes. The discus-

sion occasion represents still another type. You have no great need to secure attention; you can concentrate on unfolding your ideas and creating an intellectual solidarity.

The radio audience is particularly difficult to orient because it is an "absent audience" largely to be dealt with on the basis of its supposed character. Thus, while the materials can be prearranged, you have no instant assurance either of success or of failure.

#### IV. ANALYSIS OF THE AUDIENCE

Before setting forth to realize our speaking aims, we shall make as complete an analysis of our audience or of the speech occasion as possible.

**A. The Occasion.** Review the aim of the meeting. Is it an audience gathered to see and hear you give a typical college debate? Is the atmosphere largely educational, an occasion for demonstrating good argumentative technique? Is it a radio speech? If so, what manner of audience is to tune in? Are they to be business men, school administrators, housewives, a civic organization; or are they members of some "college of the air"?

What of the rules for the occasion? Is it to be cross-examination? panel forum? audience examination? direct-clash procedure? If so, what reactions are you attempting to obtain from the audience?

Even the size of the room, and the other physical details, are important. Any attempt to frame your speech with these physical limitations and requirements of the occasion in view should make your success more certain.

**B. Analysis of Specific Interests and Attitude of the Audience.** In addition to this understanding of the general action tendencies which challenge and hold attention, the debater will analyze the specific interests of the audience and their attitude toward the question. The salesman, before approaching his prospect, finds it desirable to make a fairly complete inventory of the interests

and special traits of the prospect. If the person interviewed is interested in golf or tennis, is a member of a well-known country club, president of some service club, a radio fan, a college graduate, a banker, a reader of Joseph Conrad and Stevenson, a Republican, or a Methodist, these and similar facts are significant in determining the type of argument to be presented.

Even the college debater who hopes for a decision from the critic judge has his audience. The contest debater will doubtless modify his presentation in the light of the educational and other experiences, interests, and attitudes of the judge. If it is known that the critic judge discounts humor and relishes plain statement reinforced by abundant evidence, the arguer in his presentation will not ignore such information. However, every good contest arguer speaks to the larger audience as well as to the judge.

Like the salesman or the contest debater, the persuader before another type of audience will make his analysis with equal care. He will classify the group as urban or rural, as native or immigrant, as Anglo-Saxon, Irish, German, Italian, or the like in ancestry, as largely adult or not, as male or female, as well educated or otherwise, as allied with certain religious, political, and community interests. Such data are sometimes difficult to obtain. Nevertheless, a knowledge of the group — its specific and general interests, cultural level, emotional character, and probable solidarity — should if possible be clearly understood.

**C. Recognition of the Prejudices of the Audience.** Picture to yourself the individual backgrounds that partly explain these embedded prejudices. Better still, examine your own modes of thinking. You form a pretty fair sample of the college group. How many of your own ideas were really implanted in you by older, more dominant boys or girls? by your kindly parents? Consider the influence upon you, in childhood and since, of books, newspapers, magazines, cinema, radio, teachers, preachers, parents, school, popular songs, public speakers, and friends. Not all these acquired prejudices are objectionable. Many of them,



however, do guide you, and with little critical evaluation by you; and many of them need inspection and rejection. As an experiment, test yourself for prejudices and persuade your colleagues to do so. Make an extensive list of your biases, religious, racial, economic, political, social, physical, literary, scientific, educational. Do you believe that the state sales tax should be lowered because this will result in social benefit or, rather, because you personally hate to pay the tax? Do you favor college debating because you happen to excel in that sport and because it affords opportunities for trips? Does not your prejudice in favor of self-interest dictate most of your practical judgments?

What of your predilection for the Republican party, the tariff, a classical education, the good old ways of doing things? Is it because you have logically analyzed their tenets? Or is it because you are temperamentally a conservative?

What of your objections to the Constitution, the old-line parties, the system of capitalism, the standard literature, religious institutions, student traditions? Have you weighed carefully the arguments and evidence on both sides of these problems? Or have you developed a radical bias that determines your conception of every institution?

Why do you object to a student who refuses to join some representative college organization? What is the basis of your condemnation of those who have a different accent, or who dress, eat, work, or play differently from you? Do you arrive at your attitude after mature reflection? Or does the impulse for conformity warp your decisions and render you impatient of every nonconformist?

Such self-analysis will encourage you to analyze the group before whom you are to debate. With such insight into your group, you can capitalize rather than combat these deeply grounded emotional sets; your arguments will be shaped in the light of these audience determinants.

**D. Attitude of the Audience toward the Question.** Again, the attitude of the listeners toward the subject largely determines

the selection of material and order of presentation. Toward the proposition the audience may be (1) strongly favorable, (2) slightly favorable, (3) undecided or indifferent, (4) slightly opposed, or (5) strongly opposed.

Those who are strongly favorable to the speaker enthusiastically applaud each sentiment. Such an audience may be a group of Republicans listening to a defense of the policy of high tariff, or an audience of college-fraternity men attending an argument in support of secret societies on the campus, or a gathering of Chinese students hearing a plea for foreigners to abandon extra-territorial rights in China.

In a distinct group are those who are doubtful about the proposition or indifferent to it. To this section of an audience the speaker's chief energy will be directed. His real victory comes not so much in quickening the enthusiasm of those favorably inclined as in persuading those who have been open-minded and genuinely deliberative.

The greatest problem, of course, lies in influencing the hostile, or opposing, group. Such listeners may pretend to be open-minded or think that they are receptive to logic. In reality they reject whatever argument fails to coincide with their established beliefs. A lifelong Republican, after hearing a twenty-minute speech urging him to vote the Democratic ticket, is not often converted to Democratic doctrines. Nevertheless, advance knowledge of the audience's attitude will surely help the arguer to shape his speech effectively. Favorable auditors become more favorable, deliberative minds incline to vote for the speaker, and even an occasional opponent will relent as the speaker suggests new beliefs that may be linked up with set attitudes.

## V. GETTING AND HOLDING ATTENTION

The end of argument is action. The way to secure action is to gain attention. Psychologically the two are identical. "What we attend to controls our behavior. What we can get others to

attend to controls their behavior.”<sup>1</sup> Professor James, speaking of attention, says:

What holds attention determines action. . . . It seems as if we ought to look for the secret of an idea's impulsiveness . . . in the urgency with which it is able to compel attention and dominate in consciousness. Let it once so dominate, let no other ideas succeed in displacing it, and whatever motor effects belong to it by nature will inevitably occur. . . . What checks our impulses is the mere thinking of reasons to the contrary — it is their presence in the mind which gives the veto, and makes acts, otherwise seductive, impossible to perform. If we could only forget our scruples, our doubts, our fears, what exultant energy we should for a while display!<sup>2</sup>

Attention, then, in terms of behavior is the orientation or adaptation of the sense organs toward the source of stimulation so as to secure the most complete response. Arguing well means holding the attention of an audience. The good debater furnishes untrammelled the stimuli that will control the responses of that audience.

**A. Degrees of Attention.** In any situation various stimuli — with unequal power — are calling forth responses. When a bat flies into the church during an evening service, the audience divides its attention between speaker and bat. When the student looks out of the window and recalls the football game of the previous day, he momentarily forgets the drift of the lesson in the open book before him. This inequality of the appeal of a given situation, or of our response to it, is due to “differences in relative intensity of the various stimuli, because of the particular orientation of our sense organs at any moment; because of the variation of conductivity in neural arcs, the result of habit and reënforcement; and because of fatigue.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> H. A. Overstreet, *Influencing Human Behavior*, p. 9. W. W. Norton and Company, Inc., 1925.

<sup>2</sup> William James, *Psychology* (Briefer Course), p. 448. Used by permission of Henry Holt and Company, publishers, 1905.

<sup>3</sup> Stevenson Smith and E. R. Guthrie, *General Psychology in Terms of Behavior*, p. 204. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., New York, 1921.

When without apparent effort we respond to a stimulus, we are said to give natural, or involuntary, attention. When we force our attention, as when we strain our eyes or ears in an effort to facilitate the response, attention is assumed, or voluntary. Natural attention, as illustrated by that of childhood or primitive life, may be in a degree secured through the establishment of habits. The student who through effort attends to what is to him some disagreeable subject, such as Greek, chemistry, or English, may by and by become so absorbed in it as to neglect other subjects. The problem of the speaker is to awaken and hold natural attention. How shall this be done?

**B. Analysis of the Conditions of Attention.** Attention is largely determined by external conditions. Loud sounds, moving objects, prolonged and extensive stimuli, compel attention (produce responses) whether or not the reactor chooses. The intensity of the stimulus is an important factor in securing attention. Loud sounds impress far more than faint ones.

Moving stimuli also fix attention more effectively than do stationary stimuli. This is because attention changes constantly. Stimuli that secure complete response lose their power. Therefore, if attention is to be retained, new aspects must be presented so that new responses will result. In delivery this principle means that variety in gesture, pitch, force, and rate must be observed; in argument it means that variety in material, evidence, argument, illustration, and method of expression must be applied. This constant variation in stimuli through the use of change and animation is perhaps the chief means of focusing attention.

Other stimuli that are effective include surprise, the familiar, the concrete, suspense, struggle (or conflict). We like new things, but for them to have meaning they must be presented in relation to things familiar (experienced).

We find the effort to establish entirely new habit responses unduly taxing; on the other hand, we lose interest when we become perfectly adjusted. In the same way, we prefer the concrete

to the abstract, because definite imageries call for a more complete response than do abstract conceptions. Suspense, or the uncertain, also appeals, because the stimulus is incomplete. So a play or story or moving picture holds attention because we move uncertainly until the end. An argument will be more interesting if it proceeds from the particular to the general; in other words, inductively.

Finally, conflict (or struggle), because it falls short of complete response, has basic appeal. Thus football games, battles of the Argonne, struggles to fly from New York to Paris or to encircle the north pole, and wars of big business never fail to appeal. The lure of a romance or well-told short story is due to the application of these means of exciting interest. Into familiar settings or characters the author introduces a unique element that avoids the trite and the merely familiar. Concrete portrayal of situation and character, through vivid description, dialogue, or rapid movement, so grips our imagination as to involve us in the very heart of the action. The basic feature of the plot structure is conflict, between man and self, between man and nature, between the forces of civilization, or between man and the supernatural. The quality of suspense underlies every phase and insures a close reading to the end. These same principles may be applied to a speech, whether it be a lecture or an argument.

**C. Specific Suggestions for Securing and Holding Attention.** Note the ways and means of approach to the audience as outlined in the chapter on "Development of the Speech." Consider the detailed suggestions concerning uncomplicated sentence structure, concrete and vivid language. Without animated delivery the attention elements will be futile.

## VI. SELECTION AND ARRANGEMENT OF ARGUMENTS THAT APPEAL

The analysis of the audience once made, the debater should select from the brief those arguments that will best accomplish his purpose. The brief thus becomes not a speech plan to be



followed slavishly but a logical survey to be adapted to the particular occasion. The speaker answers the problems What arguments will best attach themselves to the established beliefs of the audience? What arguments may be used best to enable the speaker to keep on common ground with his listeners and lead them to the proper conclusion?

To illustrate, suppose a speaker is to develop the following argument (detailed evidence is here omitted):

RESOLVED, *That the United States should adopt a policy of further material increase of the navy.*

- I. A larger navy is necessary; for
  - A. War threatens in the near future.
  - B. Our national defenses are inadequate; for
    - 1. Our army is small.
    - 2. Our navy is deficient in battle cruisers and submarines.
  - C. Existing international agencies, such as the League of Nations and the World Court, are unable to prevent a conflict.
- II. A larger navy would foster international peace; for
  - A. Our strength would make other countries hesitate to quarrel with us.
  - B. Our strength would lead us to become more active in promoting world peace.
  - C. Our strength would increase our prestige.
  - D. Our big navy would not lead the United States to develop the spirit of militarism.
- III. The building of a larger navy would be a desirable expenditure of money; for
  - A. A big navy would be cheap insurance.
  - B. The sum involved would not be sufficiently large to prevent the reduction of national taxes.
  - C. The program would afford employment to many steel and other workers.

Suppose you are talking to a group of students, the large majority of whom intend to vote against your proposition. You would probably stress the arguments that

1. War threatens.
2. Our national defenses are inadequate.
3. The existing international agencies for peace are unable to prevent a conflict.

By tying up these arguments to the established beliefs that "War is a terrible calamity," "War will destroy my individual happiness," "A nation should be prepared for defense," you may overcome the opposition.

Again, assume that your audience is a woman's club of some church. Most of them presumably have a strong distrust of big armies and navies and an idealistic conception of the times when "war shall be no more." For this group you will probably argue that

1. A larger navy would foster international peace.
2. Other countries would hesitate to quarrel with us.
3. Our strength would lead us to become more active in promoting world peace.

Again, you are invited to address a group of business men, most of whom have indicated their opposition to your position. Here the third section of your brief will perhaps be used :

1. The building of a larger navy would be a desirable expenditure of money.
2. A big navy would be cheap insurance.
3. The sum involved would not be sufficiently large to prevent the reduction of national taxes.

Other arguments would be necessary to the completion of a logical case, such as

1. War threatens.
2. Our national defenses are inadequate.

But complete response from each audience necessitates the stressing of those special arguments that fit in most readily with the mind patterns of the listeners.

## VII. CONVICTION THROUGH ACCEPTABLE ARGUMENTS AND EVIDENCE

Since the previous chapters have given in detail the methods of developing and testing argument, we need here only to recall the technique by which the logical and emotional elements are combined. The average listener prides himself on his rationality. He demands organization, clearly knit reasons, concrete evidence. To be sure, his conception of logical processes and testing is naïve, as Hollingworth points out,<sup>1</sup> and is "easily satisfied even by specious and invalid argument." Your business, then, is to deal effectively with this desire for rationality. You will align your ideas with the hopes, desires, and beliefs of your hearers. But you will couple (accompany or follow) these emotional drives with such arguments as you can muster. Thus your auditor not only will receive a strong emotional stimulus to follow your bent, but will be quickened with rational appeals that confirm and make permanent the program to which you have committed him.

Furthermore, not only will you protect those lines of reasoning by proper tests but you will make clear the possible fallacies of counterargument and evidence.

Good argument removes the inhibitions of auditors and anticipates fallacious objections. For example, you will be alert to point out that vigorous assertion or volubility should not supplant proof; that dogmatism or mysticism should not supersede logic; that mere coincidence is not to be confused with causal relation; that assault upon a man's character is not to be substituted for logical criticism of his arguments; that reliance upon hearsay testimony, generalization from exceptional cases, arguing in a circle, or begging the question constitutes unsound technique. Thus you will provide a logical pattern of your materials; your auditor's distrust of demagoguery will thus be heightened, and his respect for his own mental processes increased.

<sup>1</sup> H. L. Hollingworth, *Psychology of the Audience*, p. 138. American Book Company, 1935.

## VIII. SUPPLYING MOTIVES FOR ACCEPTANCE

Argumentative speeches are commonly regarded as almost purely rational compositions. Indeed, many debate judges discount those debaters who depart in the slightest from the field of statistics in proof. Genuine argument, nevertheless, which definitely influences human beings, furnishes motives for belief or conduct.

An analysis of any effective debate proves that the series of rational arguments becomes a series of emotional appeals. If, for example, you are arguing in favor of establishing a policy of more extensive national defense, you may prove that the possibilities of war are present; that Japan, Italy, France, Russia, Germany, or England, or any combination of these powers, may some day array themselves against America; that to deal with this situation our naval, military, airplane, and other resources are inadequate; that a proper strengthening of the army and navy and air forces would be a great preventive of war and would give us victory in the event of war; that the policy would promote world peace because, well equipped, we should be in a better position to influence warlike nations to settle their differences by peaceful means; that the cost would be justified.

Each of these arguments, however, would carry with it strong emotional stimuli: the appeal of patriotism, fear of future wars, pride in our own past, love of justice, hatred of selfish and belligerent nations, race prejudice, religious feeling, international friendship, pity for weak nations, duty to promote peace, zeal in self-protection, rebuke of complacency, admiration for good deeds done, good will, courage, hope, and various other emotions.

To the extent that the emotions which stimulate approval are aroused will the speech be successful. As James says:

When any strong emotional state whatever is upon us, the tendency is for no images but such as are congruous with it to come up. If others by chance offer themselves, they are instantly smothered and crowded out. If we be joyous, we cannot keep thinking of those uncertainties

and risks of failure which abound in our path ; if lugubrious, we cannot think of new triumphs, travels, loves, and joys ; nor if vengeful, of our oppressor's community of nature with ourselves.<sup>1</sup>

Our object, then, is to inhibit those emotions that are associated with objections and to stimulate those that accompany approval of our argument.

**A. Nature of Emotion.** Recent descriptions of emotion agree that it is a consciousness, or *awareness*, of bodily changes, these bodily changes resulting from some stimulus which is communicated to the higher centers of the nervous system. "This fused complex of sensory experience is what we call an emotion."<sup>2</sup>

**B. Classification of Emotions.**<sup>3</sup> Primary emotions are usually limited to fear (anger) and love (or sex). Based upon this division is a category of emotions which include sympathy, admiration, gratitude, hope, pride, friendship, good will, approbation, pity, esteem, and similar terms under love ; and hatred, indignation, contempt, revenge, shame, jealousy, and various others under fear or anger.

**C. Emotion and Motives.** All emotions are motives. Hunger drives its subject to secure food ; fear leads to flight ; anger, to warfare. Each emotion is presumably in part a tendency to action. The stronger the emotion the more clearly is it associated with behavior and so with motivation. If you are to succeed as a debater, you should understand the motives which control human conduct, such "impelling motives" as self-preservation, profit, personal and social convenience, necessity, indignation, and duty.

**I. Self-Preservation.** Self-preservation is no doubt the strongest motive governing human beings. It is the expression of our determination to live as long as possible, "the universal will to live

<sup>1</sup> William James, *Psychology* (Briefer Course), p. 451. Used by permission of Henry Holt and Company, publishers, 1905.

<sup>2</sup> F. H. Allport, *Social Psychology*, p. 84. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> For a classification and discussion of feelings and emotions consult C. E. Seashore, *An Introduction to Psychology*, pp. 302-337. The Macmillan Company, 1924.



which forms the basis of all particular volitions and supplies the motive power to our plans, purposes, preparations, and policies for our own and others' good." <sup>1</sup> The battle for self-preservation means a struggle to avoid all situations that involve pain or threaten the life of the individual or the race. A multitude of arguments involves directly or indirectly the appeal to follow a policy because it will assure us freedom from pain, discomfort, bodily inconvenience, worry, and will positively add to our well-being, safety, and security. "Take Dr. Swamproot's Elixir Compound, because it will cure rheumatism," "Vote for the bill to require all vehicles to stop before crossing railroad tracks," "Support the movement for stricter enforcement of the local quarantine law," "Prohibit immigration entirely, because otherwise our country will presently have more people than we can find food for," "Join the League of Nations so that we may remove the wars which threaten," "Let us build up a larger navy, because Japan is doing so," "Join the World Court," "Establish a larger standing army, because war threatens, and a combination of European powers against us would be able to handle our paltry army," "Let us have compulsory military training in American colleges and universities." These and many other appeals rely for their acceptance upon the motive of self-preservation by suggesting a removal of dangers that threaten.

2. *Profit.* The acquisitive habit is almost as strongly operative as is that of self-preservation. Whoever debates effectively a question of policy will make much of the "dollar and cents" argument. Since profit means power, reputation, happiness for one's family and oneself, and apparently almost every other benefit, the motive of material gain is tremendously important. If you show that cancellation of war debts will bring to the United States European customers for our copper and other wares, you will increase the number of business men who support your proposition. If you show that the city-manager plan of municipal

<sup>1</sup> Lawrence Pearsall Jacks. *Religious Perplexities*, p. 14. George H. Doran Company, 1923.

government will eliminate political graft and so reduce the expenses of city government, you will gain the approval of the voter. So you will justify your advocacy of a lower protective tariff, a state income tax, an inheritance, sales, single, or property tax, by convincing your audience that such policy will mean for them individually lower taxes. In each of these cases the opposing speaker will counter by attempting to demonstrate that the proposal will result in increased financial burdens. Questions, primarily economic, are of course much more likely to lead to the issue of "practicability." The chief reason for or against government ownership of railroads, coal mines, or telephones has to do with the effect upon the private pocketbook. Similarly, government aid to the unemployed, workmen's compensation laws, legislation for war veterans, old-age pensions, ship subsidies, water-power development, conservation policies, inland-waterway development, have all been vigorously opposed because each program would threaten to reduce the citizen's income without bringing proportional benefits in service.

3. *Personal and Social Convenience.* Sometimes an admittedly costly undertaking can be demonstrated to yield great returns in pleasure or in convenience to the individual and to the community. "It costs more — but it pays" has been the slogan for many an article. Such has been the basis for the argument in support of propositions such as "The state of Iowa should adopt a policy of more rapid development of a state-wide hard-surfaced-road program," "The state of Texas should increase its appropriation for public instruction," "The city of Lewisville should build and support a municipal dancing pavilion," "Washington College should establish a school of music," "The state university should build a little-theater building," "A municipal university should be established in Chicago." The justification for such programs is based upon a variety of reasons, such as *need* and *practicability*; but the main appeal is probably that of sheer pleasure or convenience to the members of the community. "Buy the Swift car because of its easy-riding qualities — and its speed."

4. *Necessity*. It is customary in many arguments of policy to show the necessity for such action. Regardless of cost, pleasure, profit, reputation, or other considerations, if it can be made clear to the listener that a given program *must be* followed, then action may be secured on that basis alone. The formula for such appeal would be, "It is a case of this or nothing"; "If you do not act, disaster follows"; "You *must* do this, whether you like it or not." Usually, however, the argument and the accompanying appeal are made doubly attractive by a picturing of the immense benefits which follow. The program is not only necessary, but it is advantageous in numerous ways — and, in addition, a practicable course of action.

Compulsory arbitration of labor disputes in the United States has been advocated as necessary, because inaction will result in the stoppage of transportation on public carriers, with the resultant starving of the community. (Note that the appeal here is partly based on self-preservation.) A further defense of the policy would be the argument that the policy would strengthen the labor unions and result in a higher standard of living for the laborer, a blessing not vitally connected with the plea of necessity. Finally, it has been shown that compulsory arbitration would have the support of the public, that strikes would actually diminish, and that the findings of the arbitration boards would be effectively enforced.

Necessity has been made the cornerstone of many an argument in support of new school buildings, the adoption of prohibition, the settling of the slavery question, the preservation of the Union, the establishment of conscription in 1917, the limitation of immigration into America, the passage by Congress of an eight-hour day for railroad workers, the passage of a soldier-bonus bill, the passage of appropriations by Congress to fight boll weevils, build post offices, dredge rivers, and so on. Many a legislator has said, "This one thing I must do"; just as many a patient, listening to medical advice, has decided upon a serious operation.

5. *Ambition*. Closely allied with the motives of profit, self-preservation, and pleasure is the universal craving for power, reputation, and social recognition. We are not content merely to live and to live at ease. We seek ability to control others, to compel attention, and to force obedience to our will. This position of influence will of course enable us to command the resources from which we may draw our security and happiness. From this comes the ambition of the man or woman to excel in the competition for scholastic honors, for business or professional success; the desire of the community or state to outstrip its neighbors; the national ambition to compare favorably with other nations in armaments, athletics, intellectual and æsthetic achievements. Note the type of appeal suggested by the following arguments: "Subscribe for the Memorial Union, for we want to have the finest university student center in America"; "Subscribe for this correspondence course, for after a few years you will rise from clerk to business executive to whom directors will defer"; "Win your next football game, so that the campus will have a new pride in its athletics"; "Build a million-dollar high-school building, so that our city will have a reputation for educational progressiveness"; "Maintain the open door in China, in order that we may capture the trade of the Orient"; "Let us withhold recognition of Russia, so that that country will understand that she must fulfill her obligation to respect American lives and property."

6. *Indignation*. One of the primary emotions is that of anger or indignation. Of course a deliberate attempt to arouse a baser passion is not here advocated. Nevertheless indignation, properly directed, becomes a laudable motive in driving men to action and is not to be ignored in any effective speech. The only proper way to rid the world of unworthy institutions is to arouse a strong emotional reaction — hatred — against them. Thus you may be justified in arousing your audience to intelligent indignation against boss rule in the community, against the reign of crime, against some strong government that seems to trample upon its

impotent neighbor, against cheating in school examinations, against social organizations that discriminate against less-fortunate social groups, against the practice of race discrimination. A deep sense of indignation was the underlying motive governing the following arguments: "Adopt Federal child-labor legislation, for capitalists today employ five million child slaves in their shops"; "Support the closed shop, because employers are crushing out those unions that attempt to exist in the open shop."

7. *Duty*. Men will often follow a course of conduct if you appeal to their sense of duty. A sense of right, conscience, character, will lead to action when lower motives fail. "Do this because your obligation to yourself and to your fellows calls for such action" is an effective appeal, especially to those whose moral and religious training has been thorough. The problem is that of identifying the situation with the responsibilities of the individual. So the minister ends his weekly argument with a strong exhortation for every listener to do his duty. The appeal is strong if it is properly stated; but since it is used so many, many times, especial care needs to be used in the expression of the exhortation. As a debater you may be accused of "preaching," and your call to duty will fall flat.

An appeal for elimination of professionalism in college athletics, for establishing the honor system in college examinations, for improvement of the fraternity system, for better habits of college study, and for many another local policy, may be most vigorously presented from the point of view of duty. Each member of the audience may feel his personal relationship to the matter involved. More difficult is it to get response when we are urged to do our duty in giving the Philippines their independence or in abandoning extraterritorial rights in China. What have we directly to do with China?

Thus when the debater urges us to "do our duty to the farmer by lowering the tariff," we may remain cold because we belong to some urban class or because the whole controversy is to us purely an academic one. But since this motive of duty is a com-



paratively lofty one, the debater must make especial effort to apply it. When successfully expressed it is very effective; for example, in connection with such subjects as those having to do with the World Court, disarmament, Japanese immigration, compulsory voting, capital punishment, and similar political and social topics which evidently admit of the so-called "moral" appeal.

8. *Justice*. As people in this generation are often moved by the appeal to duty, so are they influenced by sentiments of justice. The Golden Rule has so far been accepted by the audience — or at least by the type of audience which the school or college debater usually faces — that men and women have a keen regard for the rights of the other fellow. If he fails to get what he is entitled to, so may the similar rights of other individuals be lost. Moreover, a great satisfaction comes to those who feel that they are on the right side morally of any controversy. Office seekers strive to convince the public that their platform is a righteous one and that the rival platform is correspondingly unholy. The Republican party heralds itself as the champion of the working-man, of the farmer, of every group that needs support, and struggles valiantly to make clear that the party motive is invariably to distribute justice to all interests and classes, at home and abroad. The Democratic party, no matter whether the issue is prohibition, tariff, or methods of securing the nomination, strives with equal zeal to identify its own arguments with abstract justice; and the tenets and policies of Republicanism with much that is unjust. Wilson in his forty speeches delivered in his Western trip of 1919, to persuade his countrymen to support the League of Nations, continually sounded a high note of justice to all nations.

Almost every school or college debate strikes, and strikes effectively, for justice; for example, a Stanford debating team in a debate with the University of California on the proposition *RESOLVED, That the California criminal-syndicalism law should be repealed*<sup>1</sup> continually made this appeal. One speaker attempted to

<sup>1</sup> *University Debaters' Annual* (1923-1924), pp. 59 ff. The H. W. Wilson Company.

prove that the law in question made mere talking a criminal act, made belonging to an organization a crime, and made for "discriminatory suppression in that it leaves untouched, advocacy of crime for other purposes." Then the speaker showed that these things were essentially unjust. The second affirmative rebuttal closed thus:

America arose as a protest to suppression. America grew and prospered because she fostered the suppressed peoples and suppressed ideas of the Old World. . . . In the height of our glory, are we, as good Americans,—better, are we, as sincere human beings,—going to allow smug self-complacency to deny our contemporaries the very rights which are the basis of our existence?

9. *Loyalty to Friends, Home, Country.* Another high motive which controls the average member of the audience is that of sacrifice for those for whom he has deep affection. If the speaker can convince the listener that the proposal will help his family and friends, then a motive for approval is supplied sometimes stronger than that of a purely selfish appeal. The patriotic appeal, if it is sincere and stated in terms that are not extravagant, is justified and, despite times of national cynicism, is highly effective. Men and women are more powerfully moved by the picture of themselves as loyal to their country than they are willing to admit. It has been customary and reasonable to fill with patriotic sentiment debates on such subjects as restriction of Japanese immigration, the disregard of party lines in elections, tariff changes, suppression of lynching, conservation of forests, subsidizing the merchant marine, canceling war debts due this country, intervention in Mexico, protection of the Panama Canal, or the carrying out of a specified policy with respect to France, Italy, or some other great power. The danger in this call for patriotism is that sometimes it becomes blatant, hollow chauvinism, or jingoism. Only genuine invitation to intelligent loyalty should be used. Sometimes an even wider appeal, that of love for all nations, can be successfully stressed, as when the League of Nations or the World Court is under discussion.

10. *Other Sentiments.* Pity, gratitude, generosity, and other sentiments play an important part in arguments. The problem is to analyze properly the specific interests of a given audience and sound those emotional notes that produce the maximum desired effect. The situation calls for an understanding of the question and of the audience. If self-interest and altruism conflict, the result will be negative. Use those motives which will most easily accomplish your purpose. Build up sentiments which ally the listener with your argument and which render that same listener immune to counter suggestions from the opposing speaker.

**D. The Personality of the Speaker.** The emotional drift of any speech will be governed not only by the specific lines of appeal suggested above but by that vague factor we call the speaker's personality. If the audience has confidence in the speaker, if his personality so dominates that all opposition is for the time broken, then the proposition will be accepted, attention held, and the decision reached.

1. *Tact.* Tact, positively considered, is the ability to say those things which impress favorably the listener; negatively, it is the good judgment to avoid saying those things that create inhibitions. Many a debate, otherwise quite satisfactory from the point of view of delivery and of argument and of evidence, has fallen flat because of the speaker's failure to say the appropriate thing, or his disposition to say the highly inappropriate thing. It has been said that nine tenths of the art of public speaking lies in the tactful statement of ideas. The proper method of procedure in developing or exercising tact is to understand your audience. Tactlessness usually results from failure to understand human nature in general, and specifically the people composing the immediate audience. Most debaters, before they have proceeded far, have offended those people in the audience who dislike highly opinionated statements, those who dislike rapid-fire delivery or undue aggressiveness or numerous statistics, or those who have definite opinions in regard to race, religion, politics, and other matters. Obviously one who is conscientious and candid cannot

avoid stirring up audience antagonisms, but the less hostility created the more unanimous the approval at the end. Certain it is that unnecessary offense is often given and that the use of tact will minimize or prevent hostile feeling without requiring any real slighting of the argument advanced. The tactful arguer will by all means avoid an air of lofty condescension in which he assures his listeners, "Let me tell you that this thing must be stopped." He will avoid indicting his audience for political or other views which most of them are known to hold, he will allay known prejudices, he will avoid a preaching tone, and he will adopt a platform manner neither too stiffly remote from his hearers nor too intimate.

2. *Sincerity*. More confidence is given to that arguer who evidently believes what he states and who is genuinely concerned that the audience hold similar beliefs. Nothing so ruins the effect of good argument as a suggestion of insincerity. The Great Man, according to Carlyle, is the sincere man.

I should say sincerity, a deep, great, genuine sincerity, is the first characteristic of all men in any way heroic. Not the sincerity that calls itself sincere; ah, no, that is a very poor matter indeed; — a shallow, braggart, conscious sincerity; oftenest self-conceit mainly. The Great Man's sincerity is of the kind he cannot speak of, is not conscious of: nay, I suppose, he is conscious rather of insincerity; for what man can walk accurately by the law of truth for one day? <sup>1</sup>

The only way to succeed in giving the impression of sincerity is to be sincere. Under no circumstances should a speaker allow the public to have a false impression of what he thinks. If he opposes military training in the American universities, then he should never allow an audience to assume that he is for such tactics and training. As Demosthenes declared, no one has a license to misrepresent his real convictions.

What of the common debating practice of having a speaker arbitrarily assigned to a side of a question, often to a side in which he does not believe? The answer is, of course, that no

<sup>1</sup> Thomas Carlyle, "The Hero as Prophet," in *Heroes and Hero-Worship*.



student should be asked to defend a proposition to which he is conscientiously opposed. Nevertheless, as suggested in an earlier chapter, the problem is more theoretical than real, for on most questions proposed, students have few matured convictions. A good argument may be evolved on either side. Truth is on both sides, and the student may conceivably argue conscientiously on either affirmative or negative. In fact, one way to cultivate convictions of a stable sort is to acquaint the student fully with the subject. No better way to gain this familiarity is known than to debate both sides. Hence the occasional justification of having the same debaters for and against various propositions. It must be admitted that this practice of having a speaker ready at a moment's notice to debate on either side of a given subject, common in high-school and college debate tournaments, needs to be most carefully used. In general, for a public debate the student should represent only those views which he honestly thinks he holds.

3. *Earnestness*. Sincerity means earnestness, seriousness of purpose, determination, alertness, a moral stamina that commands from the audience if not agreement at least profound respect for the ideas of the disputant. Earnestness grows out of the speaker's faith and begets faith. Smartness of style, flippancy, cynicism, may for the moment hold the attention; but the hollowness of the speaker's purpose shows through, and the audience loses contact with the argument because of the loss of confidence in the spokesman for the argument.

4. *Humor*. Debaters are often solemn without being in earnest. Either solemnity or earnestness, and the two are often the same, is not inconsistent with humor. Genial humor, whether quiet or broad, is almost necessary for the effective persuasion of the average audience. The lighter mood breaks down hostility, puts the speaker on common ground with his audience, creates a common emotion, — and so a psychological crowd, — and thus becomes a great ally to sound argument. School and college debating especially needs the element of humor, for the discussions are usually upon heavy subjects. The content of most debates is



a compact assembling of statistics that for many people mean downright dullness. He who can lighten the serious and thoughtful passages with spontaneous wit has a great advantage.

How can a debater who has *no humor* acquire that quality? The answer is that every student, as well as practically every other human being, does possess a sense of the comic. The spirit needs only release. What are the elements of the comic?

Humor consists in stating the incongruous. Every debater will be on the alert to detect these incongruities. He will make swift descents from the solemn to the trivial, from the serious and straightforward to the satirical and ironic, from premise, apparently accepted, to conclusion which turns out to be an example of *reductio ad absurdum*. He will refer humorously to himself, to the audience, or to his opponents. If the humor is normal and healthy, if the speaker has underlying seriousness and sincerity, if he has a reasonable degree of tact, he can be humorous without wrecking his cause; rather he will strengthen it immeasurably.

Humor in debate need not consist of a series of jokes. Anecdotes may be introduced, but they should be brief and appropriate. Neither should humor be a substitute for sound argument. Quaint asides, unexpected turns of language and ideas, sharp reply to thrusts, are the stuff of the debater's wit.

5. *Self-confidence*. The audience will have far more respect for that speaker who has the courage of his convictions — who is sure of his facts and his position. No audience will develop enthusiasm for the debater whose voice has the note of uncertainty or query, or who seems to be apologizing for his ideas. For a debater to rise in the face of a strong attack and to proceed calmly, sure of his position, self-poised, self-controlled, will engender that same spirit in the attitude of the listeners. It is a quality which excludes loss of temper, nervous excitement, cloudy thinking. To have this confidence the speaker must of course be well prepared. Only a mastery of every fact and only previous experience in talking over these points will give that ring of confidence and that platform poise essential to the good impression.

6. *Freedom from Pugnacity.* Since a debate is an intellectual combat, the participants sometimes become heated and feel that they must literally exemplify the tactics of the prize fight or the medieval tournament. A degree of unpleasant aggressiveness sounds in every line and furnishes the basis of every argument. The attacks are touched by such expressions as "Our opponents would have you believe," "The gentlemen have failed utterly to establish their contentions." The whole attitude reflects a determination to destroy the opponent utterly. And many a member of the audience may feel that such aggressiveness amounts to egotistic arrogance. Judges and audiences have often voted down a good debater solely because he set out to whip all who stood in his way.

7. *Modesty.* Far more effective is the quality of modesty. School and college debaters sometimes develop egotism. Something about the type of discussion, the firmness with which convictions must be held, develops that quality. And the rewards of the game sometimes produce that result, just as occasionally athletes acquire conceit. School debaters, in particular on winning teams, become heroes to parents and community — a dangerous situation indeed. The most effective speakers, nevertheless, have a natural modesty. No superciliousness, strut, or pompousness may be detected. Proper cultivation of modesty is a matter not of dissembling, or of cultivating a sense of inferiority, but rather a matter of understanding one's limitations in life and of giving all things their proper value. The boastful and vain speaker needs direct criticism, and sometimes severe joltings, before he has this almost fatal handicap removed. Do not parade your knowledge. Don't insinuate that you have made a clever point. Avoid apologies that will suggest that you are insincere.

8. *Courtesy.* He who is modest will have also good breeding. The spirit of courtesy is highly necessary, especially if the occasion be a genuine contest. Audiences will turn in disgust from the speaker who shows bad temper toward his opponents, who engages in ill-timed invective or insolence. Courtesy is necessary, not only toward the opponents but toward an audience.

## IX. SECURING ACTION

How shall the action of the audience be directed? The procedure, of course, will vary with the type of audience, the occasion, the attitude of the audience toward the speaker, and the subject. The action may be immediate: "Buy now," or "Vote for this bill." The action may be in the immediate future: "Vote on November 4 for my candidate." The situation may require merely intellectual assent: "You are invited to agree with the proposition that modern advertising is on the whole desirable economically and educationally," or "Our leading dramatist is Eugene O'Neill." Indirectly, of course, you will advertise, and you will attend O'Neill plays. Nevertheless, the character and method of the desired action should be stated in definite terms. The principle is one of offering the proper suggestion.

Suggestion may produce an automatic response to a stimulus or the acceptance of a proposition without deliberation. The approval is direct and immediate, apparently without motivation. When without reflection you yield to the command "Support Gallagher for mayor," you are governed entirely by suggestion. When you submit to the injunction "Support Gallagher" only after you have concluded, "With Gallagher as mayor, taxes will be reduced, or a municipal market will be established, or law will be better enforced," you are acting from reason or from expressed motives rather than from suggestion. Suggestion furnishes the case of an apparently incidental stimulus touching off "responses quite disproportionate to its inherent strength."<sup>1</sup> Argument, to be effective, will furnish, in addition to logical grounds for proof, statements which reënforce the ideas so that where sheer logic or obvious exhortation may fail, direct or indirect suggestion may succeed.

<sup>1</sup> J. M. O'Neill and A. T. Weaver, *The Elements of Speech*, p. 335, Longmans, Green & Co., 1926. See also E. B. Titchener, *A Textbook of Psychology*, p. 449, The Macmillan Company, 1910; W. D. Scott, *Psychology of Advertising*, p. 80, Small, Maynard & Co., 1921; William McDougall, *Social Psychology*, p. 97, John W. Luce & Company, 1921.

**A. Laws of Suggestion.** The laws of suggestion are those of sensation and imagery. These laws state that a stimulus will have a complete response unless interfered with by some counter stimulus. W. D. Scott has formulated the laws thus:

1. Every idea of an action will result in that action unless hindered by an impeding idea or physical impediment.
2. Every idea, concept, or conclusion which enters the mind is held as true unless hindered by some contradictory idea.<sup>1</sup>

**B. Methods of Suggestion.** In general, when inhibitions are avoided or removed, the use of suggestion is possible. Do not hurt your argument by fatal admissions or by the avoidance of ideas favorable to your cause. Equally important is it to remove inhibitions obviously in the minds of the hearers.

Positively, the touching off of any responses in conformity with the interests of the audience will contribute to the right action. Appeals to experience, to the fact that the thing suggested has already been accepted, or that authority approves it, will also impress the listener. Repetition is one of the most obvious means of suggestion. Imagery is another. Still another is that of the speaker's appealing personality and strong mentality. Uprightness, calmness, aggressiveness, earnestness, modesty, tact, dignity, humor, broadmindedness, and similar qualities impress and lend great weight to the argument. The use of the impulse to imitate is still another means. Arousing vivid mental pictures of the audience engaged in the action desired will tend to lead them to assume the position suggested.

At times contrasuggestion is effective, by which is meant the reaction to suggestion in what is supposed to be the opposite way to that intended. "Don't support the team," or "Stay away from the game," or "Don't interest yourself in this problem" will sometimes have just the opposite effect. Contrasuggestion is often applied to those people who desire distinction or who are

<sup>1</sup> W. D. Scott, *Influencing Men in Business*, p. 37. The Ronald Press Company, 1911.

determined to resist the pressure of public opinion. Speech symbols, of course, have a profound suggestive force either in establishing a tendency to respond to an idea or in touching off the final response.

As a student of debate you will follow the beaten path of genuine argument. You will, however, note the power and character of suggestion and within limits will apply the principles referred to in the paragraphs above.

**C. The Psychological Crowd.** The effect of suggestion may be greatly increased if the hearer can feel the weight of "social pressure," or organized public opinion. Especially powerful is the suggestion exerted by the psychological crowd, a group actuated by a common purpose or a common point of view or a common emotion, an audience responding in a uniform way to a common stimulus.

1. *Characteristics.* The psychological crowd, in contrast to the heterogeneous crowd, has a "crowd mind." This crowd mind "includes the general qualities of personality which are our common racial inheritance." It has, probably, more courage, more fear, more humor, more sense of tragedy, more awe, more disposition to abandon politeness or sense of personal responsibility, although concerning some of these alleged characteristics opinions vary. In general, the crowd substitutes a common emotion for individual disposition to deliberation. If the group as a unit is cheering madly for a certain candidate, it is natural for one individual who has been opposed to this candidate to yield to the pull of those about him.

2. *Methods of Creating a Psychological Crowd.* The first business of the debater is to convince through argument. The creation of the psychological crowd and the influencing of that crowd are justifiable only when the end sought and the means used are ethically sound. If united action is the goal, if deliberation has been properly directed, then the appeal to the crowd mind is clearly worth while. How shall the debater proceed to exert mass suggestion? Numbers count; the larger crowd is evidently more



readily molded into an emotional unit than is the small one. Compactness is highly desirable. If possible, elbows literally and figuratively should touch. The use of humor and other stimuli will help to unify the individuals; so will uniformity in dress, the use of music, applause, or other demonstrations that tend to remove aloofness and hostility and to solidify the group. Not always is the crowd noisy. The speaker's personality or the content of his speech, especially if the speech employs the principle of suspense, may lead the audience to become hushed and expectant. That moment, experienced at times by every effective speaker, marks an instant, at least, when the crowd fusion is complete. Such moments every debater will attempt to realize, in the effort to convince and persuade the group to adopt what is presumably a wise course.<sup>1</sup>

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Explain what is meant by persuasion, belief, conviction.
2. Define attention, emotion.
3. Discuss the chief motives which influence audiences. *None*
4. Give a five-minute speech on one of the following topics: (1) tact, (2) sincerity, (3) earnestness, (4) humor, (5) self-confidence, (6) the spirit of pugnacity, (7) modesty, (8) courtesy. *Abstract topics*
5. Discuss imagination in argument.
6. Explain suggestion in argument.
7. Bring to class one example, taken from a printed debate or speech, of an appeal to each of the following: (1) profit, (2) necessity, (3) duty, (4) justice, (5) loyalty, (6) indignation. *Topics to select from*
8. Bring to class one example of each of the following types of imagery: (1) sound, (2) sight, (3) taste, (4) odor, (5) heat, (6) movement. *Imagery*

<sup>1</sup> J. A. Winans, *Public Speaking* (Revised Edition), pp. 230-244. The Century Co., 1917. C. H. Woolbert, *Fundamentals of Speech* (Revised Edition), pp. 41-55. Harper & Brothers, 1927.

9. Analyze according to effectiveness of factors of (1) getting attention, (2) impressing through organization and arrangement, (3) convincing through arguments, (4) persuading through motivating material, (5) securing action, each of the following speeches: Alexis Carrel's "The Mystery of Death," *Vital Speeches* (January, 1936), Vol. II, pp. 1-8. Rexford Tugwell's "The Progressive Task Today and Tomorrow," *Vital Speeches* (January, 1936), Vol. II, pp. 31-44. Max McConn's "The Dilemma of Democratic Education," *Vital Speeches* (February, 1936), Vol. II, pp. 32-42.

#### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- ALLPORT, F. H. *Social Psychology*, pp. 84-99, 292-319. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1924.
- HOLLINGWORTH, H. L. *The Psychology of the Audience*. American Book Company, 1935. (See also the Bibliography.)
- MCDougALL, WILLIAM. *The Group Mind*, pp. 31-66. G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1920.
- MARTIN, E. D. *The Behavior of Crowds*, pp. 14-50. Harper & Brothers, 1920.
- SMITH, STEVENSON, and GUTHRIE, E. R. *General Psychology in Terms of Behavior*, pp. 220-243. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1921.

## CHAPTER XIII

### DEVELOPMENT OF THE SPEECH

I. THREE METHODS OF COMPOSITION. II. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN ORAL AND WRITTEN DISCOURSE. III. THE USE OF THE BRIEF. IV. WRITING AND REWRITING. V. SUGGESTIONS FOR COMPOSITION OF THE DEBATE AS A WHOLE. VI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INTRODUCTION. VII. COMPOSITION OF THE DISCUSSION PROPER. VIII. COMPOSITION OF THE CONCLUSION. IX. SENTENCE STRUCTURE. X. LANGUAGE

#### I. THREE METHODS OF COMPOSITION

You may compose your speech according to one of three methods: oral composition before delivery, oral composition at the time of final presentation, or written composition.

**A. Oral Composition before Delivery.** According to the first method you will draft a few notes from your brief. With these before you, you will rehearse the debate until the ideas or even the exact words take definite form in your mind. This process is in effect the composition of a number of speeches, for it is evident that each rehearsal will yield a speech more or less different from those that precede. Whether composition of this type is effective will depend partly upon the definiteness with which the outline, or brief, has been worked out, partly upon the thoroughness with which the oral rehearsals are conducted, and partly upon the composer's previous training in oral and written English.

**B. Oral Composition at the Time of Final Presentation.** Oral composition that is done only as part of the final presentation has the same advantages as oral composition prior to delivery: it develops a colloquial style usually associated with the most satisfactory form of popular address. The oral method, however, too often develops a speech which is discursive, thin in thought,

superficial, mechanical, and repetitious in expression. He who waits until the moment of delivery itself is usually guilty of all the compositional faults identified with impromptu speaking. Only he who by training and temperament has wide command of the English language and ability to think with clear penetration should resort to this method. Woodrow Wilson in his later political campaigns, especially in his Western trip supporting the League of Nations in 1919, was able to compose in this way with skill. His speeches, many of them extemporaneous, have the finish of carefully prepared manuscripts.

**C. Written Composition.** Shall you, then, write your speeches before delivery? Usually you should do so. Only thus will you develop the relevancy, the force, and especially the compactness which seem essential in debate. Only thus will you be able to clarify, simplify, and express those finer shades of meaning which characterize the superior debate. "But," it may be objected, "to speak of a written debate is to misuse terms, for a genuine debate is filled with rebuttal and other impromptu elements that can never be fully prepared beforehand." Such criticism is sound. Written debates are dangerous; for the composer, even in the heat of the contest, may rely too much upon his manuscript or his memory. The result will be stiffness, a literary rather than an oral style, a general failure to adapt the argument to the audience and to the contentions advanced by opposing speakers. Nevertheless if you are to master the art of debating, you must write and rewrite arguments. Let us hasten to add that practice in actual debating must receive an equal amount of attention. The writing must be freely supplemented by oral practice. The result will be an oral style, as distinct from a written or literary style.

## II. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN ORAL AND WRITTEN DISCOURSE

How, then, do oral and written discourse differ? Oral discourse is like conversation — direct, simple, lively. Pedantry and sentimentality are absent. Sentences are short and direct. The chief

ideas stand out clearly and boldly, perhaps somewhat mechanically. The general movement is more irregular than in written style, more abrupt, because the speaker substitutes significant gesture for many a word. Imperative and exclamatory sentences are more numerous, because the emotional coloring is more pronounced. Illustrations, examples, swift figures of speech, the use of iteration, and other devices to impress are more necessary than in written discourse.

Compare the following examples of style.<sup>1</sup> The first speech was written carefully beforehand and delivered as written; the second speech was composed chiefly on the spur of the occasion. In the latter example, good of its kind, you will notice the characteristic elements of the oral style.

### THE FRAME OF MIND

ROSCOE POUND

MY LORD, LADIES, AND GENTLEMEN: It has been said many times today, and will be said many times in the next few days, that we are here by the token of a common blood, a common speech, common political institutions, and a common law. Yet, since Americans parted politically with the Mother Country one hundred and fifty years ago, on our side of the water that common blood has been much diluted, and that common speech, one might say, has been unconventionalized, at least in America. Those common political institutions had already begun to diverge before the Revolution. The events of 1688 made the Legislature supreme in England, but our colonial polity led us in our constitutions to preserve the institutions of Tudor and Stuart England, with a co-equal legislative, executive and judicial, governing together if they could, governing in spite of each other if they must. So that the enduring point has been the common law, and no phenomenon, I suppose, in our national life has been so marked as the persistence and vitality of that common law. Only historians know that the custom of Paris was once law in Wisconsin, Illinois, and Michigan. Only

<sup>1</sup> H. D. Lindgren, *Modern Speeches*, pp. 114-116, 490-491. F. S. Crofts & Co., 1926. Used with the permission of the authors.



historians realize that over the great dominion of the Louisiana purchase the Roman Law once obtained, at least in theory. In the domain which we obtained from Mexico only a few disappearing curiosities in the law of property remain to show that that was once the domain of another system. Yet, if a stranger were to ask us exactly in what this unity of law consists I suspect that we should be hard put to it to convince him. The books on which that law was based — Coke's *Institutes* and Blackstone's *Commentaries* — have ceased to be studied, I suspect, on either side of the water. Scarcely a vestige of the old, formal, over-refined procedure and the feudal land law as found in Blackstone obtain on the other side of the water. The part of Coke's *Institutes* which is still living with us in our decisions upon our bills of rights ceased to be of importance in England, at least so far as legislation was concerned, with the sovereignty of Parliament after 1688. It is true there are a few American jurisdictions where we still crave *oyer*, where replications *de injuria* are filed, and where new assignments flourish; but nearly everywhere that sort of learning is as dead as it has been in England since 1873. To show you how far we have diverged in the matter of property, it is enough to say that in England today lands devolve upon the personal representative, and in at least one American jurisdiction personal property devolves upon the heir. A great mass of new subjects have arisen for which one would look in vain in the pages of Blackstone or of Coke, and in those subjects frequently the diversity is as notable as the similarity. Yet, out of all that diversity and all that similarity, there are three points that stand out. In England and in America the law is ascertained, and the law is developed judicially and professionally, whereas in the rest of the world it is ascertained by legislation and developed academically. In England and the United States we have a traditional art of deciding cases on the basis of the recorded judicial experience of the past, whereas in the rest of the world cases are decided by a technique of applying written texts. But, most of all, in England and in the United States we look at questions judicially, whereas in the rest of the world they are looked at, if I may say so, administratively; and behind those three points I venture to think is a common frame of mind, a frame of mind which we have inherited from the Middle Ages, which thinks of law as something not made, but found, and thinks of the quest for law as a quest for the justice and truth of the Creator. That is the frame of mind which led the judges in the Middle Ages to tell

Edward III that, though he could pardon an offender under his Great Seal as King of England, he could not write a private letter as Edward Plantagenet to the sheriff and interfere with the due course of justice. It is that frame of mind which led the judges of Henry VII, when Parliament enacted a statute that derogated from what were then regarded as the fundamentals of the social order, to say that it was "impertinent to be observed." It was that frame of mind that led the judges to say to James I that he could not sit upon the Bench and decide in person cases affecting the fortune or inheritance of his subjects. It is that frame of mind that has led courts in the United States within a generation to remind sovereign legislatures and sovereign peoples that they, too, rule under God and the law. In that frame of mind we have something which is enduring while law books become obsolete and statutes are repealed — something permanent and unrepeatable. I say to you that in that frame of mind we have a ground of unity beside which treaties, covenants, and alliances will prove but fleeting.

#### ADDRESS BEFORE THE NEW YORK LEAGUE OF WOMEN VOTERS

ALFRED E. SMITH

MADAM CHAIRMAN, MEMBERS AND GUESTS OF THE LEAGUE OF WOMEN VOTERS: I have repeatedly said that the State of New York to a certain extent is the victim of its own growth, and I think I can demonstrate to the satisfaction of any person who is willing to be convinced about it, unless for his own peculiar reason he has his mind made up to the contrary, that the State with its ten million people today is trying to lumber along in the best possible fashion it can with a form of government and a structure of government restrained by a constitutional provision that was framed when it was like a small child.

As I told an audience in Yonkers, it was like a full-grown man trying to put on his first communion suit. It can't be done.

Now what do we mean by the reorganization of the state government? We mean that the structure of the government itself must be reorganized; that it must be simplified; that it must be brought up to date; that it must be made responsive to up-to-date conditions. If anybody subscribes to that theory, let him find fault, if they want to find fault, with the manner and method in which we try to do it.

This is not a new theory or a new idea. Long before the women voted, they heard of this under what was known as the "short ballot." The short ballot never admitted of any real argument unless somebody can give us a good reason why the people of the State of New York should elect an engineer. Still they go through the solemn process every two years of electing a State Engineer and they pay him about half the salary that is paid to the other engineers that the Governor is obliged to appoint.

Why should the State elect a State Treasurer? He never has a dollar. He goes through the empty formality of writing his name on a check to indicate that the check went through his office; performs minor clerical services for the State, and that is all. Still we solemnly enter the booth every two years and with all the other pressing thoughts of government on our minds, we have to make a selection as to who ought to perform this clerical service, to be known as our State Treasurer.

Why should we elect the Secretary of State? He countersigns papers that come from the governor's office and he issues certificates of incorporation of companies that desire to incorporate under the laws of the State of New York — a purely clerical position. Still we have been going through the performance here for years and years of erecting around us every two years this group of elected State officers. And remember when I speak here tonight I have no reference to any particular secretary or any particular treasurer, or any particular comptroller; I am talking about the history of the State back over a period of twenty years. There never was one of them who came to Albany that didn't think he ought to be the Governor. It was just an accident that in the convention he was named a little bit later than the Governor.

### III. THE USE OF THE BRIEF

Since the brief is a formal statement, made up of a complete list of arguments and a complete array of evidence, the resulting composition will in many particulars differ from the outline. Ideas will be changed about or omitted, arguments and evidence will be selected from the storehouse (brief), and persuasive elements freely added.

## IV. WRITING AND REWRITING

Writing debates is like writing stories or other creative compositions. The first draft may be only the starting point in composition. Skillful college debaters have developed in platform skill largely because they have previously struggled over many a manuscript. Debaters under my observation have rewritten a speech as many as eight or nine times. Only by accepting the work of composition as a serious step in preparation, to be done thoroughly and painstakingly, can you hope to produce a debate worthy of yourself and your audience.

V. SUGGESTIONS FOR COMPOSITION OF THE DEBATE  
AS A WHOLE

As the brief or outline is relevant, so should the speech itself be. Avoid those digressions and the introduction of trivial ideas that divert attention from the main points.

**A. Unity.** Preserve also a unity of tone. Debaters often attempt a curious blending of the dignified style with undue informality, frequently in the form of humor. Avoid the discordant notes and the unexpected change of level which the audience pronounces "artificial."

**B. Order.** Arrange the ideas in the order that will be the clearest to the audience. This order may be chronological, or from the simple to the complex, from cause to effect, from the less important to the more important, from the abstract to the concrete. Unite the paragraphs and the larger divisions of the speech by means of connective words, phrases, sentences. Link together the larger divisions by announcing each division and by the frequent use of summaries. Apply also the principle of variety. Mix the inductive method with the deductive.

**C. Force.** Consider also the principle of force. Each idea should have that amount of space and that position which its importance indicates. Secondary ideas may be dismissed in a

few words; more significant arguments need more space and should be placed first or last. The final position, of course, is reserved for the most impressive idea.

**D. Interest.** Observe likewise the principle of interest. Use freely illustration, humor, narrative style, direct dialogue, and the other devices that hold attention (interest). In general, the writer-debater should visualize clearly an audience — not a hard thing for the average college speaker who appears only before a college audience — and construct the speech so as to impress that audience.

## VI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INTRODUCTION

The work of writing will be more systematically managed if you regard the composition as divided after the Aristotelian plan of Introduction, Discussion Proper, and Conclusion, and if you regard each of these sections as a complete composition in itself. The purpose of the Introduction is to attract favorable attention and interest, and to give the necessary preliminary information. Cicero said that the purpose of an introduction is *reddere auditores benevolos, attentos, dociles*, “to render the hearers well disposed toward the speaker, attentive, and open-minded.” Negatively the aim is to avoid arousing inhibitions, as is often done when the note of denunciation or belligerency is sounded at the outset. Positively the material should be so selected and expressed as to place speaker and audience upon common ground and keep them there. The principle of persuasion should govern the method of composition. The Introduction should serve as a true approach to the Argument Proper.

Several types of introduction may be used to challenge attention and to serve as a proper approach.

**A. Personal Introduction.** Begin with a personal introduction in which you appeal for sympathy or confidence, for fair play, sense of duty, or responsibility, or in which you compliment your audience. Because reference to yourself may seem unduly laudatory or insincere, or because your reference to your audience may



likewise seem too calculated, you must use with extreme caution this form of approach. Consider the direct simplicity of the opening of Herbert Hoover's speech on "After-War Questions," an approach likely to be acceptable because of the speaker's wartime record :

CAPTAIN FREDERICKS, MY FRIENDS : I am unable to make adequate reply to the warm, affectionate statements of your chairman, or adequate appreciation of the heartiness or warmth of your reception. I have never been able to give an expression from the heart that I feel should come to you in return for so great a tribute. It has indeed been my duty, my part of service as an American citizen, to represent the American people in great services to children, and in all those services I have but represented the great heart of America.

I had thought today to talk to you on the general economic situation in which we find ourselves ; upon some of the problems that we must meet as a government and as men ; upon some of the remedies that we must find ; and upon some of the problems for which we have no remedy and yet a remedy must be found.<sup>1</sup>

Note the vigor of the following introduction to O. H. Kahn's speech on "The New York Stock Exchange and Public Opinion," the personal defense, and the element of suspense created by the suggestion of "a few of these phantom questions and answers" :

A few weeks ago I went to Washington to contradict, as a voluntary witness before a committee of Congress, under the solemn obligation of my oath, a gross and wanton calumny which, based upon nothing but anonymous and irresponsible gossip, has been uttered regarding my name.

On my way between New York and Washington, thinking that once on the stand I might possibly be asked a number of questions more or less within the general scope of the Committee's inquiry, I indulged in a little mental exercise by putting myself through an imaginary examination.

With your permission, I will state a few of these phantom questions and answers : . . .<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. IV, p. 212. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 230.

More personal, with its narrative and touch of humor, is the following most impressive approach to Lady Astor's "Women in Politics," given in the Town Hall, New York, April 9, 1922:

I know that this welcome has nothing to do with me. Ever since I entered the "Mother of Parliaments" I realized that I ceased to be a person and became a symbol. The safe thing about being a symbol is this — you realize that you of yourself can do nothing; what you symbolize gives you courage and strength and should give you wisdom. I certainly have been given courage and strength, and I won't say too much about wisdom.

My entrance into the House of Commons was not, as some thought, in the nature of a revolution. It was an evolution. It is rather interesting how it came about. My husband was the one who started me off on this downward path — from the fireside to the public life. If I have helped the cause of women, he is the one to thank, not me. He is a strange and remarkable man.<sup>1</sup>

**B. Striking Question.** Begin with a striking question. William J. Bryan begins his address on "The Value of an Ideal" by raising questions: "What is the value of an ideal? Have you ever attempted to estimate its worth? Have you ever tried to measure its value in dollars and cents?"<sup>2</sup>

**C. Narrative or Dramatic Method.** Use the narrative or dramatic method. It gives vividness and emotional power to the speech. A student argument on flood control through conservation and similar measures began in this way:

One evening last week a thousand residents of Melville, Louisiana, went serenely to bed. At daybreak the next morning the levee along the Atchafalaya gave way. Soon every street in Melville was a roaring torrent.

**D. Figures of Speech.** Another opening that appeals to the imagination is that which introduces a figure of speech. Notice

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VII, p. 36. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Selected Speeches of William Jennings Bryan*, Vol. II, p. 239. Funk & Wagnalls Company, New York, 1911.

the vividness of the following introduction in which publicity is described positively and negatively by aid of striking metaphors :

Publicity must not be thought of, as it is by a good many, as a sort of umbrella to protect you against the rain of an unpleasant public opinion. Publicity must not be regarded as a bandage to cover up a sore and enable you to get along pretty well with the real trouble still there. Publicity must, if your trouble is to be cured, be considered rather an antiseptic which shall cleanse the very source of the trouble, and reveal it to the doctor, which is the public. To change the metaphor again, publicity must not be thought of as a cloak to look well on the outside of a body deformed and diseased within. It must be looked on as rather a social X-ray which shall reveal the bone and the tissue, even the very heart of the body itself. No one must attempt to adopt publicity or make use of it for his benefit unless he is prepared to take all the consequences.<sup>1</sup>

**E. Significant Quotation.** Begin with a significant quotation. Will H. Hays began a speech on teamwork as follows :

In his inaugural address on March 4th, President Harding said : "Service is the supreme commitment of life. I would rejoice to proclaim the Era of the Golden Rule and crown it with the autocracy of service."<sup>2</sup>

J. G. Jones began a speech on "Vision and Purpose" thus :

More than two thousand years ago King Solomon (considered one of the wisest men of the ages) enunciated a principle which history through all the passing centuries has firmly established, "Where there is no vision, the people perish."<sup>3</sup>

N. D. Hillis, defending the pulpit in modern life, began as follows :

Having lingered long in foreign climes and countries, Plutarch returned home to affirm that he found cities without walls, without furniture, without coin or kings ; peoples who knew not the forum, the theatre, or gymnasium ; "but," added the traveler, "there never was, nor shall there ever be, a city without temple, church, or chapel."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. IV, p. 288. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 187.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* p. 224.

<sup>4</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VI, p. 249. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

**F. Reference to the Occasion.** Refer to the importance of the occasion or to the significance of the surroundings. A plea for a closer alliance between England and America was introduced by reference to the day :

We are met here today in the City of Westminster, to celebrate the 142d anniversary of American Independence. We are also met as brothers-in-arms, passing together through a period of exceptional anxiety and suffering; therefore, we seek to draw from the past history of our race inspiration and encouragement which will cheer our hearts and fortify and purify our resolution and our comradeship.<sup>1</sup>

Oscar S. Straus began a discussion of the Jews in the United States as follows :

"Few greater calamities," says Lecky, "can befall a nation than to cut herself off, as France did in her great revolution, from all vital connection with her past." Here in this historical hall [Faneuil Hall, Boston] dedicated by that great commoner, James Otis, as "the Cradle of Liberty," were held town meetings throbbing with the nascent principles of democracy. Herein also, where a decade later Samuel Adams and Joseph Warren first organized resistance to arbitrary government, it is most fitting and proper to celebrate an historical event, insignificant in itself, yet whose threads, dyed in the blood of martyrs for soul liberty, find a fitting place in the composite fabric of our continent's history and in the development of our civil and religious liberties.<sup>2</sup>

**G. Statement of Theme.** The approach may also be made by a statement of the theme (or proposition) or by the successive steps of analysis for finding issues: (1) statement of immediate interest, (2) history, (3) definitions, (4) clash of opinion, or stating the issues.

Charles W. Eliot, in discussing the "Uses of Education for Business," began by an elaborate definition: "Before we can talk together to advantage about the value of education in business, we ought to come to a common understanding about the sort of

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VII, p. 105. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 374.

education we mean and the sort of business.”<sup>1</sup> Then succeeds an explanation of terms.

David Starr Jordan introduced his address on the higher education of women by stating the issues :

The subject of the higher training of young women may resolve itself into three questions :

1. Shall a girl receive a college education?
2. Shall she receive the same kind of college education as a boy?
3. Shall she be educated in the same college? <sup>2</sup>

Theodore Roosevelt opened his political address in Carnegie Hall, New York, in 1912, by stating the issues :

The great fundamental issue now before the Republican party and before our people can be stated briefly. It is : Are the American people fit to govern themselves, to rule themselves, to control themselves? I believe they are. My opponents do not. I believe in the right of the people to rule. I believe the majority of the plain people of the United States will, day in and day out, make fewer mistakes in governing themselves than any small class or body of men, no matter what their training, will make in trying to govern them. I believe, again, that the American people are, on the whole, capable of self-control and learning by their mistakes. Our opponents pay loyalty to this doctrine ; but they show their real beliefs by the way in which they champion every device to make the nominal rule of the people a sham.<sup>3</sup>

**H. Steps of Analysis.** If you are composing the Introduction of a formal forensic (by which is meant a complete debate) or the opening speech of a debate, you will include most of the steps discussed under analysis. Each of these steps, it goes without saying, should be not an end but a means. The history, for example, need not refer to every root of an institution in the period before the Christian Era. This step means the selection of those

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. IV, p. 94. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VI, p. 295. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. X, p. 408. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.



items that relate most strikingly to the immediate discussion. Again, the definition of terms should be more than a dry and severely technical description. Rather it should be brief, popular, interesting, and if possible a general explanation, personal rather than academic. The conflict of opinion, like the history and definitions, should be free from the technical, mechanical, or lifeless style usually present when the brief is closely followed. A general comparison of the rival points of view rather than a catalogue of arguments on each side will be sufficient. The issues, however, should be clearly, even mechanically, stated. The composer must not run the risk of having the audience fail to understand these pivotal questions.

**I. Transitional Introduction.** For speakers who follow the first affirmative a transitional Introduction is often desirable. Such approach (1) makes an assumption based upon previous remarks, (2) refers to a preceding speaker, (3) states an argument to be refuted, or (4) summarizes what has preceded. Representative C. F. Crisp began the closing speech in the House of Representatives in support of the Wilson tariff by making assumptions:

I assume that the cause of protection has no more able advocate than the gentleman from Maine. I assume that the argument for protection can be put in no more alluring form than that to which we have listened today. So assuming, I shall ask you calmly and dispassionately to examine with me that argument, to see upon what it is based, and then I shall invoke the unprejudiced judgment of this House as to whether the cause attempted to be sustained by the gentleman from Maine has been sustained or can be before any tribunal where the voice of reason is heard or the sense of justice is felt.<sup>1</sup>

An Oxford speaker in an American college debate hurried at once into his discussion with the following sentence: "I will try to show how much I appreciate the honor that has been accorded to me and my associates from Oxford by going straight on with the debate where it has been left by the last speaker."

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. X, p. 318. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

## VII. COMPOSITION OF THE DISCUSSION PROPER

Each issue will be developed as a separate and complete argument, often with its own approach or topic ideas, its discussion, and its summary or enforcement. Here the principle of clearness needs application. Likewise the principles of identifying beliefs and of keeping on common ground with the audience must be applied at every step in the writing. Remember that in writing as in actual delivery fixed beliefs can scarcely be changed — at least in a single speech! Therefore you will, as far as possible, identify with the fixed opinions of the audience the proposition which you wish them to accept. This point of view will lead your style to take on a persuasive oral quality characteristic of your platform style. Arguments will be advanced inductively or deductively as the occasion suggests. Now you will proceed boldly, now cautiously, now admitting, now expounding, always trying to keep on common ground and yet always advancing to your goal of securing the complete response.

In the development of the argument specific methods should be kept in mind.

1. *Explanatory Materials.* Although analysis belongs primarily to the Introduction, it is obvious that such materials also find a place throughout the Discussion Proper. These elements which explain and supplement the purely logical statements are composed of (1) definitions; (2) general explanations; (3) repetition for clearness and force; (4) summaries; (5) topic propositions.

2. *Argumentative Materials.* The specific types of argument (whether you are engaged in constructive discussion or in refutation) will be used, including (1) argument by specific instance; (2) by analogy; (3) by causal relation; and (4) by authority.

3. *Persuasive Materials.* The well-developed argument invariably includes a considerable amount of motivating material, designed to embellish, reënforce, apply, and interpret these expository and argumentative or "explicit" materials in such way as further to establish belief and lead to action. This material

will be composed of (1) rhetorical questions ; (2) figures of speech ; (3) imperative and exclamatory sentences ; (4) parallelism ; (5) analogies ; (6) euphony ; (7) rhetorical rhythm.

### VIII. COMPOSITION OF THE CONCLUSION

Since the Conclusion marks the true climax of the speech, establishing fully the grounds for accepting the argument, giving the audience once and for all the final impression of the speech and speaker, it is highly important that this section be intelligently planned. Sufficient but not too much space (or time) should be allowed for an adequate conclusion. Many school and college debaters time their speeches poorly and leave the platform with the final part of the speech unsaid. Other public speakers conclude and reconclude. In writing your speech you have the simple problem of calculating the probable number of words at your disposal and apportioning the number given to each general division. A speech of ten minutes would represent some twelve hundred words. Not more than two hundred would be reserved for the Conclusion and hardly that number for the Introduction, unless the debate should be that of a first affirmative, in which instance three or four hundred words would perhaps be reserved for the analysis of the question. In oral composition before the public occasion you will watch and check the distribution of your time and words. Whether the Conclusion be written or oral, it should be painstakingly prepared so that it forms a true climax to all that precedes.

**A. Simplicity and the Conclusion.** Public speakers of earlier generations often made the Conclusion a genuine peroration, in which lofty terms and sentiments were uttered in tones and words that were highly artificial. The contemporary speaker, especially the debater, cultivates sincerity and simplicity in the Conclusion as in other sections of his argument.

**B. Methods of Developing the Conclusion.** Since the purpose of the Conclusion is to make clear what has been stated, or to

reënforce the argument, or to insure the desired emotional response from the audience, the content will consist of a summary, or a vivid picturing of the whole problem from an emotional and imaginative angle, or an appeal reënforced by illustration, quotation, or other rhetorical device.

1. *Summary.* Make the Conclusion a summary. This may be a review of both affirmative and negative arguments, or a recapitulation of one's own case, or a summary of both one's own case and that which will be presently discussed by one's colleagues.

The following Conclusion to a student debate on the entrance of the United States into the World Court is a simple summary:

In conclusion, we have observed the organization of the court, the ability of its judges, its standards and jurisdiction, and the general support given it. These facts show clearly that the court provides the legal means of settlement of international disputes. We shall later consider in detail the actual working of the court. We have discussed two main topics in this speech: first, we have outlined the need which the world has for the Permanent Court of International Justice; and we have pointed out that this court provides the actual means of settlement.

The greatest weakness in the Conclusions of such debates is that the final summaries are mechanical echoes of the brief — clear, but deadlly dull. Such phrases as the following have been used until they have lost their effectiveness: "since we have proved," "therefore we maintain," "let us now sum up the case on both sides," "to summarize briefly the case for the affirmative," "we believe that we have proved," "I shall detain you but a moment longer," "let us see what we have proved," "one word more and I am done."

2. *Series of Questions.* End the speech with a series of questions put to the audience or to a succeeding speaker. This device usually looks forward to a later speech by the questioner. This final questioning is worth while only if the framer knows his ground. H. J. Allen, in a joint debate with Samuel Gompers

concerning the virtues of the Kansas industrial-disputes act, closed his speech thus :

In the moment that remains I should like most respectfully to ask President Gompers if he will answer this question :

When a dispute between capital and labor brings on a strike affecting the production and distribution of the necessities of life, thus threatening the public peace and the impairing of public health, has the public any rights in such a controversy, or is it a private war between capital and labor?

If you answer this question in the affirmative, Mr. Gompers, how would you protect the rights of the public?

And in addition, I wish him to define for us if he will, who had the divine right to forbid the switchmen to strike in their outlaw strike? Who controls the divine right to quit work? <sup>1</sup>

Such questions are often cleverly worded summaries of the preceding discussion, as in the case above.

3. *Suggesting a Solution.* Sometimes conclude the speech by suggesting but not proving a solution. The statement would be, of course, subject to all the criticism of any other unproved proposition, and is justifiable only when the speaker has already established his case fully. W. W. Atterbury, in discussing the proposition that "the public can secure the railroad service it wants," concluded :

In my judgment, the solution is a simple one but it requires your whole-hearted coöperation and that of every other citizen.

a. Enable the railroads to get on their feet financially, to restore their credit, and bring their property up to a state of development sufficient to meet the growing needs of the country.

b. Permit the railroad officers to run their railroad business without being manacled by a mass of restrictions and unnecessary regulations.

c. Back up the railroad officers in their efforts to cut down the cost of transportation, and make their service responsive to the business needs of the country.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VII, p. 21. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. IV, p. 8. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.



4. *Reënforcing the Argument by Rephrasing the Main Ideas in Dignified and Different Terms.* Note the Conclusion to a student speech in defense of the liberal type of college training :

True education is not to be gained by the acquirement of mere technical skill. Stressing of superficial accomplishments, disregard of genius, will inevitably have as its consequence degeneration and decay. If the instructional system is to retain its influence, if the stagnation which threatens is not to overcome us, we must combine with our modern learning the stalwart virtues of a former age. Our aim must be the development not of characterless machines, but of men ; our aspiration not the accumulation of daily bread, but the discovery of truth and beauty. Upon the realization of these desires, the hard monotony of the present age will give place to an existence of rich and varied experiences. Once again, the colleges will teach men how to live.

5. *Reference to Occasion.* Congratulate the audience upon the occasion and the other speakers upon their addresses. The rule is always: Don't overdo it. And don't repeat such felicitations if they have already been given. The last American speaker in a debate between Oxford and an American university said in conclusion :

But our argument would not be complete should we fail to add our most convincing point this evening : that we appreciate more than words can tell the opportunity of debating with representatives of the most venerable university in the world. We hope that one result of this debate has been the bringing together into closer union of Anglo-Saxon friendship, not only the members of these two universities, but also the people of the two English-speaking nations. Such discussions and meetings will bring to these nations a friendship which will mean far more than any political alliance Europe and the whole world have ever known.

6. *Appeal for Favorable Decision.* Appeal to your audience for a favorable decision on your proposition. Make the appeal direct, simple, brief, spontaneous. Don't overdo it. An Oxford speaker ended his fifteen-minute speech thus :

We have been debating a great international question of the highest importance, and I therefore say to you as I sit down that I hope you will not think this vote which is to be taken is unimportant. Remember

that might is not always right and it is my duty and your duty to each other and to the world to see that the peace of the world is not lost forever in a forest of bayonets shutting off the sun.

7. *Personal Ending.* Occasionally use the personal ending. It is usually effective only in the mouth of some individual whose motives have been questioned. At its best the persuasive value of the personal conclusion is tremendous, as in Webster's speech before the Supreme Court in the Dartmouth College case. Lloyd George on a number of occasions resorted to this method with great effect. Note the final words in his defense of the budget, delivered at Limehouse, London, 1909:

Why should I put burdens on the people? I was brought up amongst them. I know their trials; and God forbid that I should add one grain of trouble to the anxiety which they bear with such patience and fortitude. When the Prime Minister did me the honor of inviting me to take charge of the National Exchequer at a time of great difficulty, I made up my mind in framing the Budget which was in front of me, that at any rate no cupboard should be bared, no lot should be harder to bear. By that test I challenge them to judge the Budget.<sup>1</sup>

8. *Quotation, Anecdote, Striking Statement.* End with a quotation, anecdote, or striking statement. Make the material relevant and condense it. Notice the brisk narrative of the following conclusion to David Starr Jordan's address in defense of the higher education of women:

Final question: Does not coeducation lead to marriage? Most certainly it does; and this fact needs not and cannot be denied. . . . It will be seen then that nearly all those who are graduates of coeducational colleges have married college friends. In most cases college men have chosen college women; and in all cases both men and women are thoroughly satisfied with the outcome of coeducation. It is part of the legitimate function of higher education to prepare women, as well as men, for happy and successful lives.

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. IX, p. 393. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

An Eastern professor, lately visiting a Western State university, asked one of the Seniors what he thought of the question of coeducation.

"I beg your pardon," said the student; "what question do you mean?"

"Why, coeducation," said the professor; "the education of women in colleges for men."

"Oh," said the student; "coeducation is not a question here."

And he was right. Coeducation is never a question where it has been fairly tried.<sup>1</sup>

In general, the Conclusion must fit the audience. Sometimes it is preferable to frame the closing remarks only when under the spell of the occasion. The exact situation may inspire the speaker to a type of utterance at once spontaneous and persuasive, more effective than anything that might have been previously set down and reproduced. Don't ramble, don't expand, don't introduce new elements. Select the type of Conclusion, or the combination of types, that will bear home most impressively your points. When you have finished, stop.

## IX. SENTENCE STRUCTURE

**A. Importance of Sentence Structure.** The greatest economy of the listener's attention, the greatest appeal, and the most complete response result from proper consideration of sentence structure. It is assumed that the student of argument and debate has had considerable training in English. It is nevertheless worth while to review types of sentence structure that are most appropriate in the composition of an effective debate.

**B. Short and Long Sentences.** The short sentence is to be preferred to the complex or compound sentence. Omit the rambling structure sometimes adapted to meditative or descriptive prose. The short statement is easy to grasp and to recall. It is used to define, to discriminate, to emphasize, and especially to reason closely. Note the following illustration of the opening speech for the negative in a college debate:

<sup>1</sup> *Modern Eloquence*, Vol. VI, p. 302. Modern Eloquence Corporation, New York, 1923.

We have just had presented to us a moving picture of the disaster that would follow a general railroad strike. I was moved, and I think you were moved. But let us stop for a moment and think. Why should we be moved? Why should we be excited? Why should we be alarmed?

The gentlemen have told us that there have been 220 strikes in the last ten years. They have told us that we are therefore to add compulsion to investigation in order to prevent the urgent and immediate possibility of a general railroad strike. We want to ask the gentlemen about those strikes. We have found no record of them. How long did they last? How great a territory did they cover? The Bureau of Labor has recorded seven strikes since 1906, exactly seven strikes!

Let me say a word about those seven strikes. The first, which occurred in the Colorado and Southern, involving 200 men, lasted one day. Was that a serious strike? The second, on the Burlington and Broad Top Mountain Railway, involved ninety-five men. The third centered on the city of Saint Paul. The fourth was on the Central Vermont.

Excessive use of the choppy sentence, however, should be avoided. The style is likely to be thin and unrhythmical. Occasionally the longer sentence serves to give variety and dignity. It may be used to retard the movement, amplify, fill in details, and to vary the rhythm. But it may make the style heavy and wearisome to follow.

**C. Periodic, Loose, and Balanced Structure.** The loose sentence is conversational, easily comprehended, lacking in artificiality.

It should be alternated with the periodic structure, which produces suspense, accelerates the movement, concentrates attention, and adds force and dignity. The balanced sentence emphasizes through contrast and comparison. It is forceful, impressive through its cadence, easy to recall, although it may be artificial and tautological. It is more characteristic of a highly impassioned speech — for example, a college oration — than of the more measured debate.

**D. Transitional, Summarizing, and Introductory Sentences.** Most debaters fail to use a sufficient number of sentences to link together the various parts of the speech. Transitional sentences

of this type would read : "Not only does military training in our universities give sound discipline, physical development, and mental training, but it furnishes a necessary arm of national defense in providing reserve officers." An audience will of course follow a debate much more easily if these elements are freely used to lead the listeners from idea to idea and to give them opportunity both to look back and to peer ahead.

**E. Imperative, Exclamatory, and Interrogative Sentences.** The introduction of imperative or exclamatory sentences takes place only when the speaker's emotion runs high and he assumes the rôle of a dynamic leader of the audience. The command, unless it is given in conciliatory tones, and unless it invites the auditor to a task already attractive to him, will antagonize. The speaker at such points drops the more intimate "we" and substitutes "Go," "Think of this plan," "Consider the result," "Inspect this instance." Interspersed with other sentence forms it may come as a pleasing contrast and in its direct suggestion may facilitate the accomplishment of the speaker's purpose.

The interrogative sentence, especially the rhetorical question, is a most effective device, and is not used as often as it should be. The general interrogation creates suspense and so is an easy means of holding attention. It is particularly convenient as a means of introducing new paragraphs. Like all other sentence forms, it must not be worked to death. The rhetorical sentence is phrased so as to imply a given answer. The audience is asked, "Is this not true?" And the suggestion is thus strongly set forth that the idea *is* true. The rhetorical question is thus a vigorous assertion disguised as an interrogation.

Note the use of the rhetorical question in the following quotation from an address on "Liberty and Law" delivered by Charles E. Hughes before the American Bar Association at Detroit, Michigan, in 1925 :

Yet it is with respect to the freedom of learning that we find a disposition to impose restrictions which cannot fail to give us grave concern. It is to be observed in the field of medical research. What



department of intellectual activity is more important to a free people? Of what avail are the privileges of life, if we do not live? Of what gain is liberty, if we succumb to the ravages of communicable diseases? Of what value is government, if it puts research under ban and permits the spread of plagues which knowledge may prevent? In what area of endeavor has there been such a fruitage as in preventive medicine, saving countless lives and putting an end to indescribable agonies of human beings? Yet we observe persistent attempts in our legislatures not only to impair the immunities already gained, but to hamper scientific investigations through which alone the scourge of disease now beyond remedy may come under control.<sup>1</sup>

**F. Sentence Coherence.** Make clear the relationship of the various parts of the sentences. Avoid the use of obscure words of reference. "Our first speaker told the preceding negative speaker that he had made a wrong assumption" contains an equivocal "he." "Let us examine some of the reasons for the adoption of these proposals and discover if they are valid" also may lead the reader or listener astray. The adverbs *only*, *almost*, *ever*, *just*, *scarcely*, and similar terms should be placed next to and usually just before the words they modify. "I wish only to refer to one point," would be better stated, "I wish to refer to only one point." "I scarcely know one instance in favor of the bank-guaranty plan" should read, "I know scarcely one instance in favor of the bank-guaranty plan."

Make a gerund prepositional phrase modify the substantive it should modify. "In summing up the negative one point must be made absolutely clear at the present time." This type of error, as frequent in speaking as in writing, should be remedied by inserting "we" or "I" and changing the construction. Another error frequently made is that of having an indefinite antecedent for a phrase beginning with the adjective "due." "America is prosperous, due to the war," should be revised as follows: "The prosperity of America is due to the war." Frequently, too, auxiliary verb forms are omitted; although "to" may be occa-

<sup>1</sup> H. D. Lindgren, *Modern Speeches*, p. 141. F. S. Crofts & Co., 1926.

sionally omitted before its infinitive, as, "We ought to reduce taxes, cut down the army, and join the World Court." The comparative degree is often misused, as, "America is stronger than any nation."

**G. Sentence Force.** The sentence should be so organized as to make clear the relative importance of each part. Force, mass, or vigor is necessary if the style is to impress or persuade. To secure emphasis: place an important idea in a separate sentence; break up a sentence that seems unduly long; condense a wordy statement; combine jerky sentences; vary the structure; vary the length of sentences; arrange ideas in the order of climax; place important words at the beginning or end; avoid the profuse use of "there is," "there are," "and so"; place the chief ideas in main clauses and subordinate ideas in subordinate clauses; observe the use of parallel construction for parallel ideas; use the active voice rather than the passive.

## X. LANGUAGE

Language, as suggested earlier, furnishes the substitute stimuli to produce the needed response. "The mind of man is peopled like some silent city, with a sleeping company of reminiscences, associations, impressions, attitudes, emotions, to be awakened into fierce activity at the touch of words."<sup>1</sup> With the right selection and combination of words the reactor may be stimulated to appropriate the ideas and yield to the suggestions you are attempting to express in your argument; with an unhappy use of language you will inhibit the desirable tendencies and so leave him indifferent or hostile, even though your voice, action, and other means of communication may be properly directed. Words are to be regarded as most important instruments of suggestion.

**A. Necessity for a Wide Vocabulary.** The debater, like other creative artists who use language as a tool, must acquire a dis-

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by A. P. Stone and S. L. Garrison, *Essentials of Argument*, p. 162. Henry Holt and Company, 1916.

crimination in the use of words. He must use words that are accurate, concrete, euphonious, connotative as well as denotative. He must have a style that is both clear and pleasing. For this purpose he will read widely from standard writers and from the collected speeches of Lincoln, Wilson, and other orators. He will write and rewrite and will translate and paraphrase. He will continually refer to the dictionary and will know the history and etymology of words. He will use freely books of synonyms and antonyms and will add new words to his vocabulary each day.

**B. Accuracy.** Your first duty is to use words accurately. In analysis debaters define with exactness; the same thoroughness should carry over in the use of language throughout the speech. Do not use "at about" for "about"; "data" as if it were singular; "each other" for "one another"; "he is liable to lose his case" for "he is likely to lose his case"; "do it like I do" for "do it as I do"; "anywheres" for "anywhere"; "we have had considerable trouble" for "we have had much trouble"; "inside of" for "inside"; "kind of" for "fairly," as, "the election was fairly close"; "nowhere near" for "not nearly"; "off of" for "off"; "out loud" for "aloud"; "over with" for "over"; "providing" for "if"; "sort of" for "rather"; "through" for "finished"; "try and" for "try to"; "end up" for "end"; "visit with" for "visit"; "different than" for "different from"; "get to" for "able to"; "some better" for "somewhat better"; "guess" for "think."

Slang is frequently substituted for an accurate word. In colloquial usage slang has its place; sometimes a slang phrase expresses with great vividness the desired connotation. Slang is justified when it is recent, vivid, and free from vulgarity. The overuse of it limits the vocabulary, and slang which is current today must be discarded tomorrow as out of fashion. From its very nature it can rarely be precise. In general, it is associated with mental vagueness. Debaters and other speakers will avoid such vocabulary as "beat it," "we were not easy marks," "we have the dope on that point," "we had a confab with Professor

Smith," "he pulled a new wrinkle," "some job," "going some," "it made a hit." Flaubert advised Guy de Maupassant as follows:

Whatever may be the thing which one wishes to say, there is but one word for expressing it, only one verb to animate it, only one adjective to qualify it. It is essential to search for this word, for this verb, for this adjective, until they are discovered, and to be satisfied with nothing else.

**C. Originality.** The search for the precise word will result in a more original style. To obtain freshness and originality you will avoid, for the most part, mechanical and formal expressions. It is of course necessary to make the material absolutely clear; in addition it should be attractive. The method of enumeration will leave the listener cold.

Use also as sparingly as possible the technical terms of debate, such as "origin of the question," "honorable opponents," "worthy opponents," "honorable judges," "judges," "I have proved," "I have proven," "we still maintain," "refuted the argument," "debate," "discussion," "we defy our opponents," "conflicting opinions," "main issues," "first," "secondly," "thirdly," "we challenge our opponents," "our friends of the negative," "well," "consequently," "extraneous matter," "waived matter," "in summary let me say," "I thank you."

As the customary style of the college debater is charged with mechanical and trite terms, so is it highly repetitious. Something is to be said in favor of repetition as a rhetorical device to secure force. Burke, Webster, Chatham, Erskine, were masters of force through their ability to reënforce an idea by repetition. You need, however, to guard against repetition of another sort, the result of a narrow vocabulary or of carelessness. Such repetition makes student debates monotonous and weak. If the subject happens to be, *RESOLVED, That the government should own and operate the coal mines*, the terms "need," "ownership and operation," and "coal mines" are used over and over. The remedy lies in a determination to use a varied vocabulary.

**D. Conciseness.** Conciseness is a matter of expressing the subject with the greatest economy of words. Formal school debate especially encourages brevity because of the time limits. When the debater realizes that he must unfold his entire argument in a ten-minute speech, he practices the art of concise statement which perhaps is the chief glory of the debating style. The amateur stylist sometimes lingers unduly over each idea to make it clear and significant; he elaborates each illustration; he quotes authorities at length; he expands his summaries, his appeals, his introductions. Genuine economy necessitates discrimination in the selection of these ideas and illustrations.

To secure brevity avoid tautology, the unnecessary repetition of the same idea in different words. "Will the gentleman please repeat that statement again?" should of course be, "Will the gentleman please repeat that statement?" Avoid, moreover, pleonasm, the use of words which are structurally unnecessary. "There were fifty nations assembled at the city of Geneva" becomes, "Fifty nations assembled at Geneva." "The Economic Commission went through the formalities by which they welcomed the delegate sent as the representative of Russia" may be more tersely stated, "The Economic Commission formally welcomed the Russian delegate." Repetitious words should be sloughed off; paragraphs should become sentences; sentences, phrases; and phrases, words.

Clearness and force can be retained without sacrifice to brevity. The following selection contains many unnecessary words:

We propose a change. Therefore the question naturally arises, Why is any change necessary? In other words, what is wrong at the present time? The Volstead Act is very deficient. One of these great deficiencies lies in the fact that public opinion does not support it. Not a single law can function well if public opinion refuses to support it. It is self-evident that there are many cases in which the public has become aroused so that it has turned active opposition to the Volstead Act. There are many people who would rather see a man break the law. In many cases they would even aid him in doing it.



The revision, expressing the essential argument in half as many words, obviously gains in directness and force :

In our proposal of a change the question naturally arises, What conditions at present demand a change? One of the great deficiencies of the Volstead Act is that public opinion fails to support it. No law can function properly without public support, and the public, in many cases, has actively opposed the act. Many people, instead of opposing law-breaking in this case, aid the violator.

The ideas are retained ; compactness is added without the loss of clearness.

**E. Concreteness.** Concreteness consists of substituting specific terms for abstract ones, the use of language which touches off stimuli and results in the awakening of the "sleeping company of reminiscences, associations," and emotions. Concreteness is largely a matter of substituting condensed illustration or example for the general statement. Contrast the examples of the abstract in the first column with the examples of the concrete in the second.

#### ABSTRACT

A Federal child-labor law would mean that Congress would control the physical labor in every home in America.

When Charlie Lindbergh arrived in Washington, D.C., upon his return from his New York to Paris flight, he found much mail awaiting him.

The proportion of students of a university who participate in inter-collegiate debating is small.

#### CONCRETE

"The passage of the Federal child-labor law would mean that every time Johnny's dad wanted him to chop wood, dad would be compelled to get a permit from Washington."

"Three large U.S. Mail trucks, displaying large signs which read, 'The People of the United States congratulate Lindy,' carried 500,000 letters to Colonel Lindbergh when he disembarked from the *Memphis* at the Washington Navy Yard."

"Of the six thousand students at the University of Iowa in 1927 twenty-nine participated in inter-collegiate debate."

## ABSTRACT

The present cloture rule of the United States Senate gives opportunity for much manipulation and considerable delay.

The pyramiding of profit by middlemen makes the retail price of coal excessive.

Federal government business ventures are financial failures.

The American people in their sports, amusements, customs, are barbarous.

## CONCRETE

"The present cloture rule of the United States Senate gave Senator Smoot of Utah the opportunity to hold the floor for seventeen hours and gave Senator 'Fighting Bob' LaFollette opportunity to read aloud books and papers for over ten hours."

"The middleman profit means that coal costing \$6 per ton at the mine retails at \$15 per ton."

"Muscle Shoals, with its government-built nitrate plant costing \$106,000,000, is worth today only \$8,000,000."

"The American people are given to prize fights, home-brew parties, and lynchings."

**F. Illustrative Language.** Concreteness often takes the form of illustration, comparison, analogy, or figure of speech. The use of such connotative language is sometimes regarded as artificial and ornamental. Figurative language, however, is fundamentally justifiable as a means to accomplish the practical ends of argument. Illustrations and figurative terms make the debate clear, vivid, emphatic, impressive, and interesting. Moreover, they often have value as evidence and so further directly the establishment of conviction. Thus when Burke, in his discussion of conciliation with the colonies, wishes to make clear that by a natural law the power of a large empire is comparatively slight in its more remote colonies, he uses figurative language: "In large bodies, the circulation of power must be less vigorous at the extremities. Nature has said it." Speaking of the right to tax America he proceeded: "Their love of liberty, as with you, fixed and attached on this specific point of taxing." He added: "Here they felt its pulse, and as they found that beat they thought themselves sick or sound."

A number of suggestions, most of them obvious, are here offered as aids in the use of illustration.<sup>1</sup>

1. Let the illustrations be sufficiently numerous. An abstract style and literal phrasing should in every case be translated into concrete language.

2. Illustrations should never be a substitute for ideas. Popular platform speakers sometimes content themselves with a list of stories, loosely bound together by a theme. Debaters, by reason of the limitation of time, the significance of their subject, and the decision at stake, are less likely to sacrifice ideas to illustration. Even here, nevertheless, especially in the open-forum discussions, the example sometimes looms up as an end in itself. The mention of current happenings that possess the public mind, such as a transatlantic airplane flight just completed, would be interesting to the hearers. But an allusion of this kind might distract the attention of the listeners from your proposition to the general idea of flying over oceans.

3. Illustrations should be pertinent. Be sure that your language emphasizes what you wish to emphasize. Select the figures that best express your ideas.

4. Analogies and figures of speech should lie well within the experience of the audience. Victor Hugo described the battle of Waterloo as represented by a letter A; Stevenson compared the shape of the Bay of Monterey to a bent fishing-hook.

5. Illustrations, analogies, figures of speech, should be well within your own experience. Let each definite detail come not from artificial collections of information but from your personal observation or your reading of history or other sources. Occasionally debaters will refer to books of humorous selections as means of embellishing their speeches with humor. The effect is often pathetic.

6. Worn-out illustrations and hackneyed figures should be avoided. "No plan is perfect. Even the sun has spots" made a

<sup>1</sup> See J. A. Winans, *Public Speaking*, pp. 141-146, for an excellent discussion of illustration. The Century Co., 1917.

strong impression on debate audiences. But this metaphor has run its course. "You cannot break up the trusts any more than you can unscramble eggs" has also had its day with debate teams. "The plan is a dangerous weapon" is also worn out. More objectionable than worn metaphors and similes are those that are "mixed," those that involve some contradiction or incongruity. "I will now embark upon the feature on which this question mainly hinges" calls up the combined figures of oceans and swinging doors. "The shadow of enormous debts hanging over Italy and France spurs these nations on" also connotes contradictory associations. "The poisoned darts of the Communist propagandists must be throttled at the outset" and "the wheels of infant industries must not be snuffed out by tariff-protected business" are also disquieting or confusing.

**G. Simplicity.** Variety in language is consistent with the idiomatic and simple style. In general, use short words, avoid the elevated style characteristic of an oration and the technical terms usually associated with a technical subject. If you discuss malingering, real wages, fixation of responses, hyperkinetic types, avoid the terms or explain carefully what you mean.

**H. Directness.** Intimate contact with the audience will be definitely increased through the use of the personal pronouns "I," "we," "you."

**I. Euphony.** Avoid harsh combinations of sound, such as "a hundred thousand sensational lists of utterances"; avoid frequent alliteration, such as "Five thousand frightened miners flared up, warning the employers that war would come." Read the speech aloud and reorganize for euphony, which means *good sound*. The persuasive appeal will be more effective if the sound of the words attracts favorable attention. Words difficult to pronounce are difficult to the ear and should be struck from the speech.

**J. Rhythm.** Rhythm is the progressive movement of prose in which the various thought units are expressed in a harmoniously stressed and unstressed series of syllables. Public addresses, including formal debates, are more effective in inducing belief and

action when couched in such moving language. Almost all great argumentative and other speeches contain these rhythmical passages. Every student of discussion will study and emulate the cadences found in such models, as, for example, Henry W. Grady's "The New South"; Carl Schurz's "Plea for Amnesty"; William J. Bryan's "Cross of Gold"; Woodrow Wilson's "Lincoln, the Miracle of Democracy"; and A. J. Beveridge's "On the Retention of the Philippines."

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Rewrite one of your debates in order to improve the style; keep in mind the suggestions in this chapter.

2. Criticize the argumentative style of one of the following: The Earl of Chatham's "The Attempt to subjugate America"; Edmund Burke's "On Conciliation with America"; Daniel Webster's "Reply to Hayne" (second speech in the debate); Abraham Lincoln's Ottawa debate, in the Lincoln-Douglas debates; Henry Grady's "The New South"; Woodrow Wilson's "At War with Germany"; William J. Bryan's "Cross of Gold."

3. Criticize a contemporary speech as reported in *Vital Speeches* or in one of the collections listed in the references below. Consider (1) structure, (2) methods of introduction, (3) amplification of discussion, (4) method of conclusion, (5) sentence structure, (6) language.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- AYDELOTTE, FRANK. *Materials for Study of English Literature and Composition* (Second Edition). Oxford University Press, 1916.
- BLANCHARD, F. T. *The Art of Composition*. Ginn and Company, 1934.
- BRIGANCE, W. N. *Classified Speech Models*. F. S. Crofts & Co., 1930.
- BROWN, R. W. *The Writer's Art*. Harvard University Press, 1921.
- GENUNG, J. F. *The Working Principles of Rhetoric*. Ginn and Company, 1900.
- GOODRICH, C. A. *Select British Eloquence*. Harper & Brothers, 1852.
- HILL, A. S. *The Principles of Rhetoric* (Revised Edition). American Book Company, 1895.
- JOHNSON, ALEXANDER. *American Orations* (Fifth Edition). 2 vols. G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1927.



- McKNIGHT, G. H. *English Words and their Background*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1923.
- O'NEILL, J. M. *Models of Speech Composition*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1921.
- SUTTON, ROBERTA BRIGGS, compiler. *Speech Index*. H. W. Wilson Company, 1935.
- THORNDIKE, A. H. *Modern Eloquence*. 12 volumes. Modern Eloquence Corporation, 1923. (Three supplementary volumes, 1927.)
- WENDELL, BARRETT. *English Composition*. Charles Scribner's Sons, 1891.
- Intercollegiate Debates*. Noble and Noble, 1909-1917; annually since 1926.
- University Debaters' Annual*. H. W. Wilson, since 1915.
- University Oratorical Annual*. Noble and Noble, 1929.

## CHAPTER XIV

### DELIVERY IN DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

I. IMPORTANCE OF DELIVERY. II. DELIVERY AND EMOTIONAL ACTIVITY. III. DELIVERY AND INTELLECTUAL BEHAVIOR. IV. DELIVERY AND CONVERSATIONAL MODE. V. PLATFORM MANNERS IN GENERAL. VI. ACTION. VII. THE VOICE. VIII. PRONUNCIATION

#### I. IMPORTANCE OF DELIVERY

In judging the efficiency of an oral argument you should of course give chief consideration to the material or ideas rather than to the delivery. In reality, however, audiences give great weight to presentation. We must admit that even the most learned and logical auditors are susceptible to forceful speech. Though your arguments are a bit flimsy, you will often carry weight with the audience, if not with an expert judge, by means of your superior delivery. On the other hand, though you recast your argument to strengthen the links, though you select the vital phrases for expressing your ideas, though you give clear reply in rebuttal, you may fail if your voice is weak and your attitude hesitant or uncertain. Considerable time in preparation should therefore be given to practicing delivery. In the distribution of the debater's schedule of preparation he usually expends so much energy and so many hours on collecting and organizing his material that he has little time left for definite drill in delivery. One third of your time, as a rough estimate, should go to training in oral presentation, preferably in practice debates.

#### II. DELIVERY AND EMOTIONAL ACTIVITY

Good delivery is based upon proper emotional behavior. In the discussion of emotion as a factor in argument it was made clear that emotion is a state of bodily activity in which responses are

transferred to sensory areas of the brain and become *emotion* when consciously experienced. This state of emotion in turn generates bodily activity, and bodily action, according to Dr. Woolbert,<sup>1</sup> is the basis of good speaking. This emotional activity, moreover, exhibits those qualities of the speaker, such as confidence and optimism, which command attention and win the approval of the audience. Emotional response which leads to undue muscular activity is of course disastrous, as when the speaker exhibits stage fright, or when he outwardly succumbs to emotion, or when he merely sways about in a continual state of nervous unrest. Proper emotional control, on the other hand, leads to confidence.

How, then, shall you develop confidence? By practicing emotional control. Rely on yourself. Prepare your material so carefully that you are ready to defend it under all circumstances. Get rid of the feeling of inferiority. Refuse to allow the impressiveness of the occasion, the number of people present, the celebrity of the chairman or of those who happen to listen, the severity of the critics, the power of the opposing team, if the situation happens to be that of debate, or the superiority of your auditor, if the occasion is that of a personal interview, to overwhelm you. Confidence grows out of a conviction that you are well prepared, that you have the stamina and ability to handle any situation. Undue self-esteem is of course unfortunate, but most debaters and speakers suffer from underestimation rather than overestimation of their powers. Act as if you were bold, confident, and courageous; and confidence will in most cases result. The audience will instinctively have more faith in you. Their faith will reinforce your own; confidence will beget confidence.

### III. DELIVERY AND INTELLECTUAL BEHAVIOR

Intellectual behavior, like emotional life, is based upon the response to stimuli. Our intellectual power, then, will depend partly upon the number of substitute stimuli acting and upon

<sup>1</sup> C. H. Woolbert, *Fundamentals of Speech* (Revised Edition), pp. 67 ff. Harper & Brothers, 1927.

the completeness with which we respond. The satisfactory mental life, therefore, will be based upon ability to recall or memorize and upon the capacity to create images. Superior delivery is based upon the power to recall vividly a wide variety of experiences and upon the conviction that our ideas should prevail. Conviction or belief is strengthened by a decision to act on the data in our possession, or upon a realization that our experience is incomplete, or upon an instinctive desire to adjust ourselves to our environment.<sup>1</sup> Keen observation, then, personal experience, and speech based on conviction will be strong factors in success in oral discussion.

#### IV. DELIVERY AND CONVERSATIONAL MODE

Good delivery, most texts on speech remind you, is a matter of conversational mode. Conversation is the norm, the type of speaking we do under circumstances when audiences are absent and conditions invite genuine talk. This conversational type of speech may be soft-spoken or vigorous — just as conversations are. Where shall we draw the line between the public-speaking or exhibition style and the conversational mode? Winans has described conversational delivery as characterized by two essential elements: (1) a full realization of the content of the words as they are uttered and (2) a lively sense of communication.<sup>2</sup> The ability to think on one's feet and to create or re-create the thought at the time of delivery is the basic quality of all right speaking, including that of debating.

The converse is absent-mindedness. Speakers, especially those who are interested in the exhibition, who know they will be estimated by their appearance, their voice, and their gestures, or those who have memorized their remarks, are thinking about matters other than the content of the ideas they are presenting; or if they present the ideas intellectually, they may fail to do

<sup>1</sup> F. A. C. Perrin and D. B. Klein, *Behaviouristic Psychology*. Henry Holt and Company, 1926.

<sup>2</sup> J. A. Winans, *Public Speaking*, pp. 31 ff. The Century Co., 1917.

so imaginatively or emotionally. The same disposition to carry on argument as an exhibition leads to indirectness, the antithesis of communicativeness. Indirect speaking makes the audience a group of spectators, whereas they should be participants. Genuine speech should be a social experience, made up of dialogue, in which the speaker's part is audible and the audience's part equally expressive even if inaudible. The communicative debater looks squarely at those before him. He has that bodily animation, that openness and ease of voice, that active mentality, and that intimacy or familiarity with his group that will establish perfect attention and mutual understanding. Meditation, day-dreaming, flamboyant declamation, posing, and similar practices have ruined many a well-prepared debate and argument.

**A. The Conversational Mode and Reading the Manuscript.** Is reading of the manuscript consistent with effective delivery? College-commencement speakers, especially distinguished ones who know their remarks will be broadcasted and printed, and sometimes preachers, like Dr. Henry Sloane Coffin, of New York, have followed their manuscripts closely without sacrificing the effective elements of public speaking. They have realized the content of their speeches or sermons, and they have had at every turn a lively sense of communication. Nevertheless the reading is likely to bore the listeners; the temptation to repeat empty phrases is great. Those who read must be so familiar with the manuscript as to refer to it without removing their eyes from the audience, and certainly reading allows little opportunity for the spontaneous utterance necessary in a give-and-take school or college debate.

**B. The Conversational Mode and Speaking from Memory.** Close memorizing is almost equally objectionable. It too may prove satisfactory for general speech-making. In such cases, however, the speaker must so completely memorize his document as to permit him the confidence and ease spoken of in the early part of this chapter; he must on the platform create anew his thought, so that it is literally a re-creation and not an echo of past



thought; in addition he must have a lively sense of communication. It is said that G. W. Curtis on occasion practiced with complete skill the memoriter method. So have W. J. Bryan, C. E. Hughes, and many another. Inexperienced speakers, however, almost invariably concern themselves so completely with trying to recall the lines that the directness or communicativeness is lost. Especially in a debate is the repetition from memory impracticable. A debate, as suggested above, is a clash between two or more speakers. If the speaker is striving to reproduce from memory set passages, he obviously cannot adjust himself to the moment. The method puts the speaker in a strait-jacket and defeats the chief object of debate, which is to rebut.

**C. The Conversational Mode and Impromptu Speaking.** Impromptu speaking takes place in response to an invitation for an immediate talk upon a specified subject, this talk allowing for no preparation. Such speaking no doubt encourages freedom, genuineness, and directness of appeal. A highly experienced and well-informed speaker may use the method with success. But since it allows for no previous preparation whatever, it clearly has no place in debate — or little in any other public-speech situation. The impromptu speaker often rambles. In his effort to summon real thought he merely bores the audience. Impromptu debating is found to be superficial, discursive, and illogical.

**D. The Conversational Mode and Extemporaneous Speaking.** The extemporaneous method, more than any other, lends itself to practical discussion and debate. The extemporaneous speaker talks directly from an outline, but does not conform to a prearranged order of words. Memory in this case is confined to the leading ideas of the debate. With a few notes for occasional reference the speaker can talk freely and forcefully, always in contact with his audience, always alive and responsive to the actual conditions.

The dangers of extemporaneous speaking are obvious. One of these is overstatement. The inspired orator may on occasion exaggerate and perhaps may be pardoned for the rhetori-

cal liberty. The arguer, on the contrary, must be accurate. In his fervor to impress he may fall into sweeping generalizations, or expand analogies that are far-fetched, or draw false deductions that assume adequate causal relations. Other weaknesses are the mechanical statement of ideas — an echo of the brief or outline, a tendency to overelaborate summaries, the endless repetition of words, and the use of hackneyed expressions. The remedy, of course, lies in rigid and complete preparation of speeches: writing and rewriting, to strengthen the vocabulary; practicing oral composition, to avoid a purely mechanical style; and in the earlier stages of the development of a debater, combining the memoriter method with the extempore.

**E. The Conversational Mode and the Use of Notes, Outlines, and Charts.** The disposition of some judges of debate and teachers of the subject to frown upon notes is hardly justified. Since debating demands the unfolding and simplification of an involved argument, it may be an undue tax upon the debater to keep in mind the entire framework of his discourse. Especially in rebuttal, where the other side should be quoted accurately and the points made by two or three speakers kept before the audience, he is justified in going to the platform with the important items jotted down for reference. The real test is whether he is completely familiar with his argument and notes. Outlines and notes are to be condemned only when they interfere with the directness of delivery and block the thought of the speaker.

It goes without saying that these platform notes should be merely speaker's notes and not a complete brief. The speaker who attempts to use his complete brief gives forth a wooden performance even more deadly than a monotonously read speech. Speaker's notes, other than those for rebuttal, should be condensed, — preferably typewritten, — and should include important quotations and statistics.

Shall charts be used? They may be introduced, but frequently an agreement prohibiting their use is made. In recent years they have been resorted to less frequently. Debaters should agree in

advance if such devices are to be included. A chart should be simple and clear, so that it may be easily interpreted and so that an audience may see at a glance what it is intended to convey. Charts should be used only if the material could not otherwise be conveniently presented. The data should be accurate and unbiased. Free opportunity should be given to the other side to discuss the material. This latter stipulation means that a clever debater can usually turn the material to his own account. Good strategy generally advises against charts.

On occasions other than formal debates charts may greatly aid the speaker in presenting his point. Former Secretary of Agriculture Meredith, talking before a chamber of commerce group at a brief noon session, used two or three placards to clarify his argument for solving the farm problem.

## V. PLATFORM MANNERS IN GENERAL

Ease on the platform will come only after considerable practice. When you rise to speak, address the chairman and then the audience. Say simply, "Mr. Chairman, Ladies and Gentlemen." It is unnecessary to salute various groups present ; as, "Honorable judges, worthy opponents, members of the Whitby student body, friends," etc. Judges in particular prefer to regard themselves as part of the audience. Speak quietly, firmly, distinctly. Control yourself. Even though you are inwardly nervous, practice the manner of the platform veteran. Before you rise to speak, take long breaths and relax your muscles. After you give the salutation, pause for a moment and survey your audience. Don't make the pause too long. In your bearing show purpose, certainty, positiveness. Avoid listlessness, or childish eagerness to plunge into your subject. Stand squarely on both feet, with body erect and chest high. Look squarely at your audience. Don't stare at the ceiling or gaze dreamily toward the window. Don't creep to the end of the platform, where you threaten to topple over. Avoid rising on your toes, twisting your fingers, leaning on the

reading desk, or pounding it. Cultivate poise. If you move, do so calmly. At the beginning make a slight bow, and at the end an inconspicuous nod of the head. The farewell salutation, "I thank you," is to be avoided. Throughout avoid a belligerent attitude. Keep on the common ground of feeling, treating both audience and opponents with sincere respect. All that has been said about humor and the personal qualities of the speaker should be reviewed at this point. See the following sections for detailed discussion of voice and action.

## VI. ACTION

**A. Importance of Action.** Speech is the process of stirring thought in the mind of an audience both by words, the symbols which become substitute stimuli, and by action, likewise a symbol of great importance in arousing response. The importance of action as an aid to speaking may be easily illustrated by studying the methods of effective platform speakers. As Woolbert points out, effective speakers are never at rest but are "always doing something with arms, hands, legs, head, and face."<sup>1</sup> Good speaking is emotional speaking; and emotion, as indicated previously, is a general bodily activity. Good speaking requires activity of both the voice and the body. In point of time action precedes and determines speech. Listeners will follow your bodily movements with their eyes much more easily and readily than they will listen to your voice. To quote Woolbert again, the "eye is almost in every case a keener interpreter than the ear."<sup>2</sup>

Further, effective speech depends upon bodily activity. Bodily ease means ease of speech; bodily disorganization means disordered speech. Active speakers almost invariably arouse much greater audience response than do inert talkers. Because, then, action is so important in good delivery, the aspects of action, posture, movement, and gesture should have the attention of every debater.

<sup>1</sup> C. H. Woolbert, *Fundamentals of Speech*, p. 86. Harper & Brothers, 1927.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 76.

**B. Posture.** Posture is the speaker's physical bearing. Like words, it conveys meaning and does so in advance of speech. The posture of the speaker, like his movements and gestures, should convey to the observer the intended meaning. The wrong meaning will probably be transmitted if the speaker has a slouchy appearance: if he stoops unduly, or tips to one side, or wraps a leg about the speaker's stand, or hangs over the stand wearily, spreads his legs far apart, or rocks on his toes and heels, or plants his hands heavily on his hips, or folds them on his stomach, or pushes them into his pockets. What posture is to be preferred? That which will best facilitate the vocal expression of your thought. Ordinarily the debater needs a somewhat dignified full-height bearing. But the posture must express the emotional mood which the words attempt to transfer to the reactor. The weight should be mainly on one foot, and that foot toward the audience. Your posture should convey self-control, energy, courage, sympathy for your hearers, and a desire to be as communicative as possible.

**C. Movement.** Movement, like posture, communicates varied meanings to the observer and listener. Audiences are fascinated by movement as an end in itself. Furthermore, movement punctuates and provides coherence and unity to the oral composition. Transitions, introductory ideas, summaries, emphatic words, parenthetical expressions, rhetorical questions, paragraphs, sentences, and phrase divisions are all indicated by shifts of the speaker's weight from one foot to the other or by shifts in position from one part of the platform to the other. Literally we think with every part of our body. Therefore the movements of feet, ankles, legs, knees, hips, shoulders, arms, head, face, forehead, eyes, and other parts of the body should be trained to communicate the ideas desired.

Debaters are often guilty of two violations of proper movement. In one case they stand stock-still, when speaking, because timidity tells them to avoid criticisms of their movements by providing no movements to be criticized. Perhaps some



instructor in public speaking has told them that movement is bad form and that the dignified way is to have a minimum of bodily display. The other fault lies in excessive movement — in twisting the body or in pacing to and fro from one side of the speaker's stand to the other. Mere restless maneuvering without intellectual correlation, however, has no place in the delivery. Audiences become bored by the monotonous swing of the speaker's arms or amused at his marching and counter-marching. In all things, supreme art requires balance. Immobility kills the speech; excessive movement is equally disastrous. In general, the amount and character of the movement can be determined only by the temperament and race of the speaker, by the type of subject matter, by the character, size, and physical surroundings of the audience, by the occasion, whether it be a funeral, a legislative gathering, a political rally, a college classroom, or a Fourth of July meeting.

**D. Gesture.** Gesture describes the movements of hands, arms, shoulders, head, and eyes, as distinct from general bodily movement. As indicated in the discussion of posture and movement, each of these agents has a significant movement which interprets the intended thought. Some speakers use their arms for wind-mills, clench their fists angrily, or execute intricate and studied gestures. They develop sweeping movements with the arm at a moment distinctly later than that in which the thought is expressed. The effective debater proceeds with his arms at his sides. They are free from the shoulders. His hands are not twisted behind him or thrust out of sight, but are instantly available for their function of interpretation. His face muscles are under control and rightly interpret the spoken language. His face is never blank. When his thought is moving and inspiring, a half-smile illumines his face; when his idea is heavy and serious, his countenance is correspondingly expressive. Even his head and shoulders by appropriate nods and shrugs become important instruments in the speech presentation. The most important agent is the eye. The accomplished speaker will look directly

into the eyes of his listeners, and by the gleam or softness or twinkle will convey whole worlds of meaning that his words could never express.

In general, gestures, whether they are emphatic, descriptive, or suggestive, should be spontaneous, forceful and yet easy, timed so that they precede vocalization, graceful, reserved, and well controlled. Instructor and fellow students will give the classmate ample and helpful criticism; his movements will gradually lose their crudeness and more and more become part of the total bodily action that expresses effectively his ideas.

## VII. THE VOICE

Far more important, as a medium of communication, than posture, movement, or gesture is the voice. Sometimes debaters who have prepared their material with great care deliver it with a labored monotone, or with a high-pitched, a throaty, or an indistinct voice, with poor enunciation, or at a speed that defies ability to follow. The result is of course wasted effort. The voice must be used properly. It is beyond the province of this chapter to discuss with thoroughness the broad subject of voice cultivation. The student is urged to familiarize himself with texts on the subject and to enroll in classes in public speaking and voice training. It is true that under proper guidance the debater may overcome many of his vocal faults and give a presentation that is pleasing both in its delivery, which includes its vocalization, and in its content and stylistic qualities. Let us briefly summarize the elements of vocalization.

Vocalization has four characteristics: (1) quality, (2) intensity, or force, (3) pitch, (4) duration, or time.

**A. Quality.** Sounds are made up of breath, which, passing through the larynx and set vibrating by the vocal cords, becomes sound, reënforced by the action of the resonator chamber. Quality is a matter of complexity in the vibrations. When the vibrations occur in regular series, we have *tone*; when the vibra-

tions meet each other irregularly, we have *noise*. Vibrators have a fundamental tone and various partial tones, or overtones. The relationship between the fundamental tone and the overtones determines the quality. The larger the number of overtones, and the more exactly the harmonics are produced, the more beautiful and satisfying is the quality. In the vocal cords both fundamental and partial tones are initiated. The pharynx, the nasal passages, the mouth, and even the sinuses (the three chambers adjoining the nasal cavities) become the resonators.

Improvement in voice quality is largely a problem of securing the proper adjustment of the resonators. The debater, for example, whose voice is guttural or throaty will establish a more pleasing tone by cultivating better emotional control. Throatiness results from tension of the throat muscles. Therefore the throat muscles should be relaxed and the abdominal muscles relied on more fully for tone production. The tongue should be kept well forward. Occasionally a debater has a *nasal* tone, in which sounds other than *m*, *n*, and *ng* pass through the nose rather than through the mouth, because the soft palate has dropped. Nasal resonance on the sounds *m*, *n*, *ng*, should be observed; for all other sounds, it is well to practice lifting the soft palate so that the nasal opening is completely closed. The vocalized sound then passes out through the mouth. The ideal voice is clear and pleasant; it uses all the resonators; it is free from *nasality*, from guttural heaviness, from a chesty growl, and from shrill thinness. It is a voice resulting from emotional control in which tensions are normal and balance is secured between tension and relaxation.

**B. Force, or Intensity.** Intensity is determined by the "amplitude of the vibrations of the vocal bands," or the height of the air wave and the frequency of vibration. Force means loudness, or carrying power. Be sure you speak loudly enough, but not too loudly. When you begin to speak, adjust your voice to the size of the room. Keep your eyes on the people occupying the back rows and decide whether they can hear you. Note whether you are

using too much vocal force. The secret of providing proper intensity lies in proper control of the breathing. The muscles of respiration should be well controlled; keep the lungs filled; see that the resonance chambers are open, to give the maximum reënforcement to the sounds; enunciate clearly; learn to listen to your own voice; seek the criticism of friends; so will you succeed in delivering your discussion in emphatic tones which gain the full response.

**C. Pitch.** Pitch depends "upon the frequency of vibration of the sounding body and is designated with accuracy in terms of the number of vibrations per second."<sup>1</sup> Pitch is regulated by changing the size of the resonator. Every pitch is of course adjusted to a resonator of a certain size, the lower pitch requiring a big resonator, the higher pitch a small resonator. The psychological factor is also to be reckoned with. Because voice is produced by neuromuscular activity, the result of impulses from the brain, the voice is conditioned by the "state of the mind and the emotions. . . . The more active the mind and the deeper the emotion the greater is the pitch variation, generally speaking; the more logical and clear the thought and the more perfectly balanced with emotion, the more effective are the pitch changes."<sup>2</sup>

Therefore think as clearly as you can, image the material clearly, and allow your emotions to become alert, but under control. Avoid an excessively high or low pitch. To reduce the pitch, open the mouth, relax the throat muscles, and think in terms of a lower pitch. To elevate the pitch, see that the voice is not muffled, and think in terms of higher pitch. Practice discrimination between pitches. Avoid a monopitch, which is caused by a lack of variation in pitch. If you have a singsong delivery or a regularly repeated rising or falling inflection, listen to the pitch patterns (tunes) of others and of yourself; study your own delivery. Self-confidence, courage, the development of proper

<sup>1</sup> C. E. Seashore, *The Psychology of Musical Talent*, p. 31. Silver, Burdett and Company, 1919.

<sup>2</sup> Alice W. Mills and Sarah T. Barrows, *Voice and Articulation*, pp. 26, 27. Department of Speech, State University of Iowa, 1926.

mental and emotional conditions, will also help. It is possible for a comparatively poor voice to develop a more pleasing melody and variation.

**D. Duration, or Time.** Duration is measured by the length or brevity of each sound and by the rate at which sounds succeed one another. The debater's thought, emotion, his breathing, his ability to articulate, all affect duration. Debaters usually rush through their speeches, especially in rebuttal, in an attempt to say a thousand words in five minutes. One hundred and twenty-five words per minute represent usually the proper rate. A full realization of the words when you speak will prevent a wild dash; so will a desirable emotional reaction to the ideas give proper movement to your delivery. Pauses will be properly used. A lively sense of communication, too, will help you to adjust your rate and movement to secure the maximum result. If your speaking is retarded, you may correct it by having a complete knowledge of your subject and by studying sound production to improve your articulation.

### VIII. PRONUNCIATION

Pronunciation is a matter of correct utterance of vowel and consonant sounds, of proper accent, of the proper division of words into sentences. Debaters, like other speakers in and out of school, commit obvious faults, through carelessness or ignorance, in the utterance of vowel and consonant sounds. For example, the debater often says *wuz* for *was*, *worry* for *weary*, *git* for *get*, *inawgerate* for *inaugurate*, *goverment* for *government*, *vowl* for *vowel*, *ast* for *asked*, *Febuwary* for *February*, *jist* for *just*, *instid* for *instead*, *wy* for *why*, and so on. In some sections of the country he may talk of a *horspital* for *hospital*; in others he may refer to an *idear* for *idea*; in still others he may talk of *Warshington* for *Washington*. He may also mispronounce individual words by misplacing accents; as, *al'ly* for *ally*, *en'tire* for *entire*, *i'dea* for *ide'a*, *re'call* for *recall*, *fi'nance* for *finance*. Further, he



may run a series of sounds together in a sentence and omit others. Thus he may say, "Whadjumean?" "Ye-ah, Ah-mgo'n't'go-home"; "gotter right tusaywhatathink."

**A. Importance.** Faulty pronunciation is objectionable in social and business life because it arouses prejudices; in debate and public discussion it is equally objectionable because it interferes with the successful outcome of the argument. The objection here is not simply that the fault reveals the speaker's careless habits or his lack of education, but that slovenly pronunciation violates Spencer's principle of securing the maximum economy of attention. Because custom prefers certain combinations of sounds, a university audience or a critic-judge who teaches English will probably be less likely to vote for you if you say *ad'ult* for *adult'*, *col'yum* for *column*, *pome* for *po'em*, *re'sources* for *resour'ces*.

Almost as offensive to cultured listeners is the effort of the speaker to be overprecise in his speech. Some pupils, guided by "elocutionary" teachers, block off each syllable and word so that the natural inflection — and the discrimination between strong and weak forms — is lost. "We-are-met-here-to-day-with-the-purpose-of-discussing-the-advisability-of-requiring-all-students-to-take-part-in-athletics," spoken with labored completeness, will lead most of the audience to vote against athletics in any or all of its forms.

**B. Suggestions for Improvement.** The first step in correcting bad habits is to become familiar with the Webster, Standard, Century, and Oxford dictionaries. Carry a small dictionary and use it. You need to listen to your own speech sounds and to those of others and to become aware of speech habits. These dictionaries, it must be admitted, may well be supplemented by Daniel Jones's *An English Pronouncing Dictionary* (E. P. Dutton, 1922). English spelling does not always indicate the pronunciation. This latter dictionary is helpful in that it applies the International Phonetic Alphabet. This alphabet gives one symbol for each sound. With such a system we can indicate each sound in the language; for example, *a* represents the sound of *a* in *ask*;

æ, the sound of *a* in *at*; *e* the sound of *e* in *they*. By the aid of these dictionaries and by the habit of friendly and reciprocal criticism you will improve as a speaker and debater.

**C. The Standard of Pronunciation.** The question arises, What is the proper pronunciation? If New Englander, Southerner, Mid-Westerner, each has his own method of pronouncing *a* and other letters, what is standard? A book on debating obviously has no room for a full discussion of standards of pronunciation. Most students of speech are agreed, however, that standard speech should contain no elements that would disturb the ear of the educated people of a given community or region. In general, the people of the United States follow the pronunciation given in Webster's, the Standard, or the Century dictionary. In addition, the people of the Middle West, for example, sound their *r*'s more roundly than do the New Englanders and have other regional speech characteristics. Within limits you will conform to the acceptable speech standard for your region and respect the pronunciation habits of those from other sections. In conclusion, good pronunciation for the debater as for others will result only from constant application. Study the formation of vowels and consonants. Read the books recommended at the end of this chapter. Continually inform yourself on standard usage; let your local dialect give place to the cultured usage of your community; and the usage of your community will gradually give way to a wider standard, if such can be found, which will more completely identify your speech with the best usage of your region and of the country.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. List the three or four chief faults in delivery of school and college debaters, and tell how you would correct these faults.
2. Be prepared for a two-minute discussion of the following comment:<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> C. F. Lindsley, "Delivery in Debate," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (January, 1918), Vol. IV, pp. 116-118.

We have inherited wrong ideas about argumentative delivery.

Ninety per cent of college debaters seem to have not the slightest knowledge of effective presentation. Their speaking is so "preponderantly boisterous and conclusive, so disfigured by volcanic fervor, for which the matter ejected affords no adequate excuse," that our sensibilities are paralyzed and rendered incapable of absorbing the evidence they produce.

I inveigh against the prevalent style of debate for several reasons. First, average debating is not good public speaking. Most modern authorities will accept as the definition of public speaking, "enlarged and dignified conversation." The virtues of good address are clearness, directness, and force. But what coach can have these principles in mind and allow his team to pound furiously for thirty minutes without pause or variety? Confused thinking only can result. How many debaters can look calmly at their audience and say implicitly: "I am talking to you and you and you. I want this idea to get under your skin"? No! There is a torrent of speech accompanied by violent shakings of the head, a flood of facts and quotations, a fifteen-minute speech in ten, and a "Thank you." Now the first end of all speech is to make itself clear. Lincoln accused Douglas of being like a cuttlefish, a fish that throws out a dark substance into the water to hide its exact position. Again, he said Judge Douglas reminded him of the little Frenchman he knew in the northwest whose legs were so short that when he walked through the snow the seat of his trousers rubbed out his footprints. These analogies characterize the average college debater. His speeches also lack force. Things are great or small only by comparison. Ideas are made important by contrast. The speech that strikes a constant key, that plunges along in the same channel, orotund and extreme, lacks the first degree of force. Yes, average debating is not good public speaking. There is nothing of the human quality, no conversational style, no sincere personality. . . .

To roll forth automatically a mass of highly concentrated data, to grind along monotonously for ten minutes like a hand-organ, to recite parrot fashion, as most debaters do, is not thinking on one's feet. The chief concern of our profession — physical and psychical correlation — is totally obscured.

3. What specific suggestions have you in regard to overcoming nervousness?

4. To what extent is good delivery dependent on conviction?

5. Give a two-minute speech on each of the following topics (in each case point out the advantages and disadvantages of the method): (1) reading the speech, (2) delivery from memory, (3) extemporaneous delivery, (4) impromptu debating.

6. Defend or condemn the use of charts in debate.

7. Describe how you would conduct yourself on the platform : your form of salutation and conclusion, your attitude toward the chairman, other speakers, and the audience.

8. What are the advantages of action? (Consult J. S. Gaylord, "The Development of Action and Gesture," in *Speech Training and Public Speaking for Secondary Schools* (A. M. Drummond, editor). The Century Co., 1925.)

9. Describe what for the debater is proper posture, movement, gesture.

10. Illustrate the posture, movement, and gesture of the following individuals: (1) a college student at a football game; (2) a "green" freshman just arriving on the college campus; (3) a high-school student about to deliver his first declamation; (4) a ninety-year-old man taking a stroll; (5) a policeman on duty as traffic officer.

11. Represent some activity, such as directing an orchestra, and invite the class to guess what the situation is.

12. Explain what is voice quality. How would you correct the following? (1) breathiness, (2) huskiness, (3) thinness, (4) throatiness, (5) nasality, (6) lack of resonance. (See Borden and Busse, *Speech Correction*, pp. 223-227, F. S. Crofts & Co., 1925.)

13. Explain the speech mechanism by the analogy of the mechanism of a guitar or a violin.

14. Read aloud to the class a dozen lines of poetry or a dozen lines from some printed debate, to illustrate proper voice quality.

15. Explain what force is in delivery, and by reading a short selection illustrate for the class desirable force.

16. What relation has force to pitch? How would you attempt to lower your pitch? to raise it?

17. Read with appropriate pitch a short selection.

18. How fast should one speak on the platform? Attempt to classify your classmates roughly according to their customary rate of delivery. Arrange in three divisions; as, (1) too fast, (2) satisfactory, (3) too slow.

19. Deliver the following statements with appropriate action and voice:

a. I defy the honorable gentleman; I defy the government; I defy their whole phalanx, let them come forth. — HENRY GRATTAN



b. If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I never would lay down my arms — never — never — never. — EARL OF CHATHAM, "Attempt to subjugate America"

c. The capital leading questions on which you must this day decide are these two: First, whether you ought to concede; and secondly, what your concession ought to be. — EDMUND BURKE, "Conciliation with America"

d. O miserable and unfortunate ministry! O blind and incapable men! whose measures are framed with so little foresight, and extended with so little firmness, that they not only crumble to pieces, but bring on the ruin of their country. — CHARLES JAMES FOX, "The American War"

## 20. Comment on the following definition of standard speech:

Standard speech is that form of spoken language that contains nothing that would jar on the ear of an educated speaker of Southern English. — WALTER RIPMAN, *Good Speech*, pp. 9-10. E. P. Dutton & Company, 1922.)

21. Should Canada, Australia, England, and the United States have a common standard? (Quoted from Mills and Barrows, *Voice and Articulation*, p. 69. State University of Iowa, 1926.)

22. Decide what is standard pronunciation (refer to Webster's Dictionary) for each of the following words: apparatus, aviator, mobilize, mobilization, chasten, gratis, implacable, pathos, mandamus, status, amicable, bade, lamentable, and, grand, hand, barrel, catch, drama, haunt, was, half, laugh, because, daughter, water, soda, extra, butcher, zebra, amenable, inherent, serious, weary, experience, clique, creek, precedent, discretion, leg, egg, get, many, yet, sincerity, sacrifice, inquiry, biography, sanguine, docile, divan, diploma, Italian, been, rinse, pretty, assimilate, Latin, similar, revolt, vaudeville, dolorous, produce, domicile, on, orator, authority, foreign, majority, culinary, duke, institute, student, assume, tumult, injurious, ducat, speculate, inaugurate, allow, believe, before, degree, effect, efficient, ensue, elegant, tenant, confidence, prudence, judgment, government, president, vowel, certain, pupil, virile, civilization, Ohio, potato, widow, tobacco, actor, legislator, evil, devil, hundred, children, iron, have, partner, for, asked, candidate, February, last, when, why, yeast, anywhere, idea, Asia, often, almond, Christmas, poignant, raspberry, salmon, subtle, gibbet, give, belligerent, desultory, Elysian, exact, exile, archangel, architect, with, thither, cupboard, draught, admirable, alias, comparable, despicable, address, entire, defect, robust, pretense, applicable, cocaine, combatant, contumely, conversant, cornet, deficit, disputant, explicable, exquisite, inchoate, interested, mayoralty, obsequies, rapine, traverse,



ally, romance, acclimate, adult, caloric, chauffeur, idea, inquire, opponent, recall, recess, recluse, research, resource, vagary, access, advertisement, confiscate, alien, conduit, courtier, evening, aged, learned, beloved, finance, onerous, extraordinary, era, blatant.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- AVERY, ELIZABETH; DORSEY, JANE; and SICKELS, VERA A. *First Principles of Speech Training*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1929.
- BARROWS, SARAH T., and CORDTS, ANNA D. *The Teacher's Book of Phonetics*. Ginn and Company, 1926.
- GRAY, G. W., and WISE, C. M. *The Bases of Speech*. Harper & Brothers, 1934.
- KENYON, J. S. *American Pronunciation*. George Wahr, 1924.
- O'NEILL, J. M., and WEAVER, A. T. *The Elements of Speech* (Revised Edition). Longmans, Green & Co., 1933.
- SARETT, L. R., and FOSTER, W. T. *Basic Principles of Speech*. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1936.
- WINANS, J. A. *Public Speaking* (Revised Edition). D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1917.
- WOOLBERT, C. H., and SMITH, J. F. *The Fundamentals of Speech* (Second Revised Edition). Harper & Brothers, 1934.

## CHAPTER XV

### FORMAL DEBATE

I. PREVALENCE OF DEBATING. II. THE DEBATING TRADITION. III. DEBATE LEAGUES AND TOURNAMENTS. IV. NUMBER OF SPEAKERS. V. METHODS OF PREPARATION FOR CONTEST DEBATING. VI. JUDGING THE CONTEST. VII. DECISIONLESS DEBATING

#### I. PREVALENCE OF DEBATING

Debating, as suggested previously, is argument, usually oral, under definite rules. Legislative debates relate to a motion and conform closely to parliamentary law and to rules for limited discussion. Court-room pleas before judge or jury are limited also by rules of evidence and other legal restrictions. Platform debates — including those in the Southern states on religious issues and before denominational groups — and more often political debates feature in the headlines of the dailies and command the attention of millions of radio listeners. Discussions on street corners and in parks — notably in Hyde Park, London, where speakers defend every sort of opinion and submit to cross-examination and heckling — might also be put down as debates, although the free atmosphere eliminates practically every rule of procedure. Debate is the inevitable accompaniment of free speech and universal suffrage, a method of “dramatizing differences of opinion” and of crystallizing great issues so that the voters can act intelligently. Free discussion is the cornerstone of our American government. Only through untrammelled public debating can our republic function. Colleges and universities, where free inquiry is encouraged and where contemporary problems challenge solution, naturally number student debates among the more important undergraduate activities.

## II. THE DEBATING TRADITION

American school and college debating continues a mental discipline widely exercised even in an age before there were printed books. Greek and Roman students were trained through dialectic and debate. In the Middle Ages preparation in theology, law, and medicine was carried on by means of scholastic disputations in Latin. Dialectic was foremost among the seven liberal arts. After the Reformation, power in disputation continued in high regard, especially among the leaders of Protestantism. The academies and universities more and more took over the practice from the monasteries. Edmund Burke, for example, at Trinity College, Dublin, in 1742 founded a debating club, the minutes of which make clear that he spoke on numerous occasions.

In American colleges debating was carried on from colonial days. The Massachusetts Historical Society<sup>1</sup> lists several hundred subjects debated by Harvard students from 1655 to 1790. These subjects included "Was there a rainbow before the deluge?" and "Is the voice of the people the voice of God?" James Otis, at Harvard, had training in dialectics. Fisher Ames, entering Harvard in 1770, was a member of a debating society. When Gouverneur Morris was graduated from King's College (Columbia) in 1768, his debating club presented him with a silver medal.

Until after the Civil War, literary clubs flourished throughout the country, in schools and colleges and in many a town and country center. Webster, Clay, Calhoun, Rufus Choate, Phillips, Lincoln, and many other orators developed their skill in debating clubs, in either a collegiate or a community organization.

With the rise of the intercollegiate debating contest, beginning with the Harvard-Yale debate in 1892, the rules multiplied. Colleges East and West evolved complicated machinery to govern their debates; secondary schools took up the art; state universities fostered state-wide leagues that today include hundreds

<sup>1</sup> Proceedings of the Massachusetts Historical Society, 1800-1881, Vol. 18.

of schools in a single state and provide series upon series of inter-scholastic clashes, all conducted under rigid rules that sometimes prohibit even applause by the audience.

### III. DEBATE LEAGUES AND TOURNAMENTS

The typical intercollegiate debate is conducted under a triangular contract, in which three institutions meet each other on the same night, each with two teams. Sometimes two colleges meet each other, again each with two teams. Larger organizations, like the Mid-West Debate League, the Western Conference Debate League, and the Eastern Intercollegiate Debate League embracing nine universities and colleges, for the most part prove unwieldy. Now and then a college team, traveling hundreds of miles, will meet many opponents and debate either side of several questions. The subject chosen is almost invariably a practical one of current political or economic significance.

Since 1925, debate tournaments have become popular. Pi Kappa Delta, the intercollegiate honorary forensic fraternity, took the lead in sponsoring such gatherings. A hundred or more colleges with chapters of that organization send their debaters, orators, and extempore speakers to a biennial national contest. Four or five preliminary rounds of debates are conducted before the eliminations begin. Three or four days are spent in the process of selecting the winners. Many colleges and universities, in line with this popular program, have staged invitational tournaments. Because for a relatively small financial outlay the debate teams can meet many distant schools, the tournament plan has grown in popularity. Debating for women has also increased, especially since the passage of the woman suffrage amendment. Intercollegiate leagues for women and occasionally separate debate tournaments are maintained. The average college has from twelve to thirty active intercollegiate undergraduate debaters, who in a single season engage in fifty or

seventy-five debates on five or six questions. Those who achieve distinction are eligible to such honorary forensic organizations as Delta Sigma Rho, Pi Kappa Delta, and Tau Kappa Alpha.

#### IV. NUMBER OF SPEAKERS

Three speakers make up the conventional team. Each has a main speech of ten or twelve minutes and a second speech, or rebuttal, of five minutes. Occasionally, to cut down traveling expenses, to give each speaker slightly longer time, or to raise standards by selecting only superior speakers, two may compose the team, or an institution may be represented by even a single speaker. Objection, however, is raised by both educators and students if only a few out of a student body of hundreds or thousands have these opportunities.

#### V. METHODS OF PREPARATION FOR CONTEST DEBATING

If you are to participate successfully in contest debating, you will proceed methodically to equip yourself.

**A. Mastery of the Art of Debate in the Classroom.** Master the art of debate. To save debating from mediocrity and worse, you should so apply the technique that those who listen will respect this student activity. Only through proper classroom instruction and study can the best results come. Your basis for good argument will be thorough understanding of the elements of subject matter, efficient means of gathering and tabulating material, effective methods of organizing argument and evidence, ability to discriminate between sound and unsound materials, skill in composition of ideas, power in rebuttal and in delivery, including ability to persuade an audience.

**B. Systematic Work under a Debate Director.** Do your work in harmony with the program mapped out by the director of debate. Note that he is a director and not a coach. The latter has been, by practice, a sort of intellectual football coach who



often drives his debating teams vigorously and with a sure hand, but who, in his determination to win, overlooks on occasion the educational elements involved and thus perverts the sport. The director, or adviser, will select teams and call them together for general advice on methods of gathering material and working up the case. His main function will be to inspire rather than to command. His work throughout will be that of a critic rather than that of a member of the squad. His teams, it is hoped, will work as enthusiastically and effectively as those of the old-style coach and will doubtless win an honorable share of victories. The difference, measured by the results, is that teams under the influence of an educational director should develop more self-reliance and a more intelligent conception of the ultimate end of discussion, that is, the presentation of sound thinking no less than the gaining of a technical point.

**C. Selection of a Desirable Question.** Not always can you, the debater, determine the subject. Committees representing Pi Kappa Delta or other bodies usually do so. In many cases, however, at least for early-season debates, you can help to select the subject. Get one that is interesting and untechnical. It may often be a local issue, — one related to the experience of the speakers. It should attract an audience; for debaters find little inspiration in addressing empty seats. The success of the discussion, however, is not to be measured merely by the number of persons who are willing to attend; for college debaters thresh out many questions which, by general admission, appeal to relatively few persons. We need to get away from the impression that the success of the debate is to be measured by the number of heads to be counted. Demagogues depend to a degree for their crowds upon the sensational character of their subjects, as widely announced. School and university debaters are justified at times in selecting topics that will appeal to the few.

**D. Thorough Preparation.** Insist upon your own thorough preparation. The proposed reforms in debating, calculated to make the speaker a more human and companionable person as he

faces an audience, also encourage the emphasis upon persuasion to the neglect of genuine argument. The educational justification of argument has been the severe mental discipline offered, a type of intellectual expression that has led debating in some institutions to be regarded as the gauge of the intellectual efficiency of the college. The surest way to discredit college forensics is to present public debates for which the contestants have made only shallow preparation. If in 1915 college teams spent too many weeks or months in preparation for a debate, today they spend too few. Twenty-four-hour debates and similar extemporaneous programs have not helped. You and your colleagues in debate should give at least six weeks to solid preparation for a public debate on some important question, and you should know your facts and arguments.

**E. Sincerity.** As far as possible, set forth only that side of the case that reflects your real convictions. Some truth is found in the indictment that glibness is often encouraged at the sacrifice of conviction. If, for example, the debater has a firm belief that any preparation against war is wrong, he should not be expected to talk in an intercollegiate contest in support of such preparedness. Usually this problem of student sincerity may be solved by each institution's having two teams which present opposite sides of a given question. Then, too, in regard to many issues undergraduate opinion is so little developed that the question of well-grounded conviction is absent. Concerning many social, political, and economic questions, students, like other human beings, have comparatively little knowledge and are ready to investigate and discuss either side. Too little care has been taken, however, to encourage the genuine expression of the student's independent opinion.

**F. Reference to Notes. Work from Carefully Documented Notes.** Read again the chapter on research and follow especially the suggestions for note-taking.

**G. Briefing. Work from a Complete Brief.** Read again the chapter on briefing and form the habit of methodically organizing

material into an outline that is at once complete, logical, and buttressed by concrete evidence.

**H. Written Composition. Write Speeches in Order to Develop Your Command of Vivid Expression.** Review the chapter on development of the speech. But leave your written speeches at home, perhaps in the wastebasket.

**I. Delivery. Practice Delivery Daily.** Talk to a vacant chair or to your colleagues. Review the chapter on delivery and develop a direct, vigorous, conversational style, free from bombast or insincerity.

**J. Rebuttal. Prepare Your Rebuttal Systematically and Fully.** Read again the chapter on rebuttal and follow the suggestions.

**K. Platform Conduct. In the Public Debate (and in All Practice Debates) Observe the Amenities of the Platform.** Be courteous. Your salutation will be "Ladies and gentlemen," rather than "Mr. Chairman, worthy opponents, honorable judges, ladies and gentlemen." Welcome (in unhackneyed and sincere language) your guest speakers; thank the other college, the Rotary Club, or other organization that has invited you to speak. In the debate be invariably courteous to the other teams in your handling of their arguments. Don't "defy" them and use the other terms that connote antagonism. Don't address them directly and accusingly. Let your attitude be friendly, gentlemanly at every turn. While others are speaking, don't show disdain, don't confer loudly, or otherwise distract attention.

**L. Sportsmanship. After the Debate be a "Good Sport."** Avoid condescension, ill-concealed bitterness, obvious pride; you are a representative college man or woman. The judge or the rival speakers may have tried your soul. Quote Emerson to yourself or to some other person; at any rate, understand before you enter this competitive exercise that your emotional and intellectual stability are to be maintained.

**M. Work of Each Speaker. In the Debate accept the Responsibilities of your Individual Assignment as a Speaker.** The first speaker for the affirmative has the advantage of an opportunity

to present his speech exactly as he has prepared it. His manner should be easy, conciliatory, and judicial. His business is to explain in simple, interesting terms the meaning of the proposition and the real issues upon which hinges the decision. This analysis should be brief and understandable; it should lead logically to the argument proper. The first negative opponent must rise to the requirements of the moment. His ability in extemporaneous discussion must immediately make itself felt. He must agree or disagree with the affirmative analysis; he must point out sharply the real difference between the two sides, and take the edge from the impression made by the opening speech. The alternating speakers thereafter must continually adapt themselves to the occasion. Cut-and-dried speeches must be discarded. The performance must be from the shoulder. Fair play and sound reasoning alone must win. Whatever happens, the speaker must keep his head; he must keep the audience with him; he must make them see his case; he must avoid the temptation to ramble among inconsequential details; he must stick to the main points and must insist upon debating only essential issues.

The two or three affirmative speakers together must present and defend a unified "case." The negative speakers must undermine it either as a whole or in part, and may or may not build up an alternative proposal.

**N. Time Limits.** Time limits are strictly observed. A two-minute warning from the timekeeper is usually given. After the final tap of the bell the speaker is allowed only to finish his sentence; he must speedily retire. Student debaters clamor for much time on the platform; the audience, however, becomes bored after one hour and thirty minutes. Hence the sharp warnings, and the compromise between the zealous debaters and a less enthusiastic audience. Many intercollegiate debates are now limited to one hour.

## VI. JUDGING THE CONTEST

**A. Instructions to Judges.** The purpose of the contest is to decide which team has debated more effectively. Just what effective debating is has never been settled or agreed upon, as anyone who reads current texts or listens to professional discussions on this subject will note. However, the instructions to judges, which are sometimes quite elaborate, stipulate that "the decision is to be given on the merits of the debate rather than on the merits of the question" and that "material is of more importance than form." It is furthermore suggested that "should one team excel in delivery and the other in material, the decision should go to the team that excels in material." Judges are usually expected to give due credit for (1) general knowledge of the subject, (2) skill in analysis, (3) quality and quantity of evidence, (4) skill in handling arguments and in building up a logical case, (5) absence of fallacious reasoning, (6) teamwork, (7) skill in rebuttal and refutation, (8) excellence in rhetorical organization and in the use of English, and (9) excellence in delivery, including platform manners, bodily action, voice, enunciation, persuasiveness, and such qualities as tact, fair-mindedness, and humor. A sample ballot follows :

## INSTRUCTIONS TO JUDGES

You are requested to determine which team should be awarded the decision. In general you are to consider the merits of the debate and not the merits of the question ; you are to determine which team has done the more effective debating. You are to maintain absolute neutrality in regard to the question, the speakers, and the institutions or organizations involved. In rendering your decisions, you are to consider the following points of comparison between the teams :

*A.* Which team shows a more complete knowledge of the subject?

*B.* Which team shows throughout the debate a greater skill in analysis of the question?

*\*C.* Which team shows superior skill in using arguments backed up by evidence and in building up a logical case?





competition but not to be tolerated in the debating realm, especially in tournaments.) A teacher of debating, who knows the exercise through and through, and who — in theory at any rate — lays aside all prejudice and votes for that team which demonstrates on the platform greater ability as debaters, has been preferred. It has been counted a bargain to pay such a one for his services. After the contest his explanation of his vote and his criticism of the teams are regarded as highly helpful to the cause of good debating.

An expert judge, it must be emphasized, should know the technicalities of debate. He should consent to judge only if he has reason to believe that he will be free from bias on the question or toward the institutions or speakers involved. Furthermore, he should know fully the subject under discussion, so that he can point out the general inaccuracies as well as the strong points. It goes without saying that in the contest itself he should be constantly alert and should take abundant notes. In his explanation of his decision he should be brief, but clear and definite. He should state more, for example, than the fact that in delivery a team is superior; he should explain specifically wherein its delivery is superior. If possible, he should also meet the debaters in a group and give individual criticism. The right type of critic judge will prove immensely helpful.

## VII. DECISIONLESS DEBATING

Why not abolish utterly the decisions? Some schools and colleges have done so. This method attempts to discuss the question on its merits and to eliminate every vestige of competition. Can you banish the game feature and still retain interest in the exercise? Probably not. Occasional meetings of this type are doubtless desirable; but as the sole method of working out a program for use between societies, classes, schools, or colleges the plan would kill debating. It is clear that you cannot have a real football game with no teams, no judges, no goal posts. It is equally

clear that you cannot have a debating contest after you have deliberately scrapped the machinery. What would be the incentive for two institutions to come together year after year? With the school spirit eliminated, with no "home" or "visiting" team, with the sport element conscientiously eliminated, it is hard to conceive of debaters' undergoing the thorough preparation peculiar to American debate.

**A. Interest in Opinion as a Motive.** "But isn't the impetus of true conviction," you may ask, "sufficient to call out the best student minds and to guarantee at least as complete preparation as that which now takes place?" It is to be doubted whether discussion for the mere sake of setting forth undergraduate opinion will attract numbers of students or lead them to undergo that vigorous preparation made by the debater who is out to win.

**B. Desirability of Competition.** "But," you may object, "that is just the trouble: teams are out to win. And that object degrades the whole principle of competition!" We recognize and encourage it in the economic world and in the scholastic world. University systems of awarding honors both in America and in England are based upon the theory of competition. In England the stimulus to scholarship rests upon an elaborate system of competition for prizes and honors. The fact "that competition may be carried further than is wise does not prove that it is not valuable as a stimulus."<sup>1</sup>

**C. Miscellaneous Equivalent Incentives for Creating Interest.** Can we not provide a substitute motive for the spur to win? Mere ambition to utter the truth and to discomfit a rival will hardly be a dependable objective. Election to an honorary society, the opportunity for college men to match wits with the women of neighboring institutions, the prospect of replying to questions from the floor, the stimulus of a discussion with speakers from a British or Australian university — such motives call forth

<sup>1</sup> A. L. Lowell, "Competition in College," *The Atlantic Monthly* (June, 1909), Vol. CIII, pp. 822-831.

fine debating energy. But such motives and situations, of course, must be regarded as exceptional.

Decisionless discussion has much to contribute in the matter of informal delivery, identity of speaker with audience, sincere presentation, an atmosphere of reality in place of that of extreme artificiality. Schools will do well to use it on occasion and to rejoice when it results in improved debating. But call it what it is — discussion, not contest debating. Our problem is that of retaining competitive debating, purged, if possible, of any weaknesses, and conducted in the spirit of the most liberal and recent educational thought. If competition in debate endangers those educational values, then the debating game had better be abandoned; but there is no evidence to prove that those educational values are seriously threatened.

#### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Give a five-minute speech or present a written report (five hundred words) upon some phase of one of the following topics: (1) Debating in Roman education, (2) Debating in medieval universities, (3) The debating training of certain American orators of the Revolutionary period, (4) The training in debate of Webster (or some other representative speaker), (5) The first intercollegiate debate of my college, (6) The advantages and disadvantages of membership in a debate league, (7) The aims and programs of Pi Kappa Delta (or some other honorary college forensic organization), (8) The advantages and disadvantages of debate tournaments, (9) Financing college debating, (10) The student-activity fee and debating, (11) A program for team preparation of an intercollegiate debate, (12) Sincerity and bilateral argument, (13) Platform behavior in debate, (14) Time cards in debate, (15) Procedure during a debate, (16) Instructions to a judge of debate, (17) The qualifications and procedure of the expert judge, (18) The arguments for and against decisionless debating, (19) A defense of competition in debating.

2. Attend an intercollegiate debate and criticize according to the rating sheet in Appendix C.

3. Criticize a printed debate in the most recent volume of the *University Debaters' Annual*, *Intercollegiate Debates*, or other books containing full-length college debates. Let your criticism include comment on (1) analysis, (2) argument and evidence, (3) rebuttal, (4) organization and style, (5) persuasiveness, (6) teamwork, (7) general effectiveness.

4. Read the Lincoln-Douglas debate held at Ottawa, Illinois, and give, in writing, a critic judge's decision on the debate (three hundred words).

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- ALDEN, R. M. *Art of Debate*. Henry Holt and Company, 1900.
- BAKER, G. P., and HUNTINGTON, H. B. *The Principles of Argumentation* (New Edition). Ginn and Company, 1925.
- FOSTER, W. T. *Argumentation and Debating* (Second Revised Edition), pp. 247-262. Houghton Mifflin Company, 1932.
- FRITZ, C. A. *The Method of Argument*. Prentice-Hall, 1931.
- HAYWORTH, DONALD, and CAPEL, R. B. *Oral Argument*, pp. 335-375. Harper & Brothers, 1934.
- LAHMAN, C. P. *Debate Coaching* (Revised Edition). H. W. Wilson Company, 1936.
- NICHOLS, E. R., and BACCHUS, J. H. *Modern Debating*. W. W. Norton and Company, 1936.
- O'NEILL, J. M., and MACBURNEX, J. H. *The Working Principles of Argument*, pp. 335-376. The Macmillan Company, 1932.
- SHAW, W. C. *The Art of Debate*. Allyn and Bacon, 1922.
- SUMMERS, H. B. *Contest Debating*. H. W. Wilson Company, 1934.
- WINANS, J. A., and UTTERBACK, W. E. *Argumentation*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1930.
- Speech Bulletin* (Supplement to the *Quarterly Journal of Speech*), Vol. II (December, 1930), "Debate Issue."

*2*  
*Debate*  
*on*  
*something*  
*debate*  
*1930-1931*  
*1930-1931*



## CHAPTER XVI

### SPECIAL TYPES OF DEBATE

- I. THE CROSS-EXAMINATION TYPE. II. THE HECKLING TYPE. III. THE DIRECT-CLASH TYPE. IV. THE PARLIAMENTARY, OR BRITISH, TYPE. V. THE CONGRESSIONAL TYPE

Debating in the United States, although at times retaining the complete elements of the activity as it was practiced after the turn of the century, has changed considerably in style and procedure. Dissatisfaction with the formality of the older conventions, and the demand for a larger number of participants, for closer contact between speaker and audience, and for a more extempore type of delivery, have resulted in a wide variety of debating modes. The various experiments have led to four or five innovations that have merit either for the classroom or for the intercollegiate platform.

#### I. THE CROSS-EXAMINATION TYPE

One proposal, typical of many, for making the debate more interesting to an audience, for spurring on the speaker to more complete preparation, for insuring more satisfactory rebuttals, is the so-called cross-examination, or Oregon, plan of debating.<sup>1</sup> According to this procedure, two speakers are on a team. The first affirmative speaker presents the entire affirmative case in (say) twelve minutes; then the first negative has an equal amount of time for presenting the entire negative case. The second negative cross-examines the first affirmative for eight

<sup>1</sup> J. S. Gray, "The Oregon Plan of Debating," *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (April, 1926), Vol. XII, pp. 175-179.

minutes, and the second affirmative cross-examines the first negative (also for eight minutes). The second negative then presents a summary of the negative case, and finally the second affirmative summarizes his side, each of these final speeches being limited to eight minutes. The cross-examination is limited to specific questions; the chairman rules concerning the relevancy of the questions and of the answers. Critic judges vote at the end.

If a third speaker for each team is desired, he may present the rebuttal summary for his side, or he may cross-examine the entire opposing team.

The cross-examination type may be used without decisions. The sponsors of the Oregon plan intended the type to supply interest to audience and speakers without the presence of a judge. If a speaker is to maintain his case, his preparation must be thorough; the performance is usually free from academic dryness. Sometimes the examiner and examinee lose their composure and so defeat the goal of platform amity and persuasiveness. The chairman is highly important in limiting the questions and replies and in preserving the general decorum. The rebuttals are especially valuable in instructing the audience concerning the issues and in making clear the significance of the previous questions and replies. On the whole, the cross-examination technique, if it can be kept free from the methods of the shyster lawyer, is a highly effective means of developing student speakers and of enlisting the interest of the audience.

## II. THE HECKLING TYPE

The heckling procedure, perhaps borrowed from the British custom of open-air speech-making, allows the opposing speakers, and in some cases the audience, the privilege of interrupting the speaker with questions. Usually the rules require that the speaker be allowed to proceed without interruption for the opening two minutes and the final two minutes. The chairman should prevent the heckler from abusing his privileges. Time is taken out for

the heckling. The cross-examination must be limited to direct, pertinent questions.

The debaters must here exercise the same courtesy and fair play required in the more conventional debating. Interruptions must be worth while in clarifying the issues and statements. Time limits must be carefully agreed to in advance; the entire program should be limited to about an hour. In general the method smacks of the Congressional style, and has the obvious virtues and perhaps the vices of the tense occasions when a Senator rises to ask, "Will the gentleman yield?"

### III. THE DIRECT-CLASH TYPE

The direct-clash debate was introduced under the direction of Edwin H. Paget in North Carolina colleges in 1931-1932. The plan is somewhat as follows:<sup>1</sup>

**A. Number of Speakers.** Two speakers or more make up each team.

**B. Period of Definition and Analysis.** Five or eight minutes may be given to a leader of each side to define and analyze the question. The negative will indicate clearly his point of agreement and disagreement with the affirmative analysis. The subsequent debate must be limited to the issues on which there is clear disagreement.

**C. The First Clash.** A member of the affirmative presents his argument in support of the first main issue (or perhaps a phase of it), in a three-minute speech. The first negative speaker then replies to this specific issue in a two-minute rebuttal. He is followed in order by the second negative, the second affirmative, the third negative, and finally by another affirmative who summarizes. This entire process covers fifteen minutes; it includes seven speeches, one of three minutes and six of two minutes.

<sup>1</sup> The statement here given is a condensation and simplification of the explanation as given in the *Quarterly Journal of Speech* (November, 1932), Vol. XVIII, pp. 648-653.

**D. Second Clash.** The successive clashes duplicate the method of the first one, except that the negative generally advances the first contention (although the affirmative may lead in presenting each clash).

**E. Function of the Judges.** Three judges or one may be used. The chairman allows a momentary pause after any speech for the judges to confer. If at any time after the first two speeches the judging committee decides that one side has obtained a clear advantage on the point, that clash may be abruptly ended. The single judge, or chairman of the judging board, will announce, with reasons, that one side has been awarded the point and score. If the argument proceeds for the full seven speeches, the judge or judges shall then give their decision as is done in any other debate.

The final decision is the sum of the decisions on each issue. To prevent a tie, it is desirable to have an odd number of clashes.

If the debate is decisionless, the chairman may serve also as critic; he may intersperse the speeches with questions and at the end offer comment. Sometimes a vote by the audience after each clash or at the end of the program will enliven the occasion.

#### IV. THE PARLIAMENTARY, OR BRITISH, TYPE

This open-forum system, practiced in this country for years, has also been characteristic of the well-known British debating clubs the Oxford Union Society and the Cambridge Union Society. The numerous visits of their debaters to America since 1922 have undoubtedly influenced the trend of debating in American schools and colleges. A greater degree of informality has resulted, — whether for good or ill remains to be determined.

The Oxford Union Society, for example, is a literary social club, founded a century ago, and includes several hundred students from the twenty-odd colleges. The Union, with the presiding officer's dais and the benches for the government and the opposition, duplicates the House of Commons.

Each of the three or four speakers of the evening is assigned to the side that represents his convictions. With little or no reference to his colleagues he gives his individual argument, usually some fifteen minutes long. If he persists, no bell shuts him off. A polite note from the secretary may remind him of the time. He follows no brief, reproduces no carefully worked-out manuscript. The constant heckling may inspire him to unexpected power in argument. He tries to be natural, informal, conversational; he scores with his wit, invective, and persuasiveness more than with statistics. No judges are there to pass on the merits of the debate. The aim is to establish conviction rather than to obtain a technical decision; to arrive at truth rather than to play a game.

An open forum follows, with perhaps fifteen or twenty speeches from the floor. Finally, not long before midnight, the three or four hundred members divide and vote on the merits of the question, usually a problem of national or international policy, but occasionally philosophy, such as *RESOLVED, That this House pities its grandchildren*. Thus the British system exemplifies the judgeless, open-forum, parliamentary discussion. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this system as compared with the competitive debate?

In general the plan presumably fosters genuine conviction, because each speaker talks only on that side which represents his real mental attitude. Moreover, the open-forum, audience-decision plan establishes an intimacy between the speaker and the audience which makes for better speaking and approaches the public-speaking conditions of life after college. The style is thus more personal, persuasive, humorous, interesting.

The chief disadvantage is that it may make for superficial preparation and thus destroy the thoroughness of training, one of the accomplishments of the American debate. Furthermore, with the substitution of a vote on the merits of the question for that on the merits of the debate the sport element disappears, and the result is likely to be loss of interest on the part of the audience and consequently a decline in attendance.



If the contest feature of the debate is to be retained and if the appeal is to be made to the audience, then some plan should be worked out for measuring the change of opinion of the audience as a basis for deciding the contest. A vote before the debate, followed by one after the debate, the same audience participating as judges in both cases, has been used as more enlightening than a vote at the end only. The ballot would be arranged somewhat as follows :

BEFORE THE DEBATE	AFTER THE DEBATE
--- Favorable to the proposal	--- Favorable to the proposal
--- Neutral	--- Neutral
--- Opposed to the proposal	--- Opposed to the proposal

The vote would be based upon conviction about the question and not upon the "merits of the debate." A comparison of the votes before and after the discussion will enable you to measure the shift of opinion.

The ballots may be collected and counted while the open forum is in progress. Group the ballots, according to the votes cast before the debate, into three sections: *affirmative*, *neutral*, *negative*. Then, on the basis of the votes after the debate, classify each of the piles into three subpiles labeled *unchanged*, *neutral*, *negative* (if, for example, the affirmative pile is used as a basis). Next tabulate the figures and calculate the final score. This method, if a fairly accurate means of measuring changes of opinion can be worked out, will eliminate the critic judges, substitute a more direct type of arguing, and at the same time preserve the contest element. The following is a sample audience ballot, with a method of scoring :

#### AUDIENCE BALLOT

Each member of the audience is requested to record his opinion on the question \_\_\_\_\_, both before and after the debate.  
(State the resolution)

This vote is to represent the individual conviction on the question and

is in no sense to be construed as a vote on the relative merits of the two teams.

Before the debate I am

(Mark X in the proper space)

- Favorable to the affirmative of the proposition
- Neutral on the proposition
- Opposed to the affirmative of the proposition

After the debate I am now

(Mark X in the proper space)

- Favorable to the affirmative of the proposition
- Neutral on the proposition
- Opposed to the affirmative of the proposition

Signed -----

A change of vote from favorable to neutral would represent a loss of one point; from favorable to unfavorable, two points; a change from unfavorable to favorable, a gain of two points; from neutral to favorable, one point. It has been suggested<sup>1</sup> that the winning team could then be determined by ascertaining the ratio of the total points accumulated for a given side to the total opportunities for scoring; the total opportunities for a given side would be a sum equal to twice the number of votes recorded for the opposing side previous to the debate, plus the number of neutral votes recorded before the debate.

## V. THE CONGRESSIONAL TYPE

As a direct means of training college students for active and practical participation in the political life of the times the convention, or Congressional, type of debating has been occasionally used. Perhaps the first experiment of this kind was the two-day student convention on New York State problems, held at Syracuse University in April, 1933. Sessions of "Congress" have been held at the Kansas State College, at Iowa State College, at the State University of Iowa, and elsewhere.

<sup>1</sup> By Professor H. S. Woodward in conversation with the author.

The plan is that of assembling a representative number of delegates, or "Congressmen," to thresh out, under strict parliamentary rules, a question or questions of the hour. The vote at the end is presumably cast in accordance with the delegates' real convictions and reflects the student sentiment concerning a public issue.

The program should be carefully planned and executed. At the Syracuse convention there were some hundred and sixty delegates from eighteen colleges and universities. One day was given to student committee meetings at which majority and (when necessary) minority reports were drawn up. On the second day all the delegates met in a general assembly, debated for several hours, and voted. Governor Lehman suggested four problems: county-government reform, unemployment insurance, state liquor control, and state aid to local education. For two months the delegates studied these problems, "without bias." Each member was to prepare and offer his individual solution.

The public session on the second day occupied four hours, about one hour for each of the four fields. Majority and minority reports were submitted. Speakers favoring each point of view were alternately given the floor.

At the University of Iowa the session in 1935 was conducted as a Congressional meeting. A speaker of the assembly was appointed. A single subject, an embargo on arms, was used. The group was divided into liberal and progressive groups (since the regular party labels might be misleading and since the delegates were not interested in attaching to themselves the label of "conservative"). A limited amount of time was allowed for each group; the speakers were designated and parliamentary tactics agreed upon in the preliminary party caucuses.

If the Congressional plan is to succeed, (1) the rules of procedure must be carefully and specifically worked out beforehand; (2) students must have special training for committee work; (3) abbreviated rules of parliamentary law must be drawn up and distributed by mimeograph or other means to the partici-

pants; (4) practice in parliamentary law must be given before the gathering; (5) one subject only should be used for the session; (6) a committee of more than a dozen members should be avoided; (7) speeches from the floor should be limited to five minutes; (8) the presiding officer should know his business and should be aided by a parliamentarian whose rulings should be final; (9) the meeting should be so organized and directed that the major emphasis is on discussion of the problem rather than on parliamentary juggling; (10) the tendency to mock-heroic imitation of the United States Senate and oratorical horseplay must be prohibited; since the aim of the gathering is to discuss seriously an important matter and not to imitate bad political speaking.

The procedure makes a successful variation of a classroom program. It may well be added to an intercollegiate debate tournament (as was the case with the session at the State University of Iowa). If sufficient student interest in a topic of the day (state or national) can be developed, if those participating are somewhat mature in their knowledge of debate, parliamentary law, and committee discussion, and if a skilled chairman directs the session, the Congressional type of debating has great possibilities in correlating college debating with practice in political thinking and leadership.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Explain clearly the procedure for each type of debating outlined in this chapter.

2. Criticize a cross-examination debate printed in one of the debate annuals; for example, the Dennison-Cincinnati interuniversity debate on "The merits of the New Deal," in *Intercollegiate Debates* (1935), Vol. XVI, pp. 41-72, or the Lafayette College-University of Pennsylvania debate on "Armed intervention for the protection of American interests abroad," in *University Debaters' Annual* (1933-1934), pp. 63-103.

3. Criticize in a written report (five hundred words) a debate be-

tween British and American universities, as stenographically reported in one of the recent debate annuals.

4. Attend an international debate between universities and criticize it (in five hundred words): note especially differences in (1) methods of pointing arguments, (2) oral style, (3) delivery.

5. Coöperate in the conduct of an undergraduate Congressional session or attend one as an observer. Give a two-hundred-word criticism of the procedure.

## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- BAIRD, A. CRAIG. "Shall American Universities adopt the British System of Debating?" *Quarterly Journal of Speech Education* (June, 1923), Vol. IX, pp. 215-222.
- KNOWER, F. H. "A Study of the Effect of Oral Argument on Changes of Attitude," *Journal of Social Psychology* (August, 1935), Vol. VI, pp. 315-347.
- MILLSON, W. A. D. "Experimental Work in Audience Reaction," *Quarterly Journal of Speech* (February, 1932), Vol. XVIII, pp. 24-25.
- MILLSON, W. A. D. "An Analysis of Audience Reaction to Cross-Examination Debate," *University Debaters' Annual* (1935-1936), pp. 199-206. The H. W. Wilson Company.
- MORRAH, HERBERT A. *The Oxford Union, 1823-1923*. Cassell and Company, 1923.
- WILKE, W. H. "An Experimental Comparison of the Speech, the Radio, and the Printed Page as Propaganda Devices," *Archives of Psychology* (1934), Vol. XXV, No. 169.

(See also references at the end of Chapter XV.)



## CHAPTER XVII

### RADIO DEBATING AND DISCUSSION

- I. PREVALENCE OF DEBATING AND DISCUSSION OVER THE RADIO.
- II. SIMILARITIES OF RADIO AND OTHER SPEAKING SITUATIONS. III. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN RADIO AND NONRADIO DEBATING CONDITIONS.
- IV. SUGGESTIONS FOR THE RADIO DEBATER

#### I. PREVALENCE OF DEBATING AND DISCUSSION OVER THE RADIO

One of the most significant social changes in the recent history of public speaking and debating has been the growing application of argument to radio audiences.

Whereas the political speaker of former generations made history if he was able to command an audience of twenty thousand, a national leader of today, especially if he happens to be a president defending his policies or appealing for reelection, may number his listeners by the millions. Likewise, if the school or college debater of other days talked to more than a thousand, he was lucky; now he often addresses thousands upon thousands over some major radio station or even over a national chain.

Intercollegiate debaters take for granted that their season's schedule will include at least one radio debate. Many state universities own their own stations; other colleges and universities have time regularly allotted to them on commercial stations. Even high-school speakers go on the air, especially in presenting final debates in the state debate leagues. The closing debates of the National Forensic League have for several years been widely broadcast. Even transatlantic debating broadcasts have been scheduled. Oxford University, for example, broadcasting from London, has debated with Columbia University, speaking from New York. More and more will college debaters have oppor-

tunities over the air. Consideration, then, should be given to the technique of debating and discussion as that procedure may be affected by the use of radio.

## II. SIMILARITIES OF RADIO AND OTHER SPEAKING SITUATIONS

Radio debating is in general the same as debating before the visible audience. The same methods which produce effective arguments before the pedestrian, organized, or specialized "eye to eye" audiences usually succeed over the microphone. Good debaters on the college platforms usually make good debaters in the broadcasting studio. No new principles are applicable in the latter situation.

## III. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN RADIO AND NONRADIO DEBATING CONDITIONS

The imposition of the microphone and the receiving set between the debater and his auditor does modify somewhat the problem of adaptability of material and style of presentation. The speaker is alone with the announcer and perhaps a few other colleagues or opponents. Over the air he hopes that many people are listening. But in his heart he suspects that their dials are either off or are tuned elsewhere. Certainly the speaker has little opportunity for the circular response, no opportunity to convey by gestures, posture, bodily movement, his ideas, and little opportunity to create interstimulation among his hearers; for although they may number thousands, they are widely scattered. Further, the speaker is probably aware that the mechanism of the machine favors certain vibration frequencies; it distorts certain sounds; it is unable to transmit fully the changes in pitch and intensity. Its sensitiveness may result in the broadcasting of scratching papers, the turning leaves of books, jingling coins, or clearing of the throat. These conditions make for difficulty.

## IV. SUGGESTIONS FOR THE RADIO DEBATER

1. *Decide in advance what type of audience you intend to address.* You may, consciously or unconsciously, select your radio audience. You may organize in advance certain groups who agree to listen; for example, a group of high-school debaters. Or you may shape your material so that automatically your material appeals to a specified group. The trouble with most academic broadcasting is that the language, the content, and sometimes the delivery are so handled that an extremely limited absent audience is addressed. The following suggestions assume that you are talking to the "average" audience, or rather to those who are sufficiently well-educated and socially conditioned to interest themselves in a discussion of contemporary problems.

2. *Be sure your subject has contemporary appeal.* Consult the headlines and the latest issues of weekly news journals and journals of opinion, to decide what is interesting. If the voters of your state are agitating the repeal of certain sales taxes or other taxes, that problem will find listeners. Even such a remote problem as what happens in Ethiopia may be a question of the hour. In October, 1935, the debaters at the State University of Iowa debated over the university station, WSUI, on successive weeks, "Is Italy justified in waging war on Ethiopia?" "Is the policy of the United States in prohibiting the shipment of arms and munitions to Italy and Ethiopia justified?" "Should the United States coöperate with the members of the League of Nations in applying sanctions against Italy?"

3. *Make your entire program short and your speech brief.* A one-hour speaking program over the radio is extremely long, unless the speaker happens to be the president of the United States or a participant in an international debate between prominent universities. Your individual speech also should be short, not exceeding ten minutes and preferably not more than six or seven minutes. Four seven-minute speeches, with perhaps four rebuttals of two minutes each, make a debate of normal length.

4. *Intersperse formal debates with symposia and informal discussions.* What special type of debating is to be preferred over the radio has not been fully determined. Formal debates, if they are not too long, and if they are of high quality, are not unacceptable to school or college listeners. Our experience over WSUI has indicated that on the whole our audience, largely high-school groups, prefer the symposium. Three or four points of view are clearly presented, with each statement followed by a direct examination of the speakers. The dialogue procedure apparently succeeds better than the longer and more formal process.

5. *Analyze your subject with special reference to your audience.* The principle here stated is of course the same one that is useful for analysis in preparation for the nonradio debate. You are reminded, however, that it is doubly important over the radio to know in advance what probable attitudes and ideas your audience may have. Before some critic judge you may almost ignore the mass of listeners; before the microphone you cannot afford to do so, unless you have no interest in retaining the coöperation of those at the other end. This analysis will guide you in your selection of arguments and in the order of presentation.

6. *Simplify the structure of your speech.* Those who listen to debates are disappointed if you fail to show clear organization. Be sure to make your points stand out. Show that you have underlying logic. Add specific instances, as many as your limited time permits; by all means include a swift analogy or two, for argument and for persuasiveness. Use few authorities (one or two in a six-minute or seven-minute speech), but make the authority significant and appealing to the individual listener. Be sure that the direct quotation is differentiated from the rest of the text. Simplify figures, avoid too many statistics, and make your few stand out forcibly (by your vocal emphasis, by verbal repetition). Eliminate complicated reasoning. Be sure that the links are carefully phrased, evident, and quickly grasped. It is better to develop only two points with concrete illustration than to unfold four or five abstract propositions.

7. *Introduce refutation that both meets the case of the opposition and removes the inhibitions of the audience.* Here, even more than in other debating situations, you will attempt with all the tact you possess to remove the reservations that your audience may entertain regarding your ideas. Your entire speech, then, should be conceived as one of anticipatory rebuttal or as one in which you are patiently but covertly converting listeners to your cause.

8. *Decide upon the specific appeals and frame your logic to make effective those appeals.* Radio appeals, like those made through other media, should be dignified, restrained, elevated, but none the less direct and effective. Your aim, then, will be to talk in terms of the justice, fairness, and practicability of your case, and to build up suggestions of patriotism, a sense of fair play, coöperation, loyalty to certain institutions, and other motives. Read again the chapter on the audience and keep its principles uppermost as you approach your problem of speaking over the air.

9. *Exploit your own personality in addressing your unseen audience.* This suggestion applies not merely to your tones but to those traits of personality that crop out as you take up successive arguments. Avoid all traces of biting sarcasm (most of which will not be understood); use humor sparingly (most of it will go unappreciated); eliminate tones and phrases of hostility toward your opponents or of condescension toward your audience; practice courtesy, tact, good nature, tolerance, and restraint.

10. *Write and rewrite your speech.* The stations usually require a manuscript, partly so that the split-second timing may not fail. Make your composition a speech, however, and not an essay. (What are some differences?) Be sure that you make a successful approach. Begin with a striking quotation, illustration, or clear-cut statement of what you intend to talk about. (Review the chapter on the development of the speech.) End your speech with a well-thought-out but simple statement. Inspect your sentences, to be sure that they are not complicated. Give the preference to those under twenty words in length, but make the structure varied. To heighten the appeal, intersperse periodic, loose, and



balanced structure; also exclamatory, imperative, and interrogative sentences. Note, for example, that not one student radio debater in twenty uses a sufficient number of rhetorical questions. Of course, any technique may be overdone; but the usual error is to neglect the interrogative and similar devices. Link each main statement and substatement by transitional devices. The radio speech seldom uses sufficient transitional phrases, clauses, or sentences. Summarize freely, but don't overdo it.

\* 11. *Let the radio language be both easily understood and interesting.* Listeners are bored with repetition of words and with hackneyed language. Many skillful commentators on the news have established a better way. Therefore go through your manuscript and weed out the repetitions. Find a less threadbare word or phrase. At every turn be concrete. Don't patronize by specializing in words of one syllable, but on the other hand don't imitate Dr. Samuel Johnson. He would probably have failed as a writer for the radio. Inject the quality of oral discourse into your style. Let the phrases be spontaneous. Read aloud your statements, and correct freely to adjust to the speaking situation.

12. *Cultivate a pleasing radio voice.* Observe especially the following suggestions:

a. Read and reread your manuscript until you are familiar with it.

b. Avoid the effect of reading. Visualize yourself as talking. Read again the chapter on delivery, including the section on the conversational mode, and be sure that your tones are those of conversation. Remember that you are not delivering a speech but are talking to a few people gathered around a receiving set. Avoid the oratorical. At the other extreme, avoid deadness. Have plenty of enthusiasm, but keep it under control. Franklin D. Roosevelt is a good reader over the radio.

c. Pitch your voice fairly low. Don't allow it to break into shrillness nor to descend into guttural gruffness. Let your tones be open, full, free from tightness or nasality.

d. Speak from 120 to 150 words a minute. No hard and fast

rule can be given. Much depends on the individuality of the speaker, the occasion, and the subject. In general, radio debate talks should be delivered at a rather brisk rate. Don't go like a marathon speaker, as is done sometimes in interscholastic debates; on the other hand, don't drag. Avoid long pauses; for listeners may wonder whether you have lost a page. Change the rate for emphasis.

e. Avoid speaking too loudly or too softly. The station will regulate your tones so that the outer world need not have its ears split. Nevertheless, you will stand before the microphone as an animated conversationalist. Usually stand about a foot from the instrument. Speak at a slight angle (if the microphone is directional) so that the echoes are not discernible. Preserve an easy manner; avoid jerkiness, gasping for breath, forcing, audible breathing, clearing of the throat, wheezing, or similar vocal mannerisms or breathing difficulties. Be sure your tones are modulated.

f. Cultivate a proper vocal emphasis. Note carefully the accented syllable of each key word; emphasize the key clauses and sentences. Make the proper sentences and sections stand out. Change your rate, pitch, and intensity to add emphasis.

g. Let your enunciation be sharp and clean-cut. Sound the consonants clearly. Give the proper quality to each vowel. Avoid slurring, don't run words together. On the other hand, don't be pedantic and sacrifice the numerous weak forms that make up the conversational technique. Avoid *gimme* for *give me*, *wantu* for *want to*, *coulduv* for *could have*, *lemme* for *let me*, *wouldn'tchu* for *wouldn't you*, *don'tchu* for *don't you*, *didn'tchu* for *didn't you*. Say *government*, not *gover'ment*; *probably*, not *prob'ly*; *usually*, not *us'lly*; *generally*, not *gener'lly*; *why*, not *w'y*; *when*, not *w'en*; *where*, not *w'ere*; *what*, not *w'at*; *while*, not *w'ite*; *you*, not *yuh*.

h. Observe proper pronunciation. Avoid provincialisms in inflection. Don't stumble over pronunciations. Read your manuscript with an eye to easy pronunciation. Say *of*, *from*, *what*, *was*, rather than *uv*, *frum*, *whut*, *wuz*. Say *or*, *for*, *because*, rather than *ur*, *fer*, *becuz*. Say *just*, not *jist*; *men*, not *min*; *ten*,

not *tin*; again, not *agin*. Say *where* and *there*, not *whar* and *thar*. Say *catch*, not *ketch*; *microphone*, not *micrurphone*; *rather*, not *ruther*; *new* (diphthongal *u*) and *institute*, not *noo* and *institoot*.

### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Listen to a radio debate and report to the class your answers to the following questions concerning each speaker: (1) Could you understand clearly? (2) If not, why not? (3) Was the speaker interesting? Why, or why not? (4) What words, if any, were mispronounced? (5) Was the speaker's voice too high? too low? Was the rate too fast? too slow? Was the quality satisfactory? (6) Was he conversational? (7) Was the enunciation or pronunciation overexact? (8) Was the vocabulary limited? pedantic? literary rather than idiomatic? (9) Was the language concrete? (10) Were the sentences unduly involved? (11) Were too many ideas developed? (12) Was the organization satisfactory? (13) Was the speech persuasive? (14) For which side did you vote? Why?

2. Prepare and deliver a six-minute speech for a radio audience. If it is not possible to deliver the speech over the air, do so by a classroom public-address system; or present your speech to the class from behind a screen.

3. Criticize (five hundred words) a radio debate as reprinted in a debate annual; for example, that of Kansas State College versus Hastings College on labor provisions of the NRA, *Intercollegiate Debates* (1934), Vol. XV, pp. 3-38; Iowa University versus Bates College on the national guaranty of bank deposits, *ibid.* pp. 95-123; Cambridge University versus Leland Stanford University on democracy as a failure, *ibid.* pp. 171-187; Oxford University versus Columbia University on free trade, *University Debaters' Annual* (1933-1934), pp. 415-430.

### REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- CANTRIL, HADLEY, and ALLPORT, G. W. *The Psychology of Radio*. Harper & Brothers, 1935.
- DIXON, PETER. *Radio Writing*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1931.
- FIRTH, V. E., and ERSKINE, GLADYS. *The Gateway to Radio*. The Macaulay Company, 1935.
- LAWTON, S. P. *Radio Speech*. The Expression Company, 1932.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### COMMITTEE AND PUBLIC DISCUSSION

I. COMMITTEE OR GROUP DISCUSSION. II. PUBLIC DISCUSSION. III. THE LECTURE FORUM. IV. THE DISCUSSION CONTEST. V. PANEL DISCUSSION. VI. DISCUSSION AND DEMOCRACY

#### I. COMMITTEE OR GROUP DISCUSSION

**A. Aims of Group Discussion.** The assumption of group and committee discussion is that social problems can be solved by coöperative thinking. A scientific problem in engineering or medicine can often be solved single-handed, but a social issue can be settled only by a meeting of a number of minds and by the agreement of those who are concerned. Force, law, debate, compromise, all fail frequently to settle a major issue; they merely suppress for the moment the intensity of the conflict.

Note the clear differences between conventional debate and committee discussion. Whereas debate consists of competitive argument for the purpose of establishing a given proposition, committee discussion substitutes coöperative thinking for the purpose of uniting and crystallizing opinion. Discussion at its best means continual weighing of the proposition, modification of it, even substitution of a different proposal, until the ideas of the assembly coalesce. The outcome is collective opinion. The vote at the end represents a social judgment.

As the two types are different in their aim, so are they different as far as the relation of speaker to audience is concerned. Debate is an exercise for — one might almost say exhibition of — leaders, separated from the audience; these leaders are skilled in argument and enthusiastic in upholding their side. Group discussion

is an informal session of a committee of the whole, without a speaker's platform, without official leaders, without an audience in the sense of audience spectators; each member participates in the discussion and bears his share of responsibility for the discussion.

Again, as suggested previously, debate is usually bilateral, in that the affirmative ground is carefully mapped out and the negative territory is drawn with equal care. The die-hard affirmative may be matched by an unyielding negative. Discussion, by contrast, recognizes no "yea" or "nay." Strongly affirmative, mildly affirmative, neutral, and strongly negative presently find themselves on the same side, or they discover that the problem is multilateral rather than bilateral.

**B. Practical Application of Group Discussion.** Group discussion is an excellent exercise in training for social thinking. Despite our constantly expanding social life and the necessity for practice in living and thinking together, we citizens and prospective citizens have failed to make full use of a speech situation which encourages unified dealing with a problem. Debate invites a division of the house. Its most appropriate physical conditions are those of the British House of Commons, where the benches are arranged in opposing rows on either side of the Speaker's chair, with Government arrayed against Opposition. The group-discussion situation disarms the divisive spirit, substitutes the come-let-us-reason-together atmosphere, and trains men and women in social self-control. It calls for emotional restraint and an absence of "crowd-mindedness." It is a logical speaking technique to develop in a community.

**C. Limitation of Group Discussion.** Where the issue becomes sharply drawn, as it almost always does in legislatures, in court rooms, or on the political platform, group discussion must give way to debate. Majorities must be determined; noses must be counted. Otherwise deadlock and stagnation would follow. Because our democracy must get on, we cannot linger during the months or years that might be necessary for a group to arrive



at a consensus regarding the issue. As a preliminary to formal debate and as a device to be used where sharp differences of opinion may be allayed, group discussion is of great value.

**D. The Technique of Discussion.** 1. *Adopt a proper attitude toward the purpose of group discussion.* If you succeed in the discussion situation, you will recognize that the end is not so much compromise as consensus. You will come prepared to present your own opinion with what clearness and strength you can. You will recognize, however, that the result must be the triumph not of your individual point of view but of that of the group. Integration is necessary. You will present yourself not as a die-hard, nor yet as an ill-informed and completely pliable member of the committee.

2. *Adopt a proper attitude toward your colleagues.* You will have no opponents; therefore you need none of the sharp strategy of debate. You will attempt as best you can to appreciate whatever angle is presented and to weigh fairly each idea.

3. *Adopt a proper attitude toward yourself.* Recognize your prejudices, your personality traits of optimism or pessimism, your idealism or materialism.

4. *Analyze your group definitely.* Recall the principles of group analysis suggested in the chapter on the audience. Consider what interests the group may have in the issue, what is at stake in individual cases, what desires are most important, what unfortunate results will come to certain members if the problem is wrongly solved. If you are considering the problem of state medicine, consider whether certain members of your group are not doctors or dependent sons of doctors.

5. *Be sure that the problem is stated as a definite question.* Review the principles for selecting and for wording the proposition and apply them to this issue. Note the phrasing of these statements: "What program shall we adopt for minimizing automobile accidents in the state of Iowa?" "What program shall we adopt for dealing with the problem of medical care in the United States?" "What program shall the United States adopt for dealing with

the problem of the Japanese political and territorial policy in northern China?" Do not attempt to discuss a vague term, such as "economic nationalism," a subject which really was intended to be a consideration not of economic internationalism but rather of the issue of socialistic or capitalistic government.

6. *Analyze the question fully.* Review the chapter on analysis. Consider in detail the cause for the discussion, the definition of terms, the history of the controversy, the various conflicting arguments — not merely those of the affirmative and the negative but those of four, five, or six sides. Note that in any debate the affirmative maintains but one angle, whereas the so-called negative represents any one attitude or a combination of them.

7. *In preparation develop as fully and as carefully as you can the different arguments.* If you are a seasoned debater, you will make a complete brief of the affirmative; then you will trace out a series of briefs representing the other shades of beliefs and alternate programs. In your briefs (and your thinking) you will muster all the knowledge of argumentative principles that you have thus far accumulated. You will, for example, include concrete evidence that satisfies the laws of evidence. You will test the logic of each brief. You will note the possibilities for reasoning in a circle and for ignoring the question. You will examine and state clearly those points of view and objections that are founded on whim, selfish desire, or prejudice, as contrasted with those that are grounded in logic.

In immediate preparation for the discussion, you will review your notes but leave them at home (or in your brief case). You will have in mind accurate statements, with the proper citations. You will organize a tentative opinion and be ready to unfold it logically. But, as stated above, you will continue to hold the open-minded approach such as the scientist is supposed to have as he weighs his problems.

8. *In the discussion itself, inquire rather than dogmatize.* Be persuasive, tactful, and sincere in your speaking. Be conversa-

tional, and otherwise exemplify the highest standards of speaking. (Review the chapter on delivery.)

9. *Above all, coöperate in attempting to further the discussion so that time is conserved and so that ideas evolve.*

**E. The Duties of the Chairman.** The purpose of the chairman (if a chairman is appointed) is to see that the conclusion represents the integrated thinking of the group. He will prepare himself fully on the problem. He will go through each step of preparation outlined above. He will refuse to lead unless he is equipped.

This presiding officer should prepare a complete outline of the problem for his own guidance in the meeting. His analysis should be logically divided and subdivided; each main issue and subissue should be stated as an impartial question. He may or may not give a copy of this outline to the group. To do so might stifle spontaneity. Further, he should freely depart from his prearranged outline as the conversation moves into new channels.

But the chairman is present to prevent labyrinthine excursions. He must summarize, restate, and tactfully keep the paramount issues uppermost.

His duties will include a clear statement of the question; he will see that the definitions are clearly brought out and that the history of the case is accurately given; he will be sure that the various points of view are enumerated. He will see that each varying point of view is fully presented; will guide the subsequent discussion so that each argument and assumption is tested by the laws of logic and evidence; will see that the issue of practicability is considered at every point; will call attention to the relation of the specific argument or point to the general issue; will note on what matters there is agreement, and so will continually narrow the field of differences; will see that conclusions are not rushed. He will state clearly the tentative conclusions. If a considerable minority disagree, he will see that they present a report. And he will then and there arrange, if it is practicable, for other meetings to iron out any remaining differences. This chairman

will apply parliamentary law, will condemn disrespectful language; in short, he will be a discussion chairman at once well-informed, methodical, tactful, enthusiastic, and efficient.

**F. Outline for a Group Discussion.** The following method of procedure may serve as a guide for group discussion :

### I. ANALYSIS OF THE PROBLEM

*A.* What is the specific problem, stated as a question? (Apply tests of Chapter II.)

*B.* What is the occasion for discussion? (Be specific in suggesting what groups are interested in raising the question.)

*C.* What is the history of the problem?

*D.* What is the exact meaning of the terms, and what is the significance of these meanings to those interested in the problem?

*E.* What limitations or qualifications or agreements should be noted or stipulated in analyzing the problem?

*F.* What are the specific issues?

*G.* What partition, or specific propositions for solution, will be advanced by various interested groups? (For *A-G* apply the suggestions in Chapter IV.)

### II. WEIGHING OF THE PROBLEM

*A.* What are the argument and the evidence in support of solution or conclusion *A*? (Test arguments and evidence according to the suggestions of Chapters VI-IX.)

*B.* What are the argument and the evidence in support of solution or conclusion *B*?

*C.* What are the argument and the evidence in support of solution or conclusion *C*?

### III. SOLUTION OF THE PROBLEM

*A.* On what arguments and evidence presented above does the group apparently agree? Why?

*B.* On what arguments and evidence presented above does the group apparently disagree? Why?

*C.* What common agreement, if any, can be derived by the weighing of solutions and by the comparison of the tentative points of view?

D. What ways and means, if any, can be expounded and analyzed for executing the common conclusion?

**G. Example of Outline for a Group Discussion.** The following outline was used by a leader in a student conference on the question Should the liberal-arts colleges admit all graduates of approved four-year high schools upon certification and without conditions?

#### A. ANALYSIS

- I. What is the immediate occasion for this discussion?
- II. What is the history of college entrance requirements in the United States?
- III. What is the meaning for this discussion of such terms as *high school*, *college*, *university*, *liberal-arts college*, *approved*, *certification*?
- IV. What are the issues involved in a solution?

#### B. TENTATIVE SOLUTIONS

- I. Is there need for providing education beyond the twelfth-grade or high-school level for the rank and file of American youth?
  - A. What definite aims are dominant in the liberal-arts college? Culture? Recreational equipment? Professional training? Ethical development? Citizenship training? Or what else?
  - B. In what respects do American colleges realize to a reasonable degree the objectives specified above and to what extent are these aims not attained?
- II. Does the system of entrance requirements as now applied prevent an adequate realization of the objectives agreed upon above?
- III. Would the plan of abandoning entrance requirements give desirable results in the education of the student and in the political, economic, and cultural progress of the community and nation?
- IV. Would the program elevate or lower the academic standards of the college?
- V. Would the program lower the educational standards of the secondary schools?



Those who participated had prepared assigned readings on the subject and had received in advance the outline above. About twenty were present; the total time spent in the meeting was three hours; most of the time was spent on the analysis.

## II. PUBLIC DISCUSSION

Public discussion, as contrasted with informal or committee conference, calls for the same general principles. The same open-mindedness, the same analytical attitude must prevail. When, however, you move from the compact conference room into the assembly hall or town-meeting hall, you at once encounter the problem of larger numbers and the tendency for the audience to be less homogeneous. Each step of preparation and presentation will be more carefully worked out.

If you succeed as a chairman of such public group discussion, you will keep in mind a number of suggestions offered by those who have attempted such speaking experiments. You will see that the question has special appeal to the campus or community. You will break the issue into five or six topics and assign each to an efficient leader. You will take pains to announce well in advance the time, place, and general conditions of the meeting. You will furnish to those interested an outline of the material to be discussed and will place references on reserve at the college or the public library. You will have an eye to compact seating arrangements; will limit your group to (say) fifty rather than to five hundred — though no rule can be given about numbers. You will be sure that the five or six speakers assigned talk not more than five minutes each. You will limit questions between speeches to matters of factual detail. After this more or less set program you will invite comments or speeches from the floor; you will see that each speaker is timed, that he talks for not more than two minutes, and that he does not monopolize the meeting. You will announce in advance a definite time for closing, and you will stick to these limits.

### III. THE LECTURE FORUM

Another modification of the discussion method is that of the lecture forum, such as has been extensively applied in the community forums of Des Moines, Iowa.<sup>1</sup> The method may be applied also in college classrooms or elsewhere on the campus. The speaker, it goes without saying, should be an authority on the subject; his mood and method throughout should be analytical rather than argumentative. If he proceeds to a definite point of view, he must do so not as a debater but as a discussion leader. He may or may not serve also as chairman for the meeting. His address should usually take not more than thirty or forty minutes. He should be allowed to proceed without interruption.

The forum period following may run for thirty minutes. The lecturer may sometimes seat himself with the audience for greater informality. If he remains on the platform, he should in some cases act as chairman. At the end he should summarize the discussion and indicate lines of future thinking and investigation.

The application of this technique to student gatherings is obvious. In the classroom or elsewhere the college student may give a ten- or fifteen-minute analysis of a problem and invite free comment from his twenty or thirty auditors. Whether the meeting succeeds depends, as suggested above, on the care with which the topic is chosen, the authority and the attractiveness with which the lecturer proceeds, the skill of the chairman, and the preparation of the group for the occasion.

### IV. THE DISCUSSION CONTEST

If competitive conditions are desired in public discussion, a simple program will consist in announcing a specific subject (stated as a question) and in allowing the participants to treat the problem from any angle. Each speech is limited (for example,

<sup>1</sup> For details of this program consult J. W. Studebaker, *The American Way*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1935.

to six minutes). After all the members have spoken, a second round of speeches may be made (perhaps limited in each case to three minutes). The judge, or judges, will rate each performance on the basis of adequacy of analysis, validity of argument and evidence, effectiveness of presentation, vigor of oral style, including organization of material, and effectiveness in coöperative technique and spirit. If the entrants are numerous, preliminary and final sessions may be held. For several years this simple procedure has been used with success at the Delta Sigma Rho tournament at the University of Wisconsin. The method is strongly recommended for classroom, intramural, and inter-collegiate competition.

#### V. PANEL DISCUSSION

The panel discussion is a special method of group discussion, so organized as to present diverse points of view and, if possible, arrive at a consensus. It differs from the committee discussion in that those who participate are limited in number and in that the audience consists not of participants but of mere listeners.

The panel itself is made up of a chairman and of four or eight members who discuss a topic before the audience. These speakers are usually arranged in a semicircle facing the audience, with the chairman in the center. Formal speeches are not made, but a free discussion takes place, a conversation among the members of the panel with little or no regard for the auditors.

The chairman, as in committee discussion, interprets the discussion, illustrates points made by others, asks questions, summarizes, raises fresh issues, and tactfully attempts to lead the thinking forward. Debate conflict is absent. Open-mindedness prevails. At the conclusion of the panel discussion, opportunity may be given for the audience to express its views.

The goal is not so much a complete solution of a problem as it is the clear statement of various points of view.

The participants, it goes without saying, should be well informed on the subject, pleasing as speakers, sincere, logical, plausible.

How does the audience prepare? By reading beforehand the topics on the subject (references should be reserved in the library), by listening carefully to the discussion, weighing the ideas, and forming judgment. The chairman should invite any contribution from the audience after the panel has concluded. Any speech from the floor should be brief and distinctly given; any question should be simple and carefully phrased. The audience should show the same good nature and open-mindedness as the panel members.

## VI. DISCUSSION AND DEMOCRACY

Discussion thus has a highly important position in any educational program. It requires the application of all the principles of sound argument: skillful analysis, effective marshaling of logic and evidence, clear and persuasive statement. Behind these skills, however, is the more important achievement of added ability to think coöperatively, to exercise toleration and broad-mindedness. The discussional scene breeds intellectual creativeness. Only in this atmosphere of free inquiry can ideas germinate and mature.

More significant than the disciplinary value to the participant is the contribution of discussion to the state. It is not too much to conclude that the protection and the growth of American democracy depend upon the practice of free and full public discussion. It is axiomatic that successful free government rests upon a well-informed public opinion. Press and platform must ceaselessly educate the citizenry. Among the more important of these agencies for the clarification of issues is the discussion forum. Therefore "it is the duty both of the citizens to demand and of the government to provide opportunities for the free and impartial

discussion of public issues.”<sup>1</sup> Teachers and students of discussion are interested in sponsoring the establishment throughout the nation of urban and rural community centers of public conference under trained leaders of discussion. In these forums the principle of the New England town meeting will be applied widely and efficiently to the major problems of the times. These town halls will help to guarantee an enlightened public opinion.

The college debater, then, looks much farther than to the mere winning of an undergraduate contest. He is, first of all, one who is attempting to bring into the open and to state clearly the pressing problems of his day; he is seeking to combat demagoguery and substitute rational and practical judgments for those of prejudice and ignorance; he is trying both to direct and to follow the ever forming and re-forming social current. His faith is that free and full discussion will enable our civilization to adjust itself to the new demands and so will insure national stability and progress.

#### EXERCISES AND PROBLEMS

1. Comment, in a two-minute speech, on one of the following statements:

a. “We are a government by the will of the majority. No other kind of rule is democracy to an American. We ascertain that will by free public discussion.” — A. E. SMITH. (Quoted in J. W. Studebaker’s *The American Way*, p. 35)

b. “We need to have meeting places for the discussion of public questions, in the cities, hamlets, and on the farms throughout the length and breadth of the land.” — FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT. (Quoted in J. W. Studebaker’s *The American Way*, p. 40)

2. Criticize (in five hundred words) the panel forum, or symposium, on “Economic Reconstruction,” between Western Reserve University, Ohio Wesleyan University, Oberlin College, and the College of Wooster, as reported in the *University Debaters’ Annual* (1934), pp. 249–342; or select for similar treatment a symposium, or panel discussion, as reported in another debate yearbook.

<sup>1</sup> J. W. Studebaker, *The American Way*, p. 16. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1935.



3. Select a topic, draw up a series of questions for your guidance, and hold a group discussion as part of a classroom program.

4. Draw up a public-discussion program to be held on the campus; report (in three hundred words) the results of the discussion as you view it from your experience as a chairman on that occasion or as one of the other participants.

5. Outline the procedure for a panel forum. Conduct a panel discussion according to suggestions given in this chapter.

6. Prepare and deliver a ten-minute lecture and preside over a succeeding forum, twenty minutes long.

7. Map out for your home community a series of four public discussions on related problems. Give a written report in which you include details for such discussion forums.

## REFERENCES

(For advanced students)

- CLARKE, E. L. *The Art of Straight Thinking*, chap. xiv. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1929.
- DEWEY, JOHN. *How we Think*. D. C. Heath and Company, 1910.
- ELLIOTT, H. S. *The Process of Group Thinking*. The Association Press, 1928.
- FANSLER, THOMAS. *Discussion Methods for Adult Groups*. American Association for Adult Education, 1934.
- LIPPMANN, WALTER. *Public Opinion*, chap. xxvii. The Macmillan Company, 1927.
- ROSS, E. A. *Social Psychology*, chap. xviii. The Macmillan Company, 1908.
- SHEFFIELD, A. D. *Creative Discussion* (Second Edition, Revised). The Association Press, 1927.
- STUDEBAKER, J. W. *The American Way*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1935.
- WALSER, FRANK. *The Art of Conference*. Harper & Brothers, 1933.
- WILEDEN, A. F., and EWBANK, H. L. *How to Conduct Group Discussion*. Extension Service of the College of Agriculture, Circular 276. The University of Wisconsin, 1935.



# APPENDIXES

## A. SPECIMEN BRIEF

RESOLVED, *That Congress should have power to override by a two-thirds majority vote decisions of the Supreme Court declaring laws passed by Congress unconstitutional.*

### FIRST AFFIRMATIVE BRIEF<sup>1</sup>

#### INTRODUCTION

- I. The cause for discussion is as follows:
  - A. Throughout our history there has been widespread criticism of the Supreme Court's power to veto acts of Congress.
    1. When the power was originally announced by John Marshall in 1803, Thomas Jefferson denied its existence.
    2. The Dred Scott decision in 1857 aroused a storm of criticism.
    3. Theodore Roosevelt advocated popular recall of the Court's decisions.
    4. In 1924 La Follette advocated limiting the power of the Court.
    5. The Court's nullification of the Railroad Pension Act, the Frazier-Lemke Farm-Mortgage Act, the NRA, and the AAA brought the question of limiting its powers prominently to the fore.
- II. "A two-thirds majority vote" means two thirds of each house of Congress, such as is required in overriding a presidential veto.
- III. The conflicting arguments are as follows:
  - A. The affirmative argue:
    1. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions is necessary.

<sup>1</sup> Prepared by Edward Freutel, State University of Iowa.

2. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be practicable.
  3. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be beneficial.
- B.* The negative argue :
1. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions is unnecessary.
  2. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be impracticable.
  3. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be detrimental and dangerous.
- IV.* The main issues are thus suggested :
- A.* Is Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions necessary?
- B.* Would Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions be practicable?
- C.* Would Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions give desirable economic and political results?
- V.* The affirmative will establish the following arguments :
- A.* Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions is necessary.
1. Present conditions demand social and economic legislation on a national scale.
  2. Under recent interpretations of the Constitution, the Supreme Court has made national social and economic legislation impossible.
  3. The power of the Supreme Court to veto acts of Congress is undemocratic.
  4. Supreme Court veto of acts of Congress creates an uncertain situation.
  5. Congressional control over Supreme Court decisions is the only satisfactory remedy for the present situation.
- B.* Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be consistent with the principles of American government.
1. It would restore the government to the system originally intended by the founders.
  2. The argument that it would be dangerous to give this control to Congress is fallacious.
- C.* Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would give desirable economic and political results.

1. Modern legislation to meet national problems would no longer be hindered.
2. The uncertainty as to what Federal law is would be largely removed.
3. It would be more democratic than the present system.
4. It would restore the check-and-balance and the separation-of-powers principle in our government.
5. It would make for a higher quality of legislation.

## DISCUSSION

- I. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions is necessary ; for
- A. The Supreme Court has hindered desirable social and economic legislation ; for

1. Present conditions demand social and economic legislation on a national scale ; for

*Forum*,  
94 : 71  
Aug.,  
1935

- a. Our economic basis today is national ; for

(1) "Wage standards, hour standards, and prices are set by national competition." — PAUL BLANSHARD

(2) "Our national life is dominated by agriculture, mining, industry, and commerce. Unless they can be controlled by the nation, the government of the country . . . passes to them."

*Nation*,  
140 : 672  
June 12, 1935

E. S. Corwin,  
*Twilight of the  
Supreme  
Court*, 48

(3) "The basis of our prosperity is national." — EDWARD S. CORWIN

- b. The states cannot hope to meet the situation ; for

(1) If a state attempted to regulate wages and hours, or agricultural production, or business practices, or to prohibit child labor, business interests would simply move to areas where they would be unrestricted or they would succumb to the competition of organizations in unrestricted states ; for

(a) It would do little good for Iowa to control corn-hog production if Illinois went ahead full blast.

(b) "Nothing effective can be done in the regulation or stabilization of economic affairs unless the area of planning and control has the same boundaries as the economic structure." — PROFESSOR GULICK

*Ibid.* 45



*Annals of  
American  
Academy,*  
172: 141  
March, 1934

- (2) They have failed miserably in the past; for  
 (a) In the crisis of 1933 they had to call on the Federal government for aid.  
 (b) "In the field of business relations state power has long been moribund." — EDWARD S. CORWIN

2. The Supreme Court, by recent interpretations of the Constitution, has made national social and economic legislation difficult or impossible; for

a. The decision on the Railroad Pension Act in May, 1935 (Norman *v.* Baltimore and Ohio Railroad), denied Congress the power to set up old-age pensions for railroad employees.

b. The Frazier-Lemke Act decision denied Congress power to suspend farm mortgages for five years.

c. The NRA decision prohibited Congress from regulating hours, wages, or competition in businesses that were not directly interstate in character; for

*Nation,*  
140: 672  
June 12, 1935

- (1) "The fateful portion of the Schechter decision is its denial to the Federal government of control over labor standards. This, in conjunction with the railroad-pensions ruling, has taken social legislation out of the domain of the Federal government . . ."

*Current History,*  
42: 347  
July, 1935

- (2) "In fine . . . Congress . . . is deprived of the authority to effect the fundamental purposes of the NRA." — CHARLES A. BEARD

*Fortune,*  
12: 128  
Aug., 1935

- (3) "So we get the major principle of the decision that Congress may not regulate intra-state transactions that have only an indirect effect on interstate commerce." — THOMAS REED POWELL

*Ibid.*  
12: 63  
Sept., 1935

- (4) "The Schechter case . . . makes [it] clear that the power to regulate interstate commerce . . . will not support a planned economy." — EDWIN FOSTER BLAIR

d. The AAA decision denied Congress the right to regulate agricultural production.

e. The child-labor decision denied Congress the power to regulate the hours of labor for children or to prohibit child labor.

f. The Adkins *v.* Children's Hospital case denied Congress even the power to regulate wages within the District of Columbia.

B. The power of the Supreme Court to veto acts of Congress is undemocratic; for

1. It gives the final decision on the economic and political questions of the nation to the Court rather than to the elected representatives of the people; for

a. The Supreme Court decides economic and political as well as purely legal matters; for

(1) "Such decisions of our courts are mere political opinions and not judicial decisions, and are wholly unauthorized by the constitution, laws, and traditions of our government." — REPRESENTATIVE ROBERT T. RAMSAY (West Virginia)

*Congressional Record,*  
79: 11097  
July 12, 1935

(2) "... the Court, under the guise of legal form, exercises political and economic control. . . . Five justices of the Supreme Court are molders of policy, rather than impersonal vehicles of revealed truth." — FELIX FRANKFURTER

*Forum,*  
83: 334  
June, 1930

*International  
Journal of  
Ethics,*  
40: 295  
April, 1930

(3) "The judge is merely an amiable and learned gentleman applying his mind to settling our economic and political problems for us by finding constitutional reasons for his own preference." — DR. A. K. ROGERS

b. There is no appeal from a decision of the Supreme Court, although the president's veto can be overruled by Congress.

c. The Court is utterly removed from the control and influence of the people; for

(1) Its members are appointed for life during good behavior, and their salaries cannot be changed during their tenure of office.

(2) The position and training of the justices tend to make them extremely conservative and isolated from current social and economic trends; for

(a) The legal mind depends for its decisions upon precedents.

(b) The background of the justices is closely tied to the capitalist class (most of them were corporation lawyers before their elevation to the bench).

2. The Court has often acted contrary to the wishes of the people on important issues; for

- a. The Dred Scott decision was a chief cause of the Civil War; for

- (1) "The decision in the Dred Scott case resulted in no action against the Court but in repeated agitation of the slavery question until the feeling between the antislavery and slavery states ran so high that the Civil War resulted." — N. T. N. ROBINSON

*Congressional  
Digest,  
14: 289  
Dec., 1935*

*E. S. Corwin,  
Twilight of  
the Supreme  
Court, 112*

- (2) "It took a war to override the Dred Scott decision." — EDWARD S. CORWIN

- b. The income-tax decision was circumvented by a constitutional amendment.

- c. The AAA was nullified, although it had received a six-to-one vote of confidence in the corn-hog referendum on October 28, 1935.

- d. The NRA was voided, although the people had voted overwhelmingly in favor of the New Deal in 1934.

- C. Supreme Court vetoes of acts of Congress create an uncertain situation; for

1. Long delays occur between the passage of an act and the action of the Court upon it; for

- a. The NRA functioned for nearly two years before it was voided by the Court.

- b. The AAA functioned for over two years before it was nullified.

- c. The Missouri Compromise functioned for thirty-seven years before it was nullified by the Dred Scott decision.

2. The Court's decisions have been reversed in several instances; for

- a. "The Court held the legal-tender law illegal and then held it legal. They held the income tax legal for a hundred years and then held it illegal. They have reversed numerous decisions of their own court . . ." — C. J. WALTER CLARK

*American  
Federationist,  
28: 725  
Sept., 1921*

- b. "The court upset a ten-hour law for bakeshops as a 'mere meddlesome interference with the rights of the individual.' Within ten years of the bakeshop decision an eight-hour law for railroad men was upheld." — ZECHARIAH CHAFFEE, JR.

*Current History,  
15: 225  
Dec., 1921*

*E. S. Corwin, Twilight of the Supreme Court, 40*  
 c. "In *Swift and Company v. United States* the Court virtually overruled its decision and entirely disregarded its reasoning in the *Sugar Trust Case*." — EDWARD S. CORWIN

D. Substitute proposals do not offer a satisfactory solution of the problem; for

1. Constitutional amendment is unsatisfactory; for

a. It is too slow and cumbersome; for

(1) The income-tax amendment was not passed until eighteen years after the Court decision on the income-tax case.

(2) In an emergency even a year or two is too long a time to delay.

*Nation, 140: 673 June 12, 1935*  
 (3) "If it needs to be done each time a crisis arises in the country, the danger period is unduly prolonged."

*New Republic, 85: 270 Jan. 15, 1936*  
 (4) "Such amendments probably would not be ratified . . . until after the urgency for action had brought the country to the brink of ruin or until the situation . . . had fundamentally changed."

b. It allows a small minority of the states to block the wishes of the majority; for

*Nation, 140: 673 June 12, 1935*  
 (1) Thirteen states have the right of veto over thirty-five on specific amendments.

(2) It is possible for 4 per cent of the population to veto the will of the other 96 per cent under this method.

2. An act providing for judicial advice and opinion on legislation prior to its enactment was held void in 1865.

II. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be consistent with American principles of government; for

A. It would restore the government to the system originally intended by the founders; for

1. They did not intend to allow the Supreme Court to overrule acts of Congress; for

a. In the debates in the Constitutional Convention a proposal to allow the Supreme Court to share in the president's veto power was defeated three times, never receiving more than three votes favoring it; for

Department of  
State, *Docu-  
mentary His-  
tory of the  
United States  
Constitution*,  
3: 61

(1) "On the question of Mr. Gerry's motion [which gave the executive alone, without the judiciary, the revisionary control of the laws unless overruled by two thirds of each branch of Congress] . . . aye 8, no 2."—Monday, June 4, 1787

Ibid. 399

(2) "On the question of Mr. Wilson's motion for joining the judiciary in the revision of laws, it passed in the negative . . . aye 3, no 4."—Saturday, July 21, 1787

Ibid. 537

(3) "Question on the motion of Mr. Madison . . . aye 3, no 8."—Wednesday, August 15, 1787

*Congressional Digest*,  
14: 302  
Dec., 1935

(4) "The proposal to give the judicial branch alone the power to override a law . . . was never . . . seriously enough considered to bring it to a vote. After much discussion a proposed council of revision, composed of the president and Supreme Court, to pass on constitutionality subject to reversal by two thirds or three fourths of the Congress, was rejected by a vote of eight states to two in favor of the executive veto."—REPRESENTATIVE FRED J. SISSON

b. From remarks in the debate it appears that the framers were opposed to allowing the courts alone to veto the acts of Congress; for

Department of State,  
*Documentary History  
of the United States  
Constitution*,  
3: 55

(1) "It was quite foreign from the nature of their office to make them judges of the policy of public measures."  
— ELBRIDGE GERRY

Ibid. 393

(2) "It was making statesmen of the judges and setting them up as the guardians of the rights of the people. He relied on the representatives of the people as the guardians of their rights and interests."—Gerry's opinion as given in Madison's notes

Ibid. 537

(3) "Mr. Mercer . . . disapproved of the doctrine that the judges as expositors of the Constitution should have authority to declare a law void."—Madison's notes

Ibid. 538

(4) "Mr. Dickinson thought no such power ought to exist."—Ibid.

c. The power of the courts to consider cases under the Constitution was given to them with the understanding that it was to be strictly limited to cases of a judicial nature; for



(1) "Dr. Johnson moved to insert the words 'this constitution and the' before the word 'laws.'" (Art. III, Sect. II., paragraph 1)

(2) "Mr. Madison doubted whether it was not going too far to extend the jurisdiction of the Court generally to cases arising under the Constitution and whether it ought not to be limited to cases of a judiciary nature. The right of expounding the Constitution in cases not of this nature ought not to be given to that department."

Ibid. 626

(3) "The motion of Dr. Johnson was agreed to, *nem. con.*, . . . it being generally understood that the jurisdiction given was constructively limited to cases of a judiciary nature." — Madison's notes for Monday, August 27, 1787

2. The Supreme Court's power of judicial review makes the judicial branch the only unchecked arm of the government; for

- a. The president can veto acts of Congress.
- b. Congress can override the presidential veto.
- c. Neither Congress nor the president can overrule decisions of the Supreme Court.

B. The argument that it would be dangerous to give this control to Congress is fallacious; for

1. Congress is the real protector of the rights of our citizens; for

- a. Its members depend upon the citizens for reelection and would surely not commit political suicide by attempting to deprive them of their rights.
- b. Authorities recognize Congress as the ultimate protector of our liberties; for

(1) "When all is said and done, despite all the criticism of Congress here and elsewhere, it is probable that any hope of preserving the idea and spirit of democracy, of representative government, rests in Congress rather than in the executive or judicial arms of the government." — RAY TUCKER

*Annals of the  
American Academy,*  
169: 54  
Sept., 1933

*Forum,*  
94: 193  
Sept., 1935

(2) "Labor believes that the only safeguard of liberty is to place . . . sovereignty in the hands of the people

themselves, making their will supreme over the interpretation of any division of the government."

— WILLIAM GREEN

2. Congress did not scrap the Constitution nor oppress the people when the government operated for seventy years without the exercise of judicial review; for

- a. The assertion of the power of judicial review by John Marshall in *Marbury v. Madison* was a mere dictum not necessary for the decision of the case; for

- (1) The Court merely declined to exercise a power given to it by Congress to issue a writ of mandamus.

- (2) "... Chief Justice Marshall, when *Marbury's* case came before the Supreme Court... went out of his way to deliver his manifesto on the annulment of unconstitutional laws." — HORACE A. DAVIS

*American Political  
Science Review*,  
7: 584  
Nov., 1913

- b. "For at least half a century no attempt was made by the Federal judiciary to exercise the power asserted in *Marbury v. Madison*.... The first case in which an ordinary law of Congress was declared unconstitutional was that of *Dred Scott*." — LOUIS B. BOUDIN

*Political Science  
Quarterly*,  
26: 256  
June, 1911

3. Foreign democracies operate satisfactorily without giving the courts the power of judicial review; for

*Forum*,  
94: 70  
Aug., 1935

- a. "Great Britain can change its constitution by simple act of Parliament, and her democratic institutions are quite as stable as ours." — PAUL BLANSHARD

- b. "The constitutions of Belgium and Switzerland, though subject to final interpretation by the legislative assemblies, have seldom been changed merely by legislative interpretation or by a refusal to obey constitutional requirements. The experience of these countries indicates that legitimate private rights and privileges are likely to receive adequate protection without a judicial guardianship of the written constitution." — CHARLES GROVE HAINES

*American Political  
Science Review*,  
24: 593  
Aug., 1930

- c. "Canada and Australia... rejected the phases of the American plan which have given the courts the widest latitude.... When the supreme court of South Africa undertook to assert the American doctrine, the judges were severely rebuked by the legislative and executive

*Ibid.* 602

departments; and the new constitution expressly provides for the principle of legislative supremacy in interpreting the fundamental law." — Ibid.

4. The argument that Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be dangerous because it would allow oppressive and unconstitutional laws to be jammed through the legislature unchecked is fallacious; for
  - a. The Court would still decide upon constitutionality as it does today.
  - b. If the law were really oppressive, the necessary two-thirds majority to pass it over the judicial veto could not be mustered.

5. In the past when Congress and the Supreme Court have differed regarding the interpretation of the Constitution, it is the views of Congress which have usually prevailed.

### III. Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would give desirable economic and political results; for

- A. Modern legislation to meet national problems would no longer be hindered.
- B. The uncertainty as to what the Federal law is would be largely removed.
- C. It would be more democratic than the present system.
- D. It would restore the check-and-balance and separation-of-powers principles in our government; for
  1. The power of the Court would no longer be unbridled.
  2. The Court would exercise only judicial functions, not legislative ones.

### E. It would make for a higher quality of legislation; for

1. Today Congress tends to be careless in drawing up and passing its acts because it thinks the Supreme Court will correct them; for
  - a. "The effect of this practice has been to excuse members of Congress from studying their measures. If a judge may always be counted upon to correct bad legislation, then any Congressman may play politics." — WILLIAM E. DODD

*Virginia  
Quarterly Review,*  
1: 358  
Oct., 1925

- b. "Today Congress [is] tempted to pass unconstitutional acts on the theory that . . . the final responsibility rests with [the Supreme Court.]" — JACKSON H. RALSTON

J. H. Ralston,  
*Study and Report on  
Judicial Control*, 73

2. If Congress had the final responsibility, it would be more likely to observe the Constitution and draw up bills carefully.

### CONCLUSION

- I. Since Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions is necessary ;
  - II. Since Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would be consistent with the principles of American government ;
  - III. Since Congressional control of Supreme Court decisions would give desirable economic and political results ;
- Therefore Congress should have power to override by a two-thirds majority vote decisions of the Supreme Court declaring laws passed by Congress unconstitutional.

### B. QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION AND DEBATE

1. Are women more intelligent than men?
2. Should we adopt a system of socialized medicine?
3. Is man's reasoning power growing in proportion to his increased knowledge?
4. Is the motion picture an influence for good rather than for evil?
5. Should military drill be required in high schools and colleges?
6. Is the study of art in high schools more important than the study of Greek or Latin?
7. Should the metric system of weights and measures be made universal?
8. Is punishment for crime usually futile?
9. Should the blue-sky laws of my state be repealed?
10. Should the veto power of the president be withdrawn?
11. Congress should provide for uniform marriage and divorce laws.
12. Intercollegiate athletics should be discontinued.
13. The United States should form an alliance with Great Britain.
14. The low-tariff policy should be adopted by the United States.
15. The state of which a student is a resident should pay his college tuition.
16. Admission to college should be gained only on passing an intelligence test.

17. Objective testing in school and college examinations should be condemned.

18. American intercollegiate debates should be decided by a vote on the merits of the question only.

19. Every college should be self-supporting.

20. A municipal motion-picture house should be established at

---

21. Summer vacations for public high schools should be limited to one month.

22. The further restriction of individual liberty in the United States is justified.

23. War should be declared only by a direct vote of the people.

24. The power of the Supreme Court of the United States to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional should be restricted.

25. The junior-college movement should be condemned.

26. The general purchase of automobiles by Americans should be condemned.

27. Stock speculation is justified.

28. We view with alarm the present tendencies in realistic fiction.

29. Should there be a state monopoly of education?

30. Does the American principle of separation of Church and State imply that no church, as a church, should take a stand upon a specific political question?

31. Is morality merely custom?

32. Can man control his conduct?

33. Can character be taught?

34. The county-manager system should be established universally in the United States.

35. Are we suffering from overlegislation?

36. Capitalism has been tried and found wanting.

37. Should women fight for equal rights with men?

38. The Federal Radio Commission should reallocate the radio channels so as to give greater power to educational broadcasting stations.

39. The various states should adopt more rigid marriage and divorce laws.

40. The policy of state liquor stores should be condemned.

41. The United States should adopt the principle of parliamentary government.



42. This house favors a policy of general extension of collective bargaining in the United States.
43. This house favors the nationalization of armament production.
44. Colleges overemphasize extracurricular activities.
45. Should we have higher Federal income and inheritance taxes?
46. How shall we cope with crime?
47. Should we return to the gold standard?
48. This house condemns the principle of nationalism.
49. The primary aim of a state university is to equip all the people for citizenship rather than to furnish vocational or cultural training.
50. The principles of socialism should be approved.
51. The United States army should be increased to five hundred thousand.
52. The United States navy should be larger than that of any other country.
53. The progress of science is a threat to civilization.
54. Main public highways should be nationalized.
55. The United States should own and operate the principal air lines.
56. Alimony should no longer be allowed.
57. The Federal government should own and operate the banks of the United States.
58. Government censorship of radio programs is justified.
59. Wealth should be conscripted in time of war.
60. The principles of modern advertising should be condemned.
61. The use of the radio for advertising purposes should be condemned.
62. Industrial rather than craft unions are for the best interests of the American workingman.
63. A general plan for universal disarmament should be adopted.
64. Dictatorships are, on the whole, justifiable in the modern world.
65. The evils of the machine age outweigh the benefits.
66. Congress should impose a tax of at least four cents a gallon on gasoline sold in the United States.
67. Congress should enact a law for the sterilization of the socially unfit in the United States.
68. The Federal government should own and operate the chief sources of hydroelectric power.
69. Japan should have naval parity with the United States.
70. Pacifism is the highest form of patriotism.

71. Democratic collectivism is desirable in the United States.

72. The Federal government should adopt the policy of equalizing educational opportunities throughout the nation by means of annual grants to the several states for public elementary and secondary education.

73. Incomes in the United States should be limited to fifty thousand dollars annually.

74. At least 50 per cent of state and local revenue should be raised by taxes on sources other than tangible property.

75. This house approves the tendency toward strengthening the power of the central government of the United States.

76. Congress should be empowered to fix maximum hours and minimum wages in industry.

77. The extension of consumers' coöperatives would contribute to the public welfare of the United States.

78. A Secretary of Peace should be added to the president's cabinet.

79. A written constitution is a hindrance rather than a safeguard to the social progress of the United States.

80. Sweepstakes should be legalized in the various states of the United States.

81. The United States should cease to protect the lives and property of its nationals outside of its own territorial limits in case of foreign wars.

82. The parole system, as now administered in the United States, is detrimental to the best enforcement of criminal control.

83. Hawaii should be admitted into the Federal Union as a state.

84. The United States should adopt the commodity dollar.

85. The political salvation of the world lies in democracy rather than in dictatorship.

86. The Democratic-Republican party system has failed in the United States.

87. The various states should adopt a plan of compulsory automobile liability insurance.

88. Humanity has more to fear than to hope from science.

89. The world's malady is the revolt against liberalism.



## D. OUTLINE OF PARLIAMENTARY LAW

Debate and discussion should be conducted in accordance with the principles of parliamentary law. Every debatable motion includes (1) the making of the motion; (2) the seconding; (3) the stating of the motion by the chair; (4) the discussion; (5) the vote by acclamation, division, silent assent, roll call, or balloting; and (6) the announcing of the vote. We present first the main motion, next the amendment, and thirdly the amendment to the amendment. We vote first on the amendment to the amendment, next on the amendment, and thirdly on the main motion. Motions are principal and secondary. Only one main motion may be before the house at a time. Secondary motions are privileged, incidental, or subsidiary. It is necessary to keep in mind the order of precedence of motions. The main motion is lowest in rank, because all other motions are intended to facilitate its disposition. Privileged motions have precedence over subsidiary motions, and these two groups both have priority over the main motion. Incidental motions have among themselves no order of precedence and may be proposed at any time. Moreover, they must be disposed of before other motions, except those of the privileged group, are considered.

The table on pages 388-389 is intended to give the student help in handling representative motions. This outline should be supplemented by the study of a complete guide to parliamentary law. It is not intended to be exhaustive, but it will be sufficient for the purposes of most small group deliberations, and for the conduct of larger assemblies.

The business of most meetings may be accomplished by the process of presenting and seconding a motion, discussing and amending it, and voting on it. Special parliamentary procedure to postpone or block action, to speed up business, to recall motions already passed, or to act on rules of order may be easily abused. Since the object of the session should be to facilitate discussion and business, the undue exercise of parliamentary gymnastics is to be discouraged. The chairman, even though he may not be familiar with every by-path, should apply common sense to the situation. He should exercise his best judgment in his interpretation and simplification of any legal complexities. Rules are merely a means. His aim is to protect free debate rather than to encourage legal sparring.

TABLE OF PARLIAMENTARY MOTIONS

MOTIONS	NEED OF SECOND	AMENDABLE	DEBATABLE	VOTE REQUIRED	MAY BE POSTPONED	MAY BE RE- CONSIDERED	MAY BE LAID ON TABLE	MAY INTERRUPT SPEAKER
<i>I. Privileged Motions</i>								
1. To adjourn . . . . .	Yes	No	No	Majority	No	No	No	No
2. To fix time for next meeting	Yes	Yes	No (usually)	Majority	No	No	No	No
3. Question of privilege . . .	No	No	No	Chairman	No	No	No	Yes
4. Special orders . . . . .	No	No	No	Two thirds	No	No	No	Yes
<i>II. Incidental Motions</i>								
5. Point of order . . . . .	No	No	No	Chairman	No	No	No	Yes
6. To withdraw a motion . .	No	No	No	Majority	No	Yes	Yes	No
7. To suspend a rule . . . .	Yes	No	No	Two thirds	No	No	No	No
8. To reconsider . . . . .	Yes	No	Yes	Majority	No	No	Yes	No
9. To appeal from chair . . .	Yes	No	Debate limited	Majority	No	Yes	No	Yes



III. *Subsidiary Motions*

10. To lay on table . . . . .	Yes	No	No	Majority	No	No	No	No
11. Previous question . . . . .	Yes	No	No	Two thirds	No	If lost, no	Yes	No
12. To postpone to a definite time . . . . .	Yes	Yes	Yes	Majority	No	Yes	Yes	No
13. To commit, refer, recommit	Yes	Yes	Yes	Majority	No	Yes	Yes	No
14. To amend . . . . .	Yes	Yes	Yes	Majority	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
15. To postpone indefinitely . .	Yes	No	Yes	Majority	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
IV. <i>Principal Motion</i>								
16. Any main question . . . . .	Yes	Yes	Yes	Majority	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

## SELECTED REFERENCES ON PARLIAMENTARY PRACTICE

- CHAFEE, E. *Parliamentary Law*. Thomas Y. Crowell Company, 1930.
- CUSHING, L. S. *Manual of Parliamentary Practice* (New Edition, Enlarged). The John C. Winston Company, 1928.
- JONES, O. G. *Senior Manual for Group Leadership*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1934.
- LEIGH, R. D. *Group Leadership*. W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 1936.
- ROBERT, H. M. *Parliamentary Law*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1923.
- ROBERT, H. M. *Parliamentary Practice*. D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc., 1921.

## INDEX

- Action, importance of, 312; posture in, 313; movement in, 313-314; gesture in, 314-315
- Adaptation to audience, 240
- Admissions, 82
- Adopting opposing arguments, 214
- Advantages of extempore method of delivery, 309
- Affirmative, first speech for, 331-332
- Affirming the consequent, fallacy of, 138
- Aids to unity, order, force, and interest in composition as a whole, 277-278
- Allen, H. J., quoted, 287-288
- Allport, F. H., quoted, 253
- Ambiguous construction, fallacy of, 179
- Ambiguous middle, 180
- Ambition as a motive for accepting a proposition, 257
- Analogy, 164-168; literal, 165; figurative, 165-166; tests of, 166-168; fallacies of, 187-189
- Analysis, 66-69; aim of, 66; formal and informal, 66; principles of partition in, 67-69
- Antecedent, definition of, 136; fallacy of, 136-137
- A posteriori* argument, 162
- Appeal, kinds of, 253; for favorable decision in conclusion, 289
- A priori* argument, 160
- Arguing in a circle, 189
- Argument, from specific instance, 151-154; by statistics, 154-157; from authority, 157-158; from causal relation, 158-164; from analogy, 164-168
- Argumentation, as a rhetorical art, 3; and audience, 3; definition of, 3; as a psychological process, 3; and aim of changing belief and conduct, 4; aims of, 4; and reason, 6; and emotional concepts, 7; and persuasion, 7; and debating, 7; and discussion, 8-9; and sales talk, 9-10; and emphasis upon discussion and debate, 10; and sermons, 10; and dinner speeches, 10; and lectures, 10; and inspirational addresses, 10; and logic, 10; and law, 10-11; and psychology, 11; and English composition, 11; and ancient rhetoric, 11; as a creative art, 11; and speech, 12; and mental activity, 12; and broad-mindedness, 12; educational importance of, 12-14; and practice in speaking, 13; and study of current problems, 13; and search for truth, 13; principles for mastery of, 14; exercises and problems in, 14-15
- Argumentative briefing, 96
- Argumentative types, 128-146
- Argumentum, ad misericordiam*, 191; *ad populum*, 191; *ad hominem*, 192; *ad verecundiam*, 194; *ad ignorantiam*, 195
- Aristotle's *Rhetoric*, 11
- Arrangement of argument for different types of audience, 248-250
- Assertion and evidence, 109-110
- Assimilation of material, 52-53
- Assumptions, in induction, 149-150; need for, 150
- Astor, Lady, quoted, 280
- Attention, and argument, 245; degrees of, 246; definition of, 246; voluntary, 247; involuntary, 247; conditions of, 247; conflict and, 248
- Atterbury, W. W., quoted, 288
- Audience, and argumentation, 3; discussion and debate a problem of influencing, 240; general aim of

- influencing, 240-241; types of, 241-242; analysis of, 242-245; and the occasion, 242; analysis of specific interests and attitudes of, 242-243; attitude of, toward the question, 244-245; and attention, 245-248; selection and arrangement of arguments that appeal to, 248-250; convincing of, through acceptable arguments and evidence, 251; supplying motives for acceptance of arguments by, 252-265; and personality of speaker, 261-265; securing action from, 266; suggestion and, 266-269; exercises and problems, 269-270; references, 270
- Authority, test of, 120; competency and, 120; prejudice and, 121; reliability and, 122; definiteness and, 122; support of, from other sources, 124; acceptability of, to audience, 124-125
- Babcock, R. W.*, and *Powell, J. H.*, quoted, 195
- Ballot, audience, 344-345
- Barrows, Sarah T.*, quoted, 317
- Beecher, Henry Ward*, 2
- Begging the question, fallacy of, 189-191
- Behavior as a form of belief, 5
- Belief, defined, 4; contrasted with unbelief, 5; relation of, to conduct, 5
- Best, W. M.*, quoted, 109
- Bibliography, 47-49; character of, 47-48; sources of, 48; material for, 48-49; data for the bibliographical note, 49
- Biographical information, 38
- Bode, B. H.*, quoted, 141
- Borah, W. E.*, quoted, 111-112
- Brief, purpose of, 87-88; definition of, 89; divisions of, 90; rules for, in general, 90-103; complete statements in, 91; use of symbols in, 92-93; use of single statements in, 93; personal and impersonal, 94-95; rules for introduction, 95-97; steps in analysis, 95-97; rules for discussion proper, 97-101; use of "for" in, 98; refutation in, 99; admitted matter in, 100; evidence in, 100; rule for conclusion of, 100; skeleton form of, 101-102; two kinds of, 103-105; relation of argumentative to legal, 104-105; relation of, to speaker's notes, 104-105; justification of, 105-106; exercises and problems, 107-108; references, 108; use of, in composition of a speech, 276; samples of, 370-382
- Cambridge Union Society, 342
- Card system of note-taking, 51
- Carlyle, Thomas*, quoted, 262
- Categorical syllogism, 130-133
- Causal relation, argument from, 158-164; argument from cause to effect, 160-162; argument from effect to cause, 162-163; argument from effect to effect, 163-164
- Cause for discussion, 81-82
- Chains of reasoning, 140
- Chairman, duties of, 361-362
- Characteristics of a good proposition, 17-33
- Chaucer, Geoffrey*, 2
- Cicero, De Oratore*, 11
- Circle, arguing in a, 189
- Circulus in probando*, 189
- Circumstantial evidence, 117-118
- Clarke, E. L.*, quoted, 123
- Classification, of propositions, 21-22; of evidence, 113-115; of inductive argument, 151-157; of emotions, 253-261
- Clearness in phrasing proposition, 28-29
- Coherence in sentence, 294
- Coleman, G. W.*, quoted, 20
- Collecting material, *see* Research
- Columbia Associates in Philosophy quoted, 150
- Committee discussion, 9; method of procedure in, 9; coöperative thinking in, 9; analysis in, 9; *see also* Discussion

- Communication, value of, 3
- Competition and debate, 336
- Composition, three methods of, 271-272; of debate as a whole, 277-278; of the discussion proper, 285
- Conciseness, 298-299
- Conclusion, 286-291; by summary, 287; by series of questions, 287; by suggesting a solution, 288; by reinforcement, 289; by reference to occasion, 289; by appeal, 289-290; by quotations, 290-291
- Concreteness, 299-300
- Confidence, methods of securing, 306
- Congressional debate, 345-347
- Congressional Record*, 43
- Consistency of evidence, 118-119
- Contrast of arguments, 82-83
- Conversational mode, 307-311; and reading the manuscript, 308; and speaking from memory, 308-309; and impromptu speaking, 309; and extemporaneous speaking, 309-310; and use of notes, outlines, and charts, 310-311
- Conviction and persuasion, 7
- Courtesy in debate, 265
- Creating a psychological crowd, 268-269
- Crisp, C. F.*, quoted, 284
- Critic, decision by, 334-335
- Cross-examination in debate, 339-340
- Crowd, psychological, 268-269; characteristics of, 268; methods of creating, 268-269
- "Crowd mind," 268
- Current problems, study of, 13
- Debater, work of each, 331-332
- Debating, contrasted with argument, 8; definition of, 8; modernity of, 8; emphasis on, in this text, 10; and original thought, 12; and pugnacious instinct, 13; an ally of truth, 13; prevalence of, 325; rise of, in America, 326-327; debate leagues and tournaments, 327-328; number of speakers in, 328; methods of preparation for contests in, 328-332; time limits in, 332; judging, 333-335; instructions for judging, 333-334; number of judges for, 334; and the expert judge, 334-335; decisionless, 335-336; interest in opinion as a motive for, 336; desirability of competition in, 336; other motives for creating interest in, 336-337; exercises and problems in, 337-338, 347-348; references, 338, 348; special types of, 339-348; cross-examination type of, 339-340; heckling type of, 340-341; direct-clash type of, 341-342; parliamentary type of, 342-343; and audience decisions, 344-345; and audience ballot, 344-345; Congressional type of, 345-347; rating ballot for, 386
- Decisionless debates, 335-337
- Deduction, 128-146; importance of study of, 128; two processes of reasoning in, 128; definition of, 128-129; relation of induction to, 129; and the various kinds of syllogism, 129-139; exercises and problems in, 143-146; references, 146
- Definition, 59-66; aim of, 59-60; principles of, 60-61; specific means of, 61-66
- Delivery, in discussion and debate, 305-324; importance of, 305; and emotional activity, 305-306; and intellectual behavior, 306-307; and conversational mode, 307-308; and memorizing, 308-309; and platform manners in general, 311-312; action in, 312-315; voice in, 315-318; pronunciation in, 318-320; exercises and problems in, 320-324; references, 324
- Democracy and discussion, 367-368
- De Morgan, A.*, quoted, 177
- Development of the speech, 271-304; three methods of, 271-272; differences between oral and written discourse in, 272-276; use of the brief in, 276; writing and rewriting in, 277; construction of the intro-



- duction in, 278-284; construction of the discussion proper in, 285-286; composition of the conclusion in, 286-291; and sentence structure, 291-295; language in, 295-303; exercises and problems in, 303; references, 303-304
- Dewey Decimal System, 37
- Differences between oral and written discourse, 272-276
- Dilemma, 209-212
- Direct evidence, 114
- Direct-clash debate, 341-342
- Directness in language, 302
- Director of debate, character of, 328; duties of, 328-329
- Discussion, public, 9; committee or group, 9, 357-358; explanatory materials of, 285; argumentative materials of, 285; persuasive materials of, 285-286; practical application of, 358; limitations of, 358; technique of, 359-361; and duties of chairman, 361-362; outline for, 362-364
- Disjunctive syllogism, 133-135
- Division, fallacy of, 196
- Duration in delivery, 318
- Duty as a motive, 258
- Earnestness, 263
- Eclecticism, tendency to, 52
- Effect to cause, argument from, 162-163
- Eliot, C. W.*, quoted, 282
- Emerson, R. W.*, quoted, 53
- Emotion, nature of, 253; classification of, 253; and motives, 253-260; and delivery, 305-306
- Emotional behavior, 305-306
- English composition and argumentation, 11
- Enthymeme, 139-140
- Equivocation, fallacy of, 178
- Etymology, definition by, 62
- Euphony, 302
- Evidence, nature of, 109; relation of argument and proof in, 109-110; necessity for, 110-113; real, 113; positive, 113; negative, 113; original, 113; classification of, 113-115; hearsay, 114; written, 114; unwritten, 114; ordinary, 114; expert, 114; testimonial, 114; circumstantial, 114; need for assumptions in, 114; in court room, 116; relative value of testimonial and circumstantial, 117-118; relation of legal to extralegal, 118; internal consistency in, 118-119; tests of, 118-125; consistency of, 118-119; competency in, 120; prejudice in, 121; reliability of authority in, 122; definiteness in, 122; primary sources in, 123; support from other sources in, 124; acceptability of, to audience, 124-125; exercises and problems in, 125-126; references, 127
- Exceptional instances, fallacy of, 196
- Exchange of opinion, 36-37
- Exclamatory sentence, 293
- Exercises and problems, in influencing belief and conduct, 14-15; in selecting and framing a proposition, 33-34; in research or gathering material, 53-55; in analysis of the proposition, 85-86; in the brief and the rhetorical outline, 107-108; in evidence, 125-126; in argumentative types (deduction), 143-146; in argumentative types (induction), 169-175; in fallacies, 197-201; in refutation, 216-219; in rebuttal, 235-239; relating to audience, 269-270; in development of the speech, 303; in delivery in discussion, 320-324; in formal debate, 337-338; in special types of debate, 347-348; in radio debating, 356; in committee and public discussion, 368-369
- Expert judge, 334-335
- Explanation of terms, by authority, 60-61; by etymology, 62; by history, 62; by illustration, 63; by contrast, 64; by enumeration, 65
- Explicit methods of reasoning, 8
- Exposing inconsistencies, 212-214
- Exposing irrelevant arguments, 214-215

- Exposition of the proposition, aim of, 57; necessity for, 57-59; through explanation of terms, 59-66; through analysis of the question, 66-69; and principles of partition, 67-69; and main issues, 69-70; and stock issues, 72-80; application of, to oral debate, 81-83; application of, to a forensic, 83-84; application of, to an editorial, 84
- Expository briefing, 96
- Extemporaneous method, advantages of, 309-310
- Fact, propositions of, 21
- Fallacies, 176-201; importance of, 176; definition of, 176; classification of, 177-178; of equivocation, 178-179; of ambiguous construction, 179; of ambiguous middle, 180; of undistributed middle, 180; of illicit major, 180; of categorical syllogism, 180-181; of illicit minor, 181; of negative premises, 181; of disjunctive syllogism, 181-182; of hypothetical syllogism, 182; of denying antecedent, 182; of affirming consequent, 182; of insufficient number of instances, 183; of argument from specific instances, 183-185; of negative instances, 184; of inaccuracy of facts in argument from instances, 184; of statistics, 185; of argument from causal relation, 185; *non sequitur*, 185; *post hoc, ergo propter hoc*, 185; of inadequate cause, 186; of counteracting cause, 186-187; of inaccuracy of facts in argument from causal relation, 187; of false analogy, 187-189; of arguing in a circle, 189; of assuming a more general truth involving the point at issue, 190; of ignoring the question, 191; of appeal to passion and prejudice (*argumentum ad populum* and *argumentum ad misericordiam*), 191; of attack upon personality (*argumentum ad hominem*), 192-193; of refuting an argument not advanced, 193-194; of appeal to tradition (*argumentum ad veritatem*), 194; of appeal to authority, 194-195; of appeal to ignorance (*argumentum ad ignorantiam*), 195; of false synthesis, 195-196; of division, 196; of exceptional instances, 196; exercises and problems in, 197-201; references, 201
- Fallacious question, 190-191
- False analogy, 187-189
- Favorable audience, 245
- Figurative analogy, 165
- Figures of speech, 280
- Flaubert, Gustave, quoted, 297
- "For" as a connective, 98
- Force in the composition, 277; *see also* Intensity
- Formal analysis, 66-67
- Freedom from pugnacity in debating, 265
- Gathering material, *see* Research
- Generalization, argument from, *see* Specific instance
- George, Lloyd, quoted, 290
- Gesture, 314-315
- Gorgias, 11
- Graham, Gladys M., quoted, 105-106
- Group discussion, *see* Discussion
- Guthrie, E. R., quoted, 246
- Hamilton, Alexander, 11
- Harvard-Yale debate (1892), 326
- Hasty generalization, *see* Fallacies, argument from specific instances
- Hays, W. H., quoted, 281
- Hearsay evidence, 114
- Heckling in debate, 340-341
- Hermagoras, 11
- Hibben, J. G., quoted, 155
- Hillis, N. D., quoted, 281
- History of the question, 82
- Hollingworth, H. L., quoted, 240, 251
- Hoover, Herbert, quoted, 279
- Hostile audience, 245
- Hughes, C. E., quoted, 293-294
- Humor, 263-264
- Hypothetical syllogism, 136-138

- Ignoratio elenchi*, 191  
 Ignoring the question, 191-192  
 Illicit major, 180-181  
 Illicit minor, 181  
 Illustrative language, 300-303  
 Imperative sentence, 296  
 Impromptu speaking, 309  
 Inadequate cause, 186  
 Indifferent audience, 245  
 Indignation as a motive, 257  
 Induction, relation of, to deduction, 129; description of general system of, 147; practical application of, 147-148; student routine and, 148; and student arguments, 149; assumptions of, 149; classification of arguments by, 151; argument from specific instances in, 151; argument from authority in, 157-158; argument from causal relation in, 158-164; argument from analogy in, 164-168; exercises and problems in, 169-175; references, 175  
 Inference, 6  
 Influencing belief and conduct, 1  
 Informal analysis, 66-67  
 Instructions to judges, 333-334  
 Intellectual behavior, 306-307  
 Intensity, definition of, 316; methods of securing, 316-317  
 Interest, principle of, in composition, 278  
 Interests and attitudes of an audience, 242-243  
 Introduction, of a brief, 95-97; composition of, 278; of a speech, 278-284; by personal method, 278-280; by question, 280; by narration, 280; by figures of speech, 280-281; by significant quotation, 281; by reference to the occasion, 282; by statement of theme, 282-283; by steps of analysis, 283-284; by transitional elements, 284  
 Involuntary attention, 247  
 Issues, *see* Main issues and Stock issues  
*Jacks, L. P.*, quoted, 254  
*James, William*, quoted, 253  
*Jones, J. G.*, quoted, 281  
*Jordan, D. S.*, quoted, 290-291  
 Judges, instructions to, 333; number of, 334; character of, 334; expert, 334-335  
 Judgments defined, 6  
 Justice as a motive, 259  
*Kahn, O. H.*, quoted, 279  
 Kinds of arguments, *see* Deduction and Induction  
 Kinds of evidence, 113-115  
 Knowledge of library, 37  
 Language, 295-303; necessity for variety in, 295-296; accuracy in, 296-297; originality in, 297; conciseness in, 298-299; concreteness in, 299-300; illustrative, 300-301; simplicity in, 302; euphony in, 302; rhythm in, 302-303  
 Law and argumentation, 10-11  
 Laws of suggestion, 267-269  
 Legal brief, 89, 104  
 Legal evidence, rules for, 118  
 Library, use of, 37-39  
 Limitations of group discussion, 358  
 Limiting the subject, 26-27  
*Lincoln, Abraham*, 11  
 Lists of propositions, 382-385  
 Literal analogy, 165  
 Logic, relation of, to argument, 10; definition of, 11  
*Lowell, A. L.*, quoted, 336  
 Loyalty as a motive, 260  
 Main headings in brief, 97  
 Main issues, 69-81; explanation of, 69-70; relation of, to partition, 70-72; importance of discovering and stating, 72; number and arrangement of, 72  
 Major premise, 131  
 Material, assimilation of, 52; methods of assimilation of, 53  
 Materials for developing the speech, 285-286

- Memorized delivery, 308-309
- Mental exploration, 6
- Merits of the question, 342-343
- Methods of taking notes, 49-51
- Middle, undistributed, 132; ambiguous, 180
- Mill, J. S.*, on "Freedom of Thought and Discussion," 17; on canons for determining causality, 186
- Mills, Alice W.*, and *Barrows, Sarah T.*, quoted, 317
- Modesty, 265
- Motives for acceptance of a proposition, 252-265; self-preservation, 253; profit, 254; personal and social convenience, 255; necessity, 256; ambition, 257; indignation, 257; duty, 258; justice, 259; loyalty to friends, 260
- "Motor exploration," 6
- Movement, bodily, 313-314
- Mutual dependence of induction and deduction, 129
- Narrowing the field of discussion, 82-83
- Nasal resonance, 316
- Nature of evidence, 109
- Necessity for evidence, 110-113
- Newspaper information, 46
- Nichols, Alan*, quoted, 29, 33
- Noise, 316
- Non sequitur*, 185
- Nonsyllogistic arguments, 141-142
- Note-taking, 49-51; methods of, 49; rules for, 50; examples of, 51
- O'Neill, Eugene*, 4
- O'Neill, J. M.*, and *Weaver, A. T.*, quoted, 5, 266
- Opinion, clash of, in debate, 83; as evidence, 119
- Oral composition, 271
- Order in composition, 277
- Ordinary evidence, 114
- Organization of categorical syllogism, 130
- Origin of question, 81-82
- Original evidence, 114
- Originality in language, 297
- Overstreet, H. A.*, quoted, 246
- Oxford debater quoted, 284, 289
- Oxford Union Society, 342-343
- Paget, E. H.*, quoted, 341
- Pamphlets, 40-41
- Panel discussion, 366-367
- Parliamentary debate, 342-343
- Parliamentary law, outlines of, 387-389; references, 390
- Partition of subject, 67-72; according to one principle, 67-68; no overlapping in, 68; covering entire field in, 68-69; scope of one subproposition in, 69; relation of, to issues, 70-71
- Perrin, F. A. C.*, and *Klein, D. B.*, quoted, 307
- Personal introduction, 278-279
- Personal letters, 36-37
- Personal and social convenience as a motive, 255
- Personality of speaker, 261-265
- Persuasion, an aid to practical success, 1-2; in law, 2; in business, 2; in teaching, 2; as a factor in solving public questions, 2; and exercise of good citizenship, 2; definition of, 8
- Petitio principii*, 189
- Phillips, Wendell*, 11
- Pitch, 317-318
- Platform manners, 311-312
- Policy, questions of, 21-22
- Position of refutation, 204
- Positive evidence, 113
- Post hoc, ergo propter hoc*, 185
- Posture, 313
- Pound, Roscoe, The Frame of Mind*, 273-275
- Prejudice, appeal to, 191-192
- Principles of partition, 67-69
- Profit as a motive, 254-255
- Pronunciation, importance of, 319; suggestions for improving, 319-320; standards of, 320
- Proof, burden of, 31-32; definition of, 110



- Propositions, *see* Subject for debate
- Psychology, 11; explanation of, 11; practical advantage of, in argumentation, 11
- Public discussion, *see* Discussion
- Public speaking, *see* Voice
- Publications of organizations and societies, 40-41
- Pugnacity, freedom from, 265
- Purpose of the brief, 87-88
- Question, the subject stated as a, 20; of fact, 21; of policy, 21; for debate, 32-33; begging the, 189-191; ignoring the, 191-196; as a means of opening the speech, 280; rhetorical, 293
- Quintilian, Institutes*, 11
- Quotations, indication of, in delivery, 52
- Radio debating, prevalence of, 349-350; similarities of, to other debating, 350; differences between, and other debating, 350; suggestions for, 351-356; exercises and problems in, 356; references, 356
- Reading manuscript, 308
- Real evidence, 113
- Reason, defined, 6; relation of, to inference, 6
- Rebuttal, definition of, 220; position of, 220-221; importance of, 221; arrangement of, 221-222; in the main speech, 223-228; in the second speech, 228; organization of, 228-230; exemplification of, 231-235; exercises and problems in, 235-239
- Reductio ad absurdum*, 206
- References, on influencing belief and conduct, 16; on selecting and framing the proposition, 34; on gathering material, 56; on analysis of proposition, 86; on the brief and the rhetorical outline, 108; on evidence, 127; on argumentative types (deduction), 146; on argumentative types (induction), 175; on fallacies, 201; on refutation, 219; on audience, 270; on development of the speech, 303-304; on delivery in discussion and debate, 324; on formal debate, 338; on special types of debate, 348; on radio debate, 356; on committee and public discussion, 369; on parliamentary practice, 390
- Reflective thinking, 52-53
- Refutation, 202-219; character of, 202; importance of, 202; and knowledge of proposition, 203; selection of, 203-204; position of, 204; phrasing of, 204-205; general methods of, 205; special methods of, 205-215; exercises and problems in, 216-219; references, 219
- Relation, of belief to conduct, 5; of issues to partition, 70-71; of analysis to introduction, 81-82; of argumentative to legal brief, 104; of speaker's outline to argumentative brief, 104-105; of evidence to argument and proof, 110; of legal to extralegal evidence, 118
- Relative value of testimonial and circumstantial evidence, 117-118
- Religious questions for debate, limitations of, 26
- Research, 35-56; importance of system in, 35; and personal information, 36; and reflection, 36; informal discussion as a source in, 36; and personal interviews, 36; and exchange of opinion, 36-37; and letters, 36-37; and knowledge of the library, 37; and general references, 37; and special encyclopedias, 38; and representative books in special fields, 38-39; and catalogues and indexes of books, 39-40; and pamphlets, 40-42; and government documents, 42-43; and *Congressional Record*, 43; and private publications reporting government proceedings, 44; and periodicals, 44-46; and newspapers, 46; and radio broadcasts, 46; and school and college debates and debate material, 46-47; and construction of a bibliography,



- 47-48; and printed bibliographies, 48; and methods of recording items, 49; and methods of note-taking, 49-51; exercises and problems in, 53-55; references, 56
- Residues, method of, 207-209
- Resolution, 19
- Restatement as form of development, 285
- Rhetoric, ancient, 11
- Rhetorical aim of changing belief and conduct, 4
- Rhythm, 302-303
- Robinson, D. S.*, quoted, 142, 147
- Rules for constructing the brief, 90-101
- Sales talk, purpose of, 9; as a private interview, 9; as a group speech, 10; and persuasion, 10; relation of, to argument, 10
- Scope of analysis, 66-67
- Scott, W. D.*, quoted, 267
- Search for truth, 13
- Seashore, C. E.*, quoted, 253
- Selection of recurrent questions, 24-25
- Self-confidence, 264
- Self-preservation, 253-254
- Sellers, R. W.*, quoted, 186
- Sentence structure, 291-295; importance of, 291
- Sentences, 291-295; long and short, 291-292; periodic, loose, and balanced, 292; transitional, summarizing, and introductory, 292; imperative, 293; exclamatory, 293; interrogative, 293; coherence in, 294; force in, 295
- Shaw, W. C.*, quoted, 21, 109, 207
- Simplicity in language, 302
- Sincerity, 262; and debating, 330
- Skeleton brief, 101-103
- Smith, A. E.*, *Address before the New York League of Women Voters*, 275-276
- Smith, Stevenson, and Guthrie, E. R.*, quoted, 246
- Social adjustment, influencing belief and conduct as a factor in, 1
- Sorites, 141
- Sources of bibliographies, 48
- Sources of evidence, 123
- Special encyclopedias, 38
- Special methods of refutation, 205-216
- Specific instance, argument from, 151-154; five tests of, 151-163
- Specimen rebuttal card, 222
- Speech, and psychology, 11; and physiology, 12; and physics, 12; and phonetics, 12; and argumentation, 12
- Statement of theme, 282
- Statistical method, steps of, 154-157
- Statistics, classification of, 154; gathering of, 156; arrangement of, 156; correlation of results of, 156; testing method of, 157
- "Stereotypes" of an audience, 242-243
- Stock issues, 72-81; and methods of partition, 72-73; for questions of policy, 73-80; for questions of fact, 80-81
- Straus, O. S.*, quoted, 282
- Striking question in introduction, 280
- Studebaker, J. W.*, quoted, 365, 368
- Style, *see* Development of the speech
- Subheading in brief, 98, 106
- Subject for debate, 17-19; stated as a resolution, 19; stated as an impartial question, 20; controlling purpose of, 20-21; adapted to the speaker, 22-23; tests for selection of, 22-27; adapted to the audience, 23-24; timely, 24-25; about which discussion is profitable, 25-26; settled on rational grounds, 26; capable of proof, 26; two-sided, 26; limited, 26-27; tests for wording of, 27-33; in a simple sentence, 28; unambiguous, 28-29; affording a standard of comparison, 31; with burden on the affirmative, 31-32
- Suggestion, in argument, 266-269; laws of, 267; methods of, 267-268
- Summary, of a brief, 100-101; of a speech, 287
- Supplying motives for acceptance of an argument, 252-265

- Syllogism, definition of, 129; categorical, 130-131; special rules for, 131-133; disjunctive, 133-135; hypothetical, 136-138; fallacies of, 180-182
- Symbols in the brief, 92
- System in preparation, importance of, 35
- Tact, 261
- Technique of discussion, 359-361
- Terms, impossibility of arguing, 19
- Testimony, 118-125
- Testing the statistical method, 157
- Tests of authority, 118-125, 157-158
- "Therefore" as a connective, 99
- Time, 318
- Time limits in debate, 332
- Tone, 315
- Tournaments in debate, 327
- Truth, search for, 13
- Turning the tables, 214
- Typical instance, 153
- Undistributed middle, 180
- United States government documents, 42-44
- Unity in composition, 277
- University Debaters' Annual* quoted, 62, 64, 65, 215, 223-227
- Use of stock issues, 72-81
- Verbal evidence, 113
- Vocabulary, 295-296
- Voice, 315-318; quality of, 315-316
- Voluntary attention, 247
- Waived matter, 82
- Weaver, A. T.*, quoted, 5, 266
- Webster, Daniel*, 11
- Wharton, Francis*, quoted, 110
- Wilson, Woodrow*, quoted, 7
- Witnesses, tests of, 119
- Woodward, H. S.*, 345
- Woolbert, C. H.*, 306, 312
- Words, choice of, *see* Language
- Written composition, 272





202  
512

RETURN ON OR  
BEFORE THIS DATE

LIBRARY FINES—25¢ PER DAY

UNIVERSITY OF  
FLORIDA LIBRARIES

IMPORTANT  
THIS CARD MUST BE  
RETURNED WITH BOOK  
TO CLEAR THE CHARGE.  
DO NOT REMOVE  
FROM POCKET.

MO.  
DAY  
YR.

BORROWER

013041261046159 808.5.E94D2.C2-

CALL NUMBER

LEWIS 8841

KEEP CARD IN POCKET



IT IS IMPORTANT THAT  
CARD BE KEPT IN POCKET



